

Owner's Manual

GX550



©2023 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, lights)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

For your information 6
Reading this manual 10
How to search 11
Pictorial index 12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 26
For safe driving 27
Seat belts 28
SRS airbags 32
Exhaust gas precautions 38

1-2. Child safety
Riding with children 40
Child restraint systems 40

1-3. Emergency assistance
Lexus Connected Services 54

1-4. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 57
Alarm 58

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 64
Gauges and meters 69
Multi-information display 74
Head-up display 75
Displayed content 78

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information
Keys 90

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 94
Power running boards 99
Back door 101
Glass hatch 116
Smart entry & start system 119

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 124
Rear seats 126
Head restraints 132

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 135
Inside rear view mirror 136
Digital Rear-view Mirror 137
Outside rear view mirrors 145

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 148
Moon roof 151

3-6. Favorite settings
Driving position memory 154
My Settings 159

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 163
Cargo and luggage 169
Trailer towing 171

4-2. Driving procedures
Engine (ignition) switch 179
Automatic transmission 183
Turn signal lever 188

Parking brake 188
Brake Hold 191

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 194
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 196
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 200
Fog light switch 202
Windshield wipers and washer 203
Rear window wiper and washer 205

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 207

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 209
Driver monitor 216
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 217
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 228
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) .. 232
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 237
Dynamic radar cruise control . 239
Cruise control 249
Emergency Driving Stop System 252
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Safe Exit Assist 259
Lexus parking assist-sensor 263
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 269
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function 274
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 277
Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle) 281
Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle) 284
Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) 285
Multi-terrain Monitor 287
Driving mode select switch 355
Four-wheel drive system 357
Rear differential lock system ... 360
Crawl Control 361
Multi-terrain Select 364
Downhill assist control system 367
Driving assist systems 369

4-6. Driving tips

Off-road precautions 375
Winter driving tips 377

5 Interior features

5-1. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge 382

5-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system 383
Rear automatic air conditioning system 391
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 393

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 396

5-4. Using the storage features
List of storage features 400
Luggage compartment features 403
5-5. Using the other interior features
Panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control 406
Other interior features 408

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 422
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 425
6-2. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements 428
6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 430
Hood 432
Engine compartment 433
Tires 441
Tire inflation pressure 451
Wheels 452
Air conditioning filter 453
Electronic key battery 455
Checking and replacing fuses 457
Light bulbs 459

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information
Emergency flashers 462
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 462
If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising 463
7-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If your vehicle needs to be towed 465
If you think something is wrong 468
Fuel pump shut off system 469
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 470
If a warning message is displayed 479
If you have a flat tire 485
If the engine will not start 494
If you lose your keys 496
If the electronic key does not operate properly 496
If the vehicle battery is discharged 498
If your vehicle overheats 502
If the vehicle becomes stuck ... 505

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 508
Fuel information 515
8-2. Customization
Customizable features 516
8-3. Initialization
Items to initialize 531

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 534
Alphabetical Index 536

For your information

WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

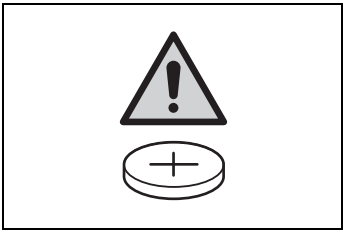
Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof (if equipped), or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

■ General precaution regarding a coin battery and button battery



This product contains a coin battery or button battery.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.
- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Also, remodeling like this will have an effect on advanced safety equipment such as Lexus Safety System + and there is a danger that it will not work properly or the danger that it may work in situations where it should not be working.

Cyber Attack Risk

Installing electronic devices and radios increases the risk of cyber attacks through the installed parts, which may lead to unexpected accidents and leakage of personal information. Lexus does not make any guarantees for problems caused by installing non-genuine Lexus products.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System +
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

Vehicle data recording

This vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that record certain data regarding vehicle controls and operations.

■ Data recorded by the computers

Certain data, such as the following, is recorded depending on the operation timing and status of each function.

- Engine speed/Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems
- Images from the cameras
  Your vehicle is equipped with cameras. Contact your Lexus dealer for the location of recording cameras.

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

■ Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

---

Image information recorded by the vehicle can be erased by your Lexus dealer.

The image recording function can be disabled. However, if the function is disabled, data from when systems operate will not be available.

If you wish to stop the collection of Lexus Safety System + data by the Lexus servers for the purpose of research and development and provision to individual services, contact your Lexus dealer.

Usage of data collected through Lexus Connected Services

If your Lexus has Lexus Connected Services and if you have subscribed to those services, please refer to the Lexus Connected Services usage contract for information on data collected and its usage.

For more information, visit https://www.lexus.com.au/privacy

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist

in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

"QR Code"

The word "QR Code" is registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and other countries.

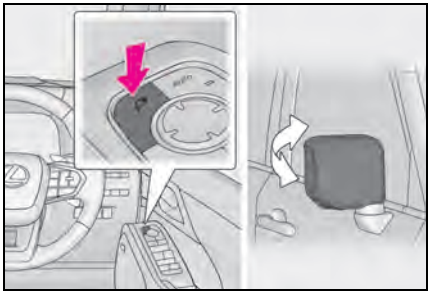
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual

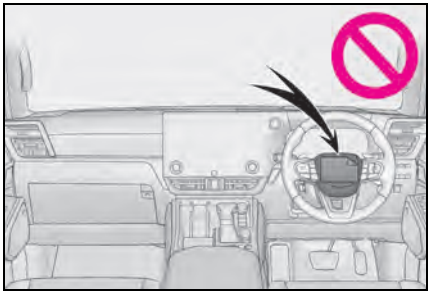
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
1 2 3...	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

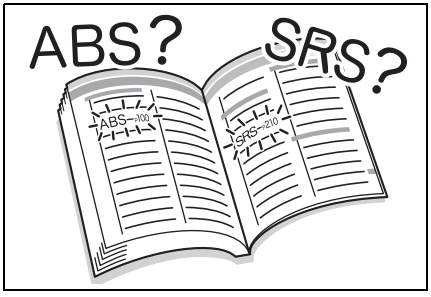


Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means **Do not**, **Do not do this**, or **Do not let this happen**.

How to search

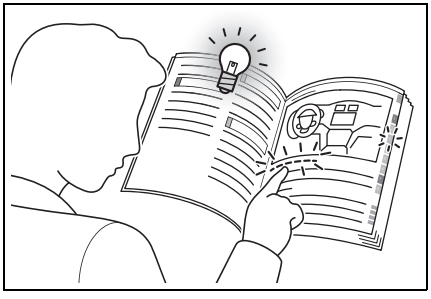
■ **Searching by name**

● Alphabetical index: →P.536



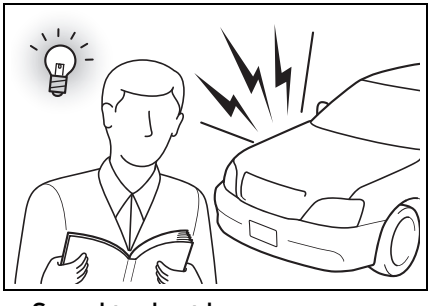
■ **Searching by installation position**

● Pictorial index: →P.12



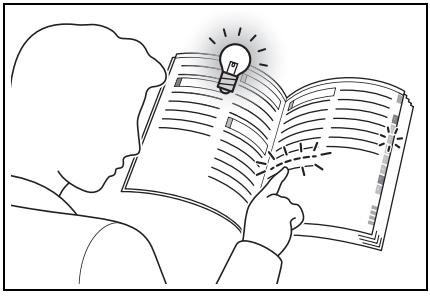
■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

● What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.534



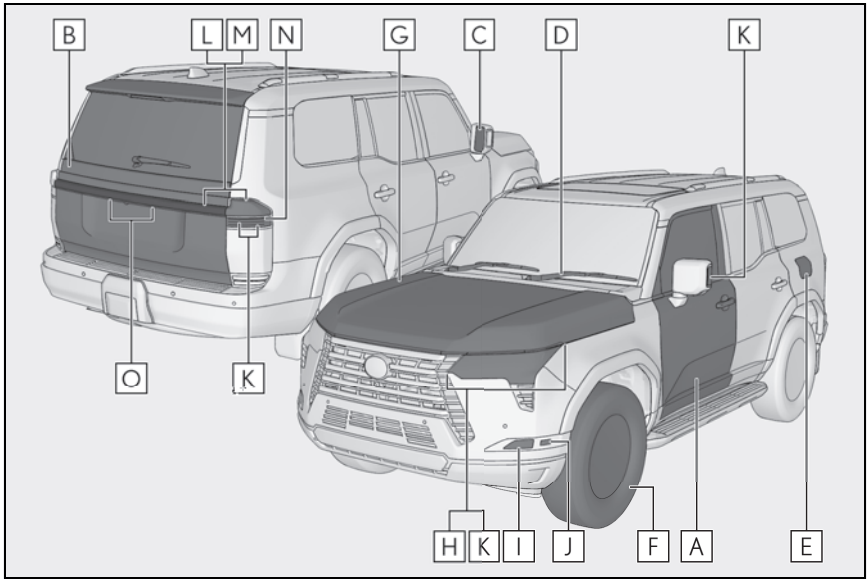
■ **Searching by title**

● Table of contents: →P.2



Pictorial index

■Exterior



A Side doors P.94

Locking/unlocking P.94, 97

Opening/closing the side windows P.148

Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.496

Warning messages P.479

B Back door P.101

Locking/unlocking P.102

Opening/closing the back door P.103

Glass hatch P.116

Warning messages P.479

C Outside rear view mirrors P.145

Adjusting the mirror angle P.145

Folding the mirrors P.146

Driving position memory P.155

Defogging the mirrors P.387

D Windshield wipers **P.203**
Precautions against winter season P.377
Precautions against car wash P.424

E Fuel filler door **P.207**
Refueling method P.207
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.509

F Tires **P.441**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.514
Winter tires/tire chain P.377
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system P.441
Coping with flat tires P.485

G Hood **P.432**
Opening P.432
Engine oil P.510
Coping with overheat P.502
Warning messages P.479

Exterior lights for driving
(Replacing: P.459)

H Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights **P.194**

I Fog lights **P.202**

J Cornering lights **P.195**

K Turn signal lights **P.188**

L Stop lights
Indicator P.66
Dynamic radar cruise control P.241
Secondary Collision Brake P.370
Downhill assist control system* P.367

M Tail lights **P.194**

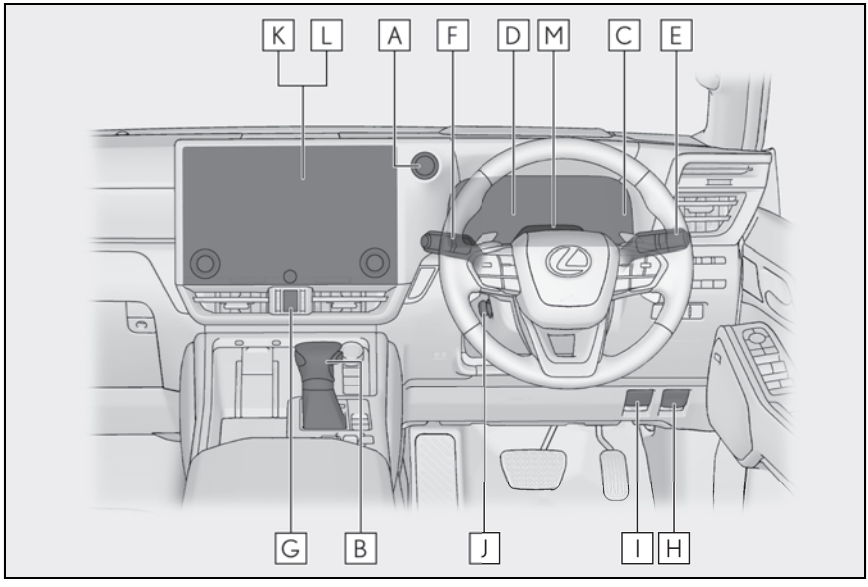
N **Back-up lights**

Shifting the shift lever to R.....P.184

O **License plate lights** **P.194**

*: If equipped

Instrument panel



A Engine switch **P.179**
Starting the engine/changing the modes P.179
Emergency stop of the engine P.462
When the engine will not start P.494
Warning messages P.479

B Shift lever **P.183**
Changing the shift position P.184
Precautions against towing P.465
When the shift lever does not move P.184

C Meters **P.69**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument cluster light P.69
Warning lights/indicator lights P.64
When the warning lights come on P.470

D Multi-information display **P.74**
Display P.74

When the warning messages are displayed P.479

E Turn signal lever P.188
Headlight switch P.194
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P.194
Fog lights P.202
Adaptive High-beam System switch*1 ..... P.197
Automatic High Beam switch P.200

F Windshield wiper and washer switch P.203
Rear window wiper and washer switch P.205
Usage P.203, 205
Adding washer fluid P.440
Headlight cleaners P.203
Warning messages P.440

G Emergency flasher switch P.462

H Fuel filler door opener P.208

I Hood lock release lever P.432

J Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P.135
Adjustment P.135
Driving position memory P.154

K Air conditioning system P.383
Usage P.383
Rear window defogger P.387

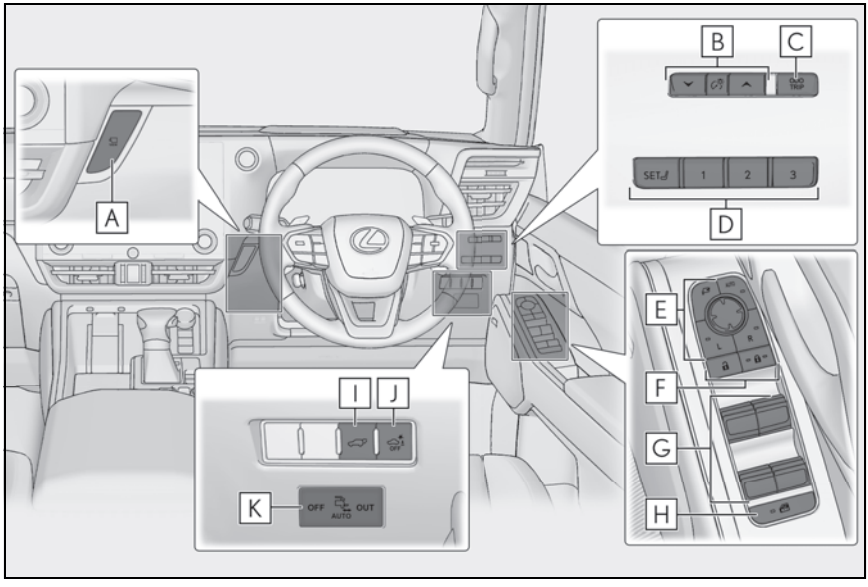
L Audio system*2

M Driver monitor camera P.216

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Switches



A VIEW switch*1, 2 ..... P.292

B Instrument panel light control switches P.73

C "ODO TRIP" switch P.72

D Driving position memory buttons P.155

E Outside rear view mirror switches P.145

F Door lock switches P.97

G Power window switches P.148

H Window lock switch P.150

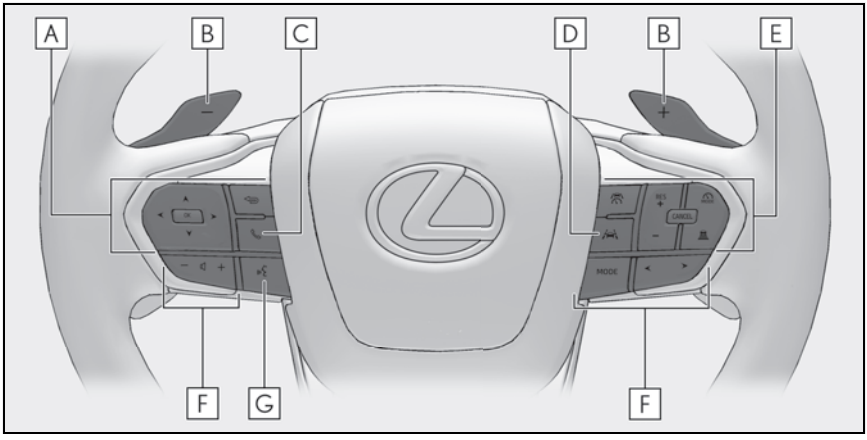
I Power back door switch P.103

J PKSB switch P.278

K Power running board switch*2 ..... P.100

*1: Vehicles with panoramic view monitor, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped



A **Meter control switches** P.78

B **Paddle shift switches** P.185, 186

C **Telephone switch***

D **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch** P.230

E **Cruise control switches**

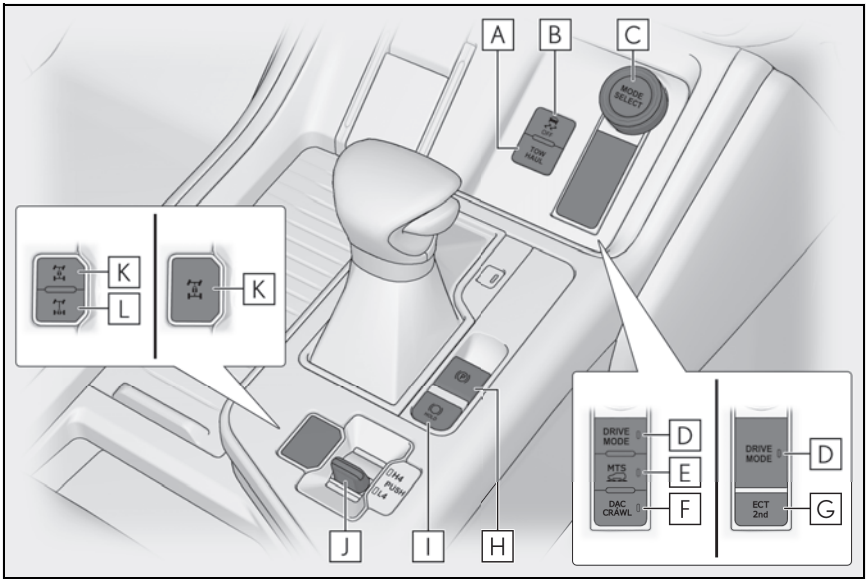
Dynamic radar cruise control P.239

Cruise control P.249

F **Audio remote control switches***

G **Talk switch***

*: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".



A "TOW HAUL" switch.....P.187

B VSC OFF switch.....P.370

C MODE SELECT switch.....P.355, 362, 365, 367

D DRIVE MODE switch.....P.355

E MTS switch* P.365

F DAC/CRAWL switch*.....P.362, 367

G Second start mode switch*.....P.185

H Parking brake switch.....P.188

Applying/releasing.....P.188

Precautions against winter season.....P.379

Warning buzzer/message.....P.475, 479

I Brake hold switch.....P.191

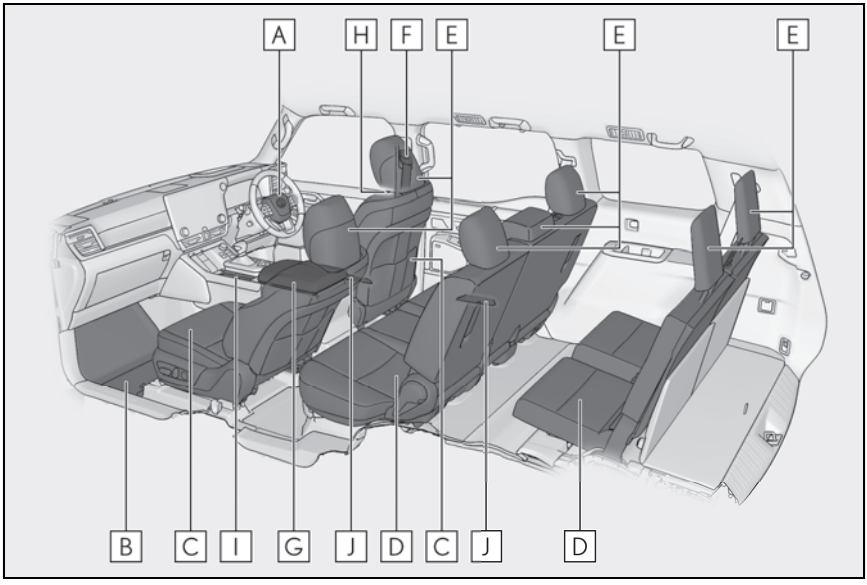
J Four-wheel drive control switch.....P.357

K Center differential lock switch.....P.358

L Rear differential lock switch*.....P.360

*: If equipped

Interior



A SRS airbags P.32

B Floor mats P.26

C Front seats P.124

D Rear seats P.126

Second seats P.126

Third seats* P.126

E Head restraints P.132

F Seat belts P.28

G Console box* P.401

Cool box* P.408

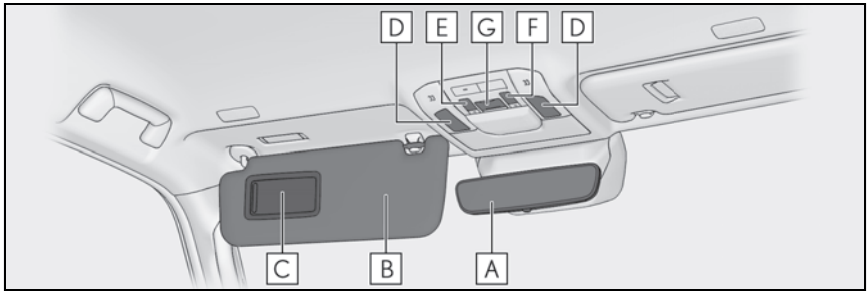
H Inside lock buttons P.97

I Cup holders P.401

J Bottle holders P.402

*: If equipped

■Ceiling



A Inside rear view mirror*1 ..... P.136
Digital Rear-view Mirror*1 ..... P.137

B Sun visors*2 ..... P.409

C Vanity mirrors P.409

D Interior lights*3 ..... P.397
Personal lights*3 ..... P.398

E Moon roof switches*1 ..... P.151
Electronic sunshade switch*1 ..... P.406

F Moon roof switches*1 ..... P.151
Dimming switch*1 ..... P.406

G "SOS" button*1 ..... P.54

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.42)



*3: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

For safety and security

1

1-1. **For safe use**

Before driving 26

For safe driving 27

Seat belts 28

SRS airbags 32

Exhaust gas precautions 38

1-2. **Child safety**

Riding with children 40

Child restraint systems 40

1-3. **Emergency assistance**

Lexus Connected Services 54

1-4. **Theft deterrent system**

Engine immobilizer system 57

Alarm 58

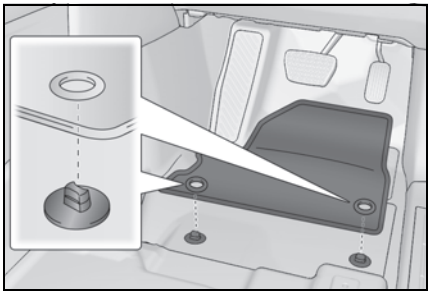
Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

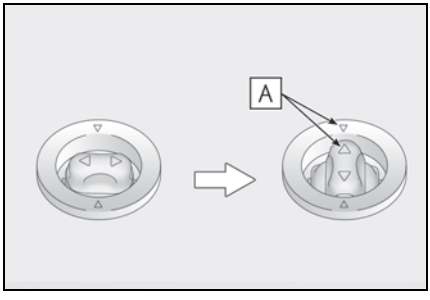
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the △ marks A .

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

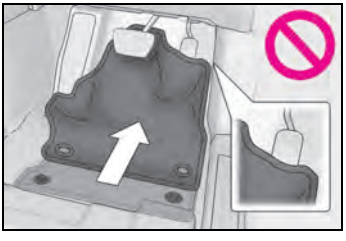
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

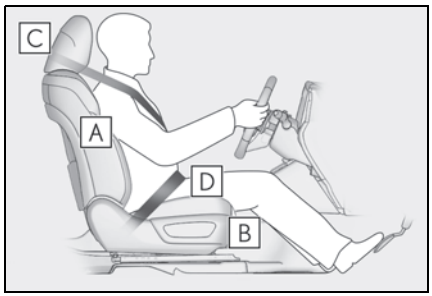


- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



A Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.124)

B Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.124)

C Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.132)

D Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.29)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.29)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.40)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside rear view mirror (if equipped), Digital Rear-view Mirror (if equipped) and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P.136, 137, 145)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.
- Vehicles with third seats: Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers when using the seat belts for the third seats. (→P.130)

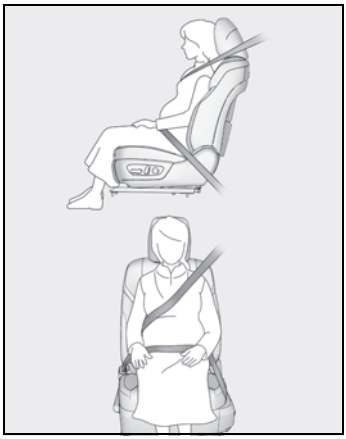
WARNING

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.29)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.29)

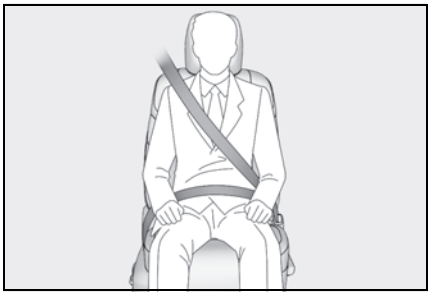
■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.50

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belt cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

● Do not twist the seat belt.

■ **Child seat belt usage**

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

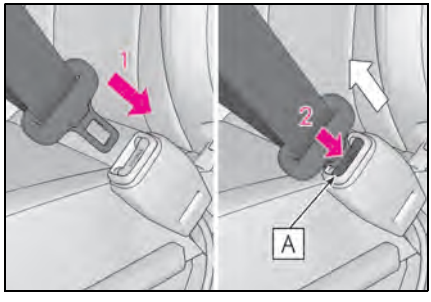
● Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.40)

● When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P.28)

■ **Seat belt regulations**

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



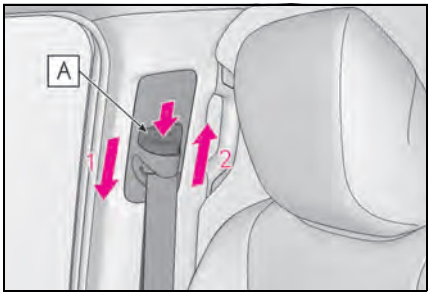
1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button A .

■ **Emergency locking retractor (ELR)**

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button A .

2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up while pressing the release button A .

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

WARNING

■ **Adjustable shoulder anchor**

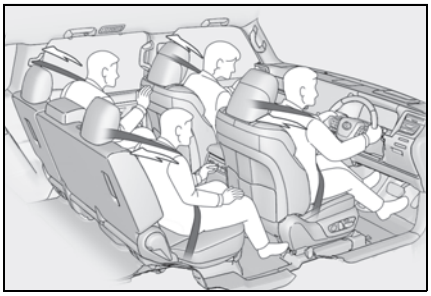
Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Seat belt pretensioners

When the vehicle is subjected to a severe frontal or side impact, the pretensioners retract the seat belts of the front seats and second outer seats to securely restrain the occupants.

The pretensioners will not operate in minor

frontal or side impacts, rear impacts, or vehicle rollovers.



■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ **PCS-linked seat belt pretensioner control**

If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) determines that the possibility of a collision with a vehicle is high, the seat belt pretensioners will be prepared to operate.

WARNING

■ **Seat belt pretensioners**

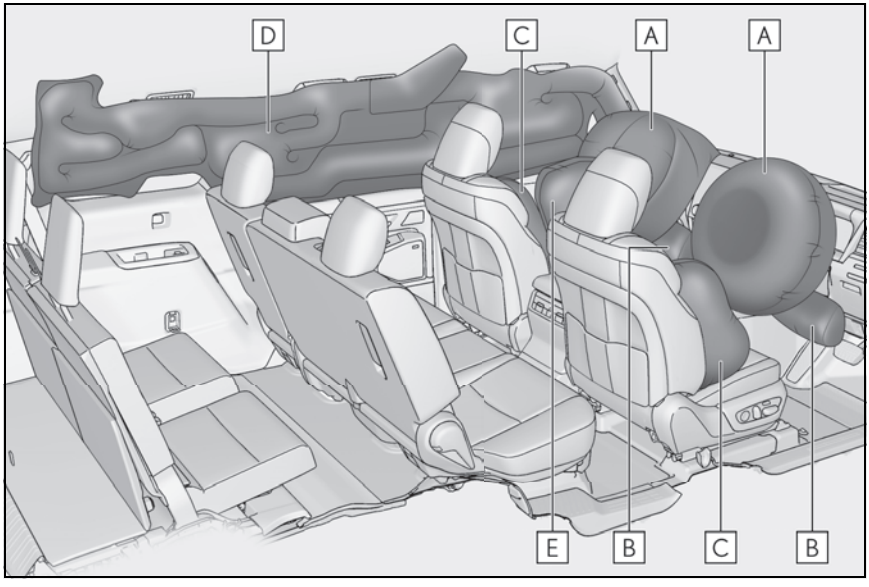
If a pretensioner has operated, the SRS warning light will illuminate. In this situation, the seat belt cannot be used and must be replaced by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags deploy when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impact that may cause significant injury to the occupants. The airbags work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Help reduce impact to the head and chest of the driver and front passenger

B SRS knee airbags
Help reduce impact to the driver and front passenger

C SRS side airbags
Help reduce impact to the chest of the occupants of the front seats

D SRS curtain shield airbags
Help reduce impact to the heads of the occupants of the front and rear outer seats

E SRS front center airbag

Help reduce impact to the head and neck of the occupants of the front seats

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising, etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed of deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the parts around the airbags may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.95)
- The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.370)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.397)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.462)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.469)
- If any of the following situations occur, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the Lexus Connected Services control center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.54)
  - When an SRS airbag has been deployed
  - When a seat belt pretensioner has operated
  - When the vehicle has been involved in a severe rear-end collision

The SRS airbags deploy in a frontal impact when

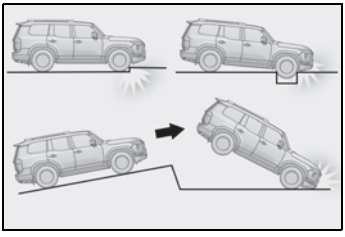
- The following SRS airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds a threshold level (level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform):
  - SRS front airbags
  - SRS knee airbags
- The threshold level at which the SRS airbags will deploy will be higher than normal in the in the following situations:
  - When the vehicle collides with an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which moves or deforms on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle underrides, or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, only the following may deploy:
  - Seat belt pretensioners
- In the event of an especially severe frontal collision, the left and right SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy.

The SRS airbags deploy in a side impact when

- The following SRS airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the passenger compartment at a perpendicular angle at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]):
  - SRS side airbags
  - SRS curtain shield airbags
  - SRS front center airbag

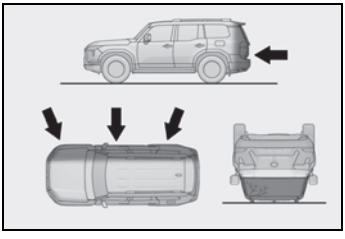
■ **The SRS airbags deploy in an underside impact when**

● The following airbags may deploy if the underside of the vehicle collides with a hard object:
- SRS front airbags
- SRS knee airbags
- SRS side airbags
- SRS curtain shield airbags

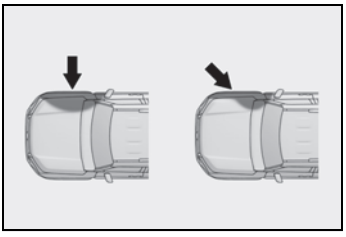


■ **The SRS airbags will not deploy when**

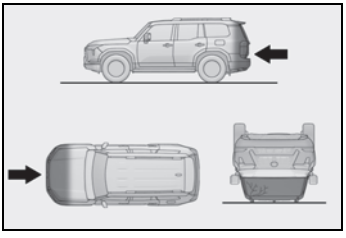
● The following SRS airbags will not normally deploy in side or rear collisions, vehicle rollovers, or low speed frontal collisions. However, if such a collision causes sufficient sudden deceleration, the SRS airbags may deploy.
- SRS front airbags
- SRS knee airbags



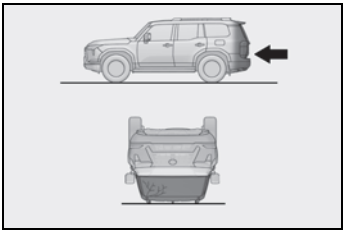
● The following SRS airbags may not deploy if the vehicle is collided with at a certain angle or in a side collision where an area of the vehicle other than the passenger compartment is collided with:
- SRS side airbags
- SRS curtain shield airbags
- SRS front center airbag



● The following SRS airbags will not normally deploy in front or rear collisions, vehicle rollovers, or low speed side collisions:
- SRS side airbags
- SRS front center airbag



● The following SRS airbags will not normally deploy in rear collisions, vehicle rollovers, or low speed front or side collisions:
- SRS curtain shield airbags



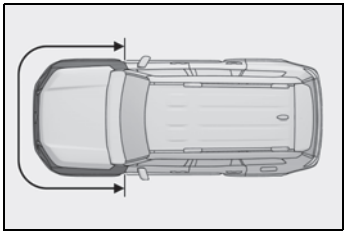
■ **When to contact your Lexus dealer**

In the following situations, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

● When any of the SRS airbags have been deployed

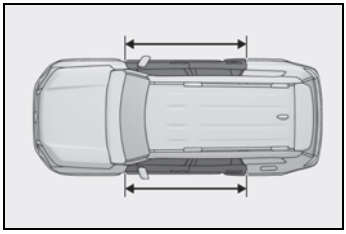
● When the front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in a collision that was not severe enough to cause any of the following SRS airbags to deploy:
- SRS front airbags

- SRS knee airbags

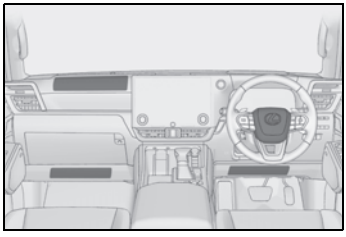


● When a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or was involved in a collision that was not severe enough to cause any of the following SRS airbags to deploy:

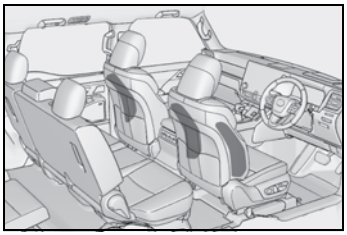
- SRS side airbags
- SRS curtain shield airbags
- SRS front center airbag



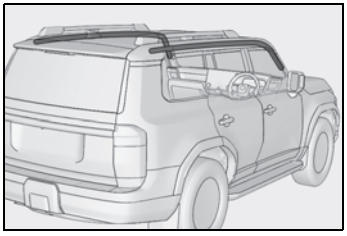
● When the pad section of the steering wheel, the dashboard near the front passenger SRS airbag or the lower side of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



● When the surface of a seat with an SRS side airbag or SRS front center airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



● When the part of a front pillar, rear pillar or roof side rail garnish (padding) which covers a SRS curtain shield airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

● The driver and all passengers must wear their seat belts correctly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

● The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury, especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If your current driving position places you less than 250 mm (10 in.) away from the driver airbag, you can change your driving position in several ways:

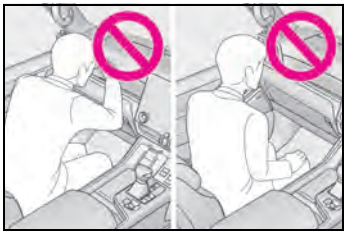
WARNING

- Move your seat to the rear as far as possible while still being able to reach the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the seatback. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the seatback somewhat. If reclining the seatback makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.
  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still being able to control the vehicle with the pedals and steering wheel, and maintaining your view of the instrument panel controls.

● The SRS front passenger airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury, especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be positioned as far possible from the airbag with the seatback adjusted so that the passenger is sat upright.

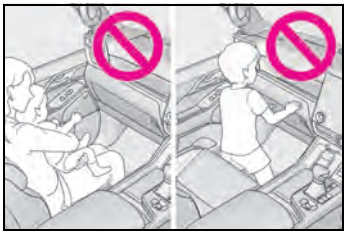
● Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.40)

● Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



● Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag or sit on the lap of a front passenger.

● Front seat occupants should never hold items on their lap.



● Do not lean against the door, roof side rail, or front, side, or rear pillar.

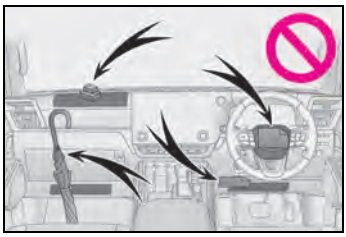


● Do not allow anyone to kneel on a seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

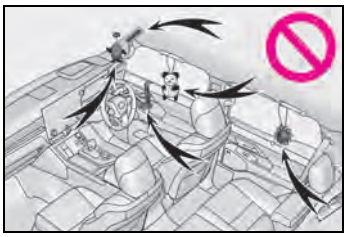


WARNING

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as the doors, windshield, side windows, front or rear pillars, roof side rails and assist grips.



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. These items could become projectiles if the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, possibly leading to death or serious injury.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts from which the SRS airbags deploy, as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the SRS airbags from deploying correctly, may disable the system or cause the SRS airbags to inflate unintentionally, possibly resulting in death or serious injury.
- If a vinyl cover is attached to the area where the SRS knee airbag deploys, be sure to remove it.
- Do not strike or apply significant force to the SRS airbag system components, front doors or their surrounding area. Doing so may cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any components of the SRS airbags immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If a part where an SRS airbag is stored is damaged or cracked, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy unintentionally, possibly leading to death or serious injury.

- Removal, installation, disassembly or repair of the SRS airbags
- Repair, removal or modification of the following parts or their surrounding
  - Steering wheel
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
  - Seats
  - Seat upholstery
  - Front pillars
  - Side pillars
  - Rear pillars
  - Roof side rails

WARNING

- Front door panels
- Front door trim
- Front door speakers

- Modifications to the front door panels (such as making holes in them)
- Repair or modification of the following parts or their surrounding
  - Front fender
  - Front bumper
  - Sides of the vehicle interior
- Installation of the following parts or accessories
  - Bull bars or kangaroo bars
  - Snow plows
  - Winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

WARNING

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P.98, 150)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats etc.

WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the side windows, the moon roof (if equipped) or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.40

When using a child restraint system: P.41

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.43

Child restraint system installation method: P.47

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.48
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor: P.50
- Using a child restraint anchor fitting: P.51

Points to remember

- Prioritize and observe the warnings, as well as the laws and regulations

for child restraint systems.

- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.
  Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P.43)

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle (→P.43). Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to a rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

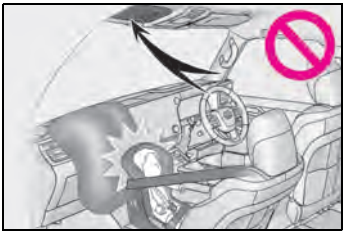


WARNING

■ When using a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it! This is because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
  There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING



WARNING

- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the left-hand second seat



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

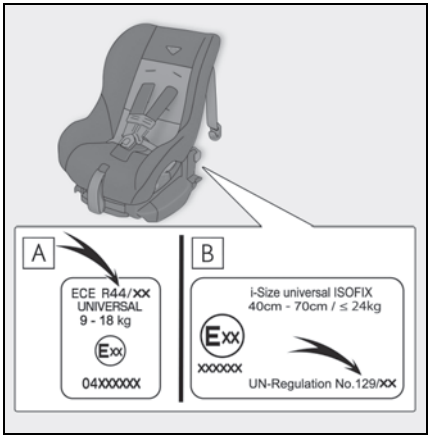
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.44) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following [Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems].

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.

Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



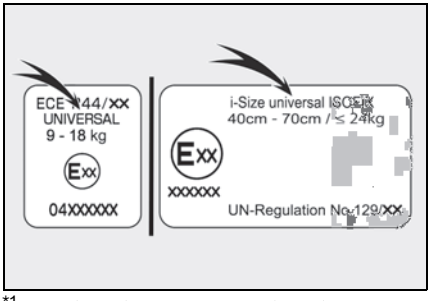
Example of the displayed regulation number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*3]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark[*3]
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



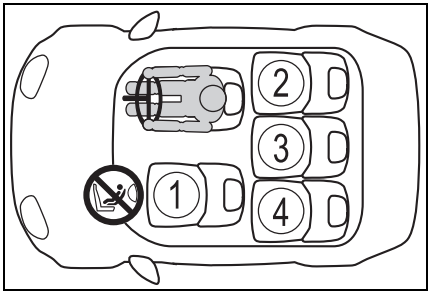
[*1]: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

[*2]: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

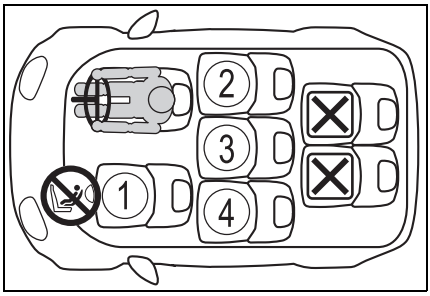
[*3]: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

▶ 5-passenger models



▶ 7-passenger models



1 *1, 2, 3	UF *4
2 *2, 3	U
3 *2, 3	
4 *2, 3	U

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

UF Suitable for fixed installing a forward-facing child seat with vehicle seat belt "universal" category child restraint system.

Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

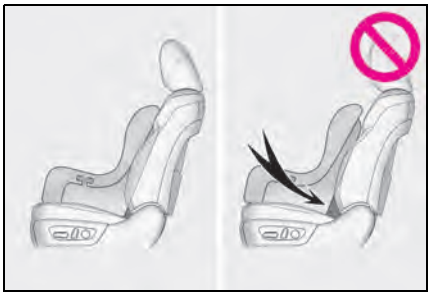
Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Not suitable for child restraint system.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①	②	③	④
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	No	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X, F2, F3	No	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	B2, B3 Belt fixation only	B2, B3	No	B2, B3

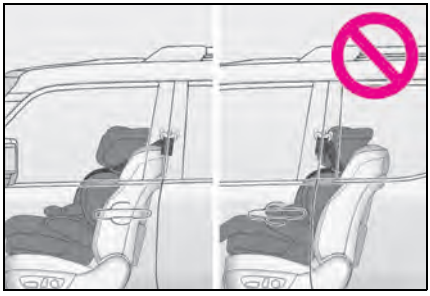
ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Fixture	Description
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

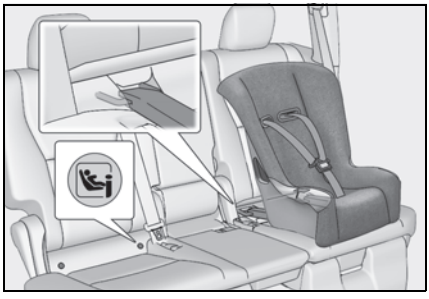
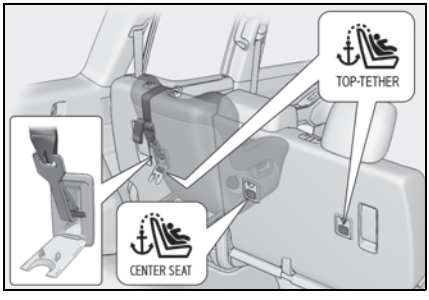
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.48
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment		P.50
Child restraint anchor fitting attachment		P.51

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child restraint system. (→P.43, 44)

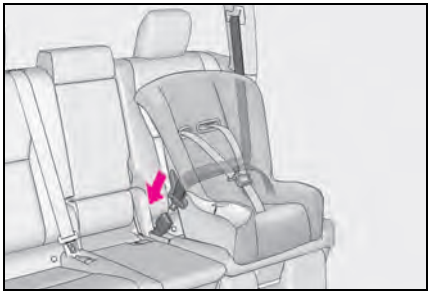
1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is

unavoidable, refer to P.41 for the front passenger seat adjustment.

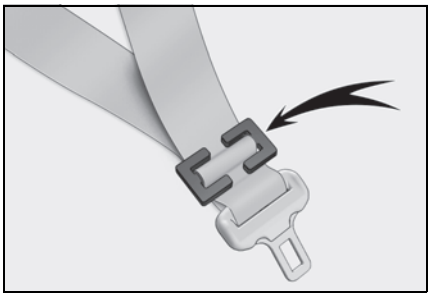
2 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

3 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.132)

4 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



5 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



6 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.50)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

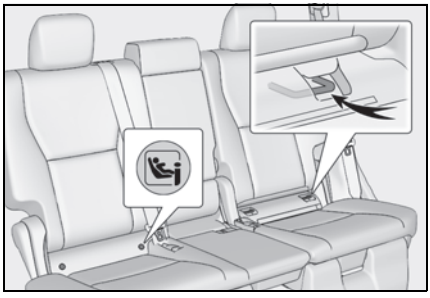
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

■ ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the second outboard seats. (Marks displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



■ Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child restraint system. (→P.43, 44)

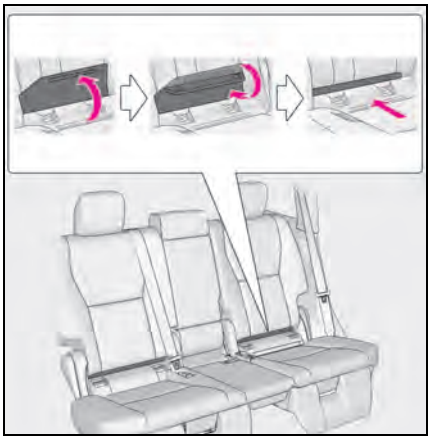
1 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.132)

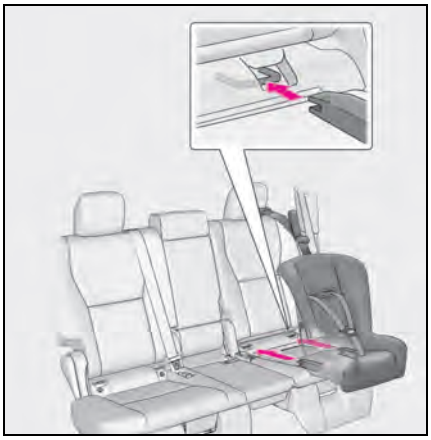
3 Open the cover.

Put the cover between the seat cushion and seatback.



4 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed between the seat cushion and seatback.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.50)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Using child restraint anchorages

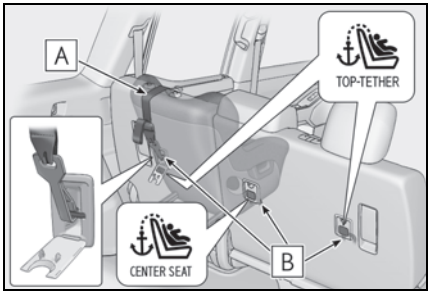
WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Using a child restraint anchor fitting

■ Child restraint anchor fitting

Anchor fittings are provided for each second seat.

Use anchor fittings when fixing the strap.



A Upper anchorage strap

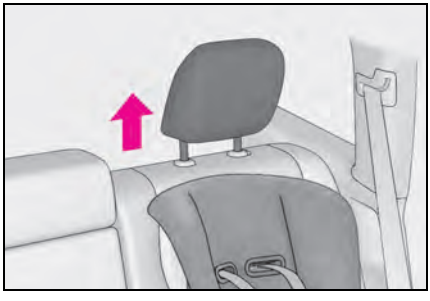
B Anchor fittings

■ **Fixing the upper anchorage strap to the anchor fitting**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

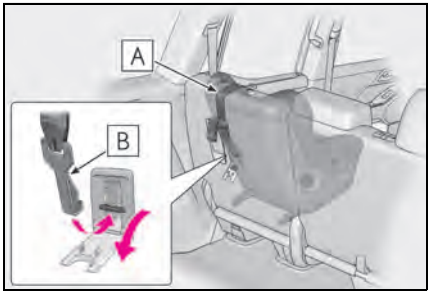
If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. (→P.132)



2 Open the anchor fitting cover, latch the attaching clip onto the anchor fitting and tighten the upper anchorage strap.

Make sure the upper anchorage strap is securely latched. (→P.50)

When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the upper anchorage strap pass underneath the head restraint.



A Upper anchorage strap

B Attaching clip

WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the upper anchorage strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the upper anchorage strap to anything other than the anchor fitting.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the anchor fitting has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

WARNING

- When installing a child restraint system in the second center seat, adjust both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ Using child restraint anchorages

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ Child restraint anchor fitting

When not in use, make certain to close the cover. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

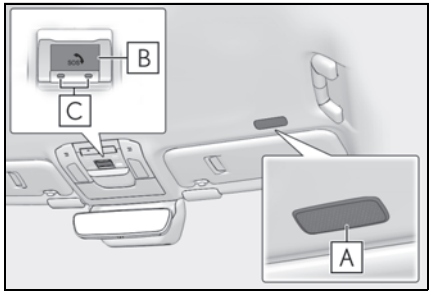
Lexus Connected Services*1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: Operates within the Lexus Connected Services coverage.

Lexus Connected Services are telematics services that use Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to enable the following emergency calls to be made: ACN (Automatic Collision Notification) and SOS Emergency Call (Manual emergency service notification) (by pressing the "SOS" button). For more information about Lexus Connected Services, please visit: https://www.lexus.com.au/connectivity

System components



A Microphone

B "SOS" button*

C Indicator lights

*: This button is intended for communication with the Emergency Call Centre. Other SOS buttons available in other systems of a motor vehicle do not relate to the device and are not intended for communication with the Emergency Call Centre.

Lexus Connected Services

■ ACN (Automatic Collision Notification)

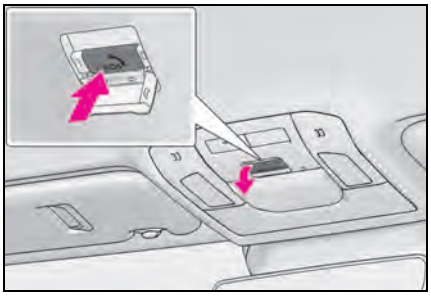
If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the Emergency Call Centre.* The Call Centre Agent will determine your vehicle's location, the time of the incident and the vehicle VIN, and attempt to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the situation. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the Call Centre Agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and contacts emergency services to describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.55)

■ SOS Emergency Call (Manual emergency service notification)

In the event of an emergency, press the "SOS" button to call the Emergency Call Centre.* The Call Centre Agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the situation, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

Make sure to open the cover before pressing the "SOS" button.



If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the Call Centre Agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.55)

Indicator lights

When the engine switch is turned to ON, the red/green indicator lights will blink intermittently, then the green indicator light will remain ON, indicating that the system is enabled. The indicator lights indicate the following:

- If the green indicator light illuminates and stays on, the system is enabled.
- If the green indicator light flashes twice per second, the ACN/SOS service is being made.
- If the red indicator light illuminates at any time other than immediately after the engine switch is turned to ON, the system may be malfunctioning or the backup battery may be depleted. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).

The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

http://www.opensourceautomotive.com/dcm/19MC/

WARNING

When the ACN/SOS may not be made

- It may not be possible to make ACN/SOS in any of the following situations. In such cases, report to emergency services provider (000 system etc.) by other means such as nearby public phones.
- Even when the vehicle is in the cellular phone service area, it may be difficult to connect to the Emergency Call Centre if the reception is poor or the line is busy. In such cases, you may not be able to connect to the Emergency Call Centre.
- When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the ACN/SOS cannot be made.
- When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment) is malfunctioning, damaged or broken, the ACN/SOS cannot be made.
- Enabled Lexus vehicles collect and transmit vehicle data to provide connected services. SOS and Automatic Collision Notification may be disabled if green LED under SOS button is not illuminated. For more info including reactivation, visit https://www.lexus.com.au/privacy

WARNING

- During an ACN/SOS service the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the Emergency Call Centre. However, if it cannot connect to the Emergency Call Centre due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. A voice prompt notification will play from the vehicle speaker to indicate call disconnection.

- If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to connect to the Emergency Call Centre.

- The ACN/SOS system might not work outside of Australia region, depending on the available infrastructure in the country.

■ When the ACN/SOS system is replaced with a new one

The ACN/SOS system should be registered. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ For your safety

- Please drive safely.
  The function of this system is to assist you in contacting the appropriate emergency services in case of accidents such as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seatbelts at all times for your safety.

- In case of an emergency, ensure preservation of life is prioritised first.

- If you smell anything burning or other unusual smells, leave the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.

- If the airbags deploy when the system is operating normally, the system makes emergency call. The system also makes emergency call when the vehicle is struck from the rear or rolls over, even if the airbags do not deploy.

- For safety, do not press the "SOS" button while driving.
  Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
  Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of your surroundings before pressing the "SOS" button.

- When changing fuses, please use the specified fuses. Using other fuses may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and lead to a fire.

- Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage

Do not pour any liquids onto the "SOS" button panel, etc. and do not impact it.

■ If the "SOS" button panel, speaker or microphone malfunctions during an ACN/SOS service

It may not be possible to make ACN/SOS, confirm the system status, or communicate with the Call Centre Agent. If any of the above equipment is damaged, please consult your Lexus dealer.

Engine immobilizer system

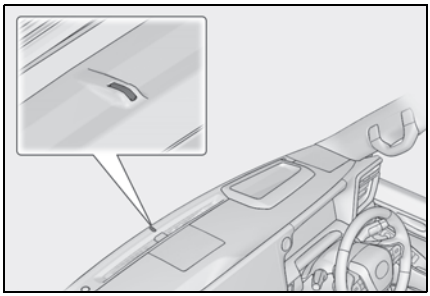
The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating. The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACC or ON to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected. The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or back door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (Example: an intruder breaks a window and gets into the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.

Setting/deactivating/stopping the alarm system

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

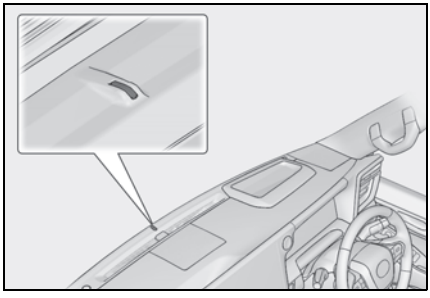
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Setting

Close the doors, back door and hood, and lock all the doors.

The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Deactivating or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors.
- Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

Setting the alarm

The alarm can be set if all the doors are closed even with the hood open.

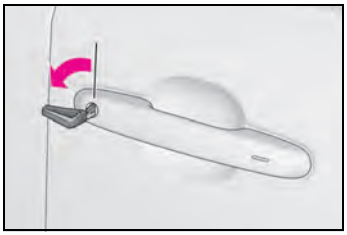
System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

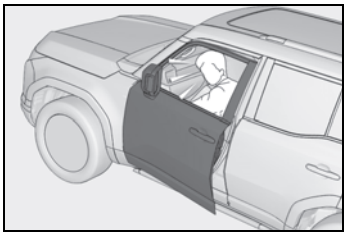
Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations: (Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

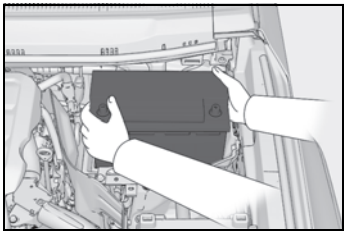
- The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the back door or hood, or unlocks the vehicle.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.498)



■ Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.516)

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Pre-alarm

If a door is unlocked with the mechanical key while the alarm is being set, the pre-alarm will sound for 10 seconds.

If either the door is locked again or the pre-alarm is stopped within those 10 seconds, an alarm will sound.

Do any of the following in order to deactivate or stop the pre-alarm:

- Close the doors, and lock all doors by smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.
- Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

■ The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all

intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.58)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Touch the Shortcut screen switch on the center display.

2 Touch .

Operation of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be canceled, and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

Touch the switch again to set the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor again.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

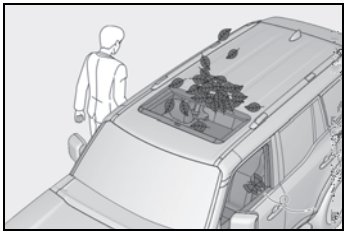
■ Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

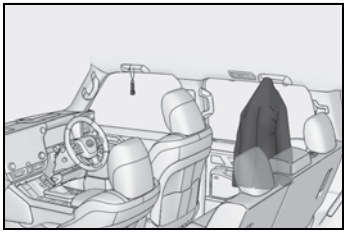
- People or pets are in the vehicle.



- A window or the moon roof (if equipped) is open. In this case, the sensor may detect the following:
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle

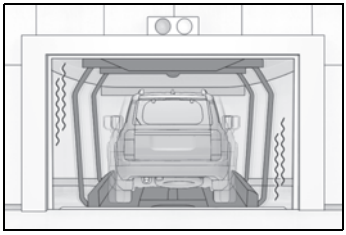


- Small insects such as moths or flies are in the vehicle.
- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.

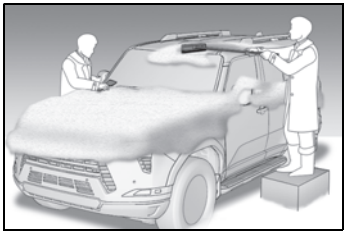


- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such

as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

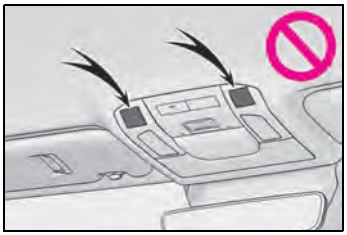
The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from the roof luggage carrier.

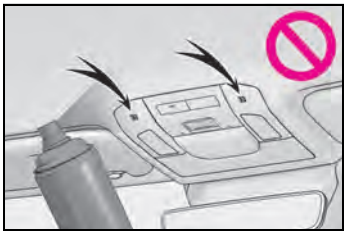
NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

2-1. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators..64

Gauges and meters 69

Multi-information display.....74

Head-up display 75

Displayed content..... 78

Warning lights and indicators

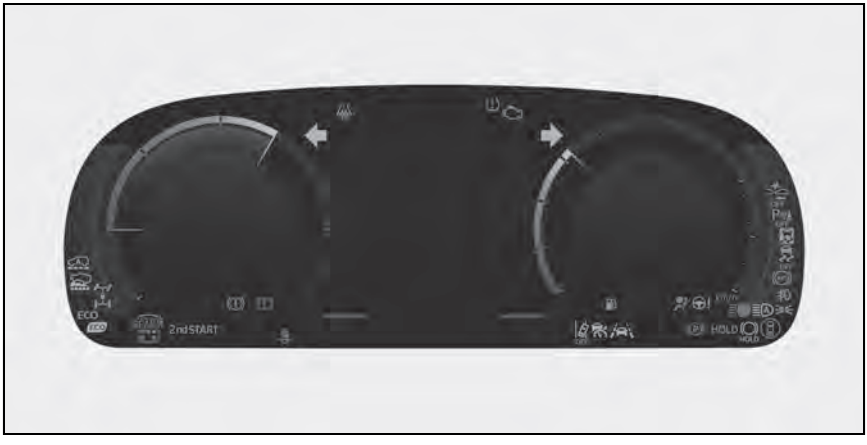
The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Warning lights and indicators displayed on the instrument cluster

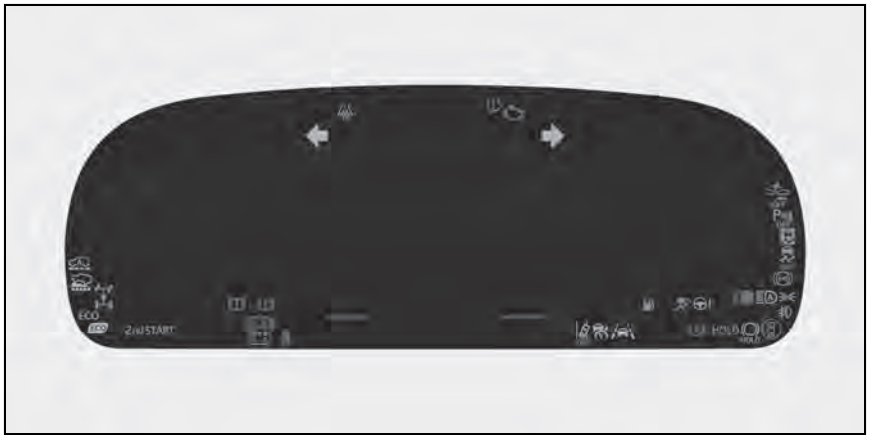
▶ Type 1



▶ Type 2



▶ Type 3



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

(Red) Brake system warning light*1 (→P.470)

(Yellow) Brake system warning light*1 (→P.470)

Charging system warning light*2 (→P.470)

Low engine oil pressure warning light*2 (→P.471)

High coolant temperature warning light*2 (→P.471)

Malfunction indicator lamp*1 (→P.471)

SRS warning light*1 (→P.471)

ABS warning light*1 (→P.472)

(Red) Power steering system warning light*1 (→P.472)

(Yellow) Power steering system warning light*1 (→P.472)

PCS warning light*1 (→P.472)

(Yellow) LTA indicator (→P.472)

(Yellow) LDA indicator (→P.473)

(Yellow) Cruise control indicator (→P.473)

(Yellow) Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (→P.473)

Driving assist information indicator*1 (→P.473)

Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator*1 (→P.474)


Inappropriate pedal operation warning light*2 (→P.474)


Slip indicator light*1 (→P.474)



(Flashes)
Low speed four-wheel drive indicator (→P.475)


(Flashes)
Center differential lock indicator (→P.475)


(Flashes)
Rear differential lock indicator (if equipped) (→P.475)


(Flashes)
Parking brake indicator (→P.475)



(Flashes)
Brake hold operated indicator*1 (→P.475)


Low fuel level warning light (→P.476)


Tire pressure warning light*1 (→P.476)


Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.476)



Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (→P.477)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

WARNING

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P.188)


Tail light indicator (→P.194)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P.195)


AHS indicator (if equipped) (→P.196)

AHB indicator (→P.200)


Front fog light indicator (→P.202)



PCS warning light*1, 2 (→P.218)


(White)
LTA indicator (→P.231)


(Green)
LTA indicator (→P.231)


(Yellow) (Flashes)
LTA indicator (→P.231)


(Green)
LDA indicator (→P.235)


(Yellow) (Flashes)
LDA indicator (→P.235)



LDA OFF indicator*2 (→P.235)


(Green)
Cruise control indicator (→P.251)


(White)
Cruise control indicator (→P.251)


(Green)
Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (→P.247)


(White)
Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (→P.247)


Driving assist information indicator*1, 2 (→P.254, 260, 269, 275)


Outside rear view mirror indicators*3 (→P.254, 260, 269)



Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator*1, 2 (→P.264)


Lexus parking assist-sensor detection indicator*6 (→P.264)



Eco Driving Indicator Light*1 (→P.80)


(Flashes)
Slip indicator light*1 (→P.370)



VSC OFF indicator*1, 2 (→P.370)


Downhill assist control system indicator*1 (→P.367)


Crawl Control indicator*1 (→P.361)



Second start mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.185)



Low speed four-wheel drive indicator (→P.357)


Center differential lock indicator (→P.358)


Rear differential lock indicator (if equipped) (→P.360)


Parking brake indicator (→P.188)



Brake hold standby indicator*1 (→P.191)



Brake hold operated indicator*1 (→P.191)


Smart entry & start system indicator*4 (→P.179)


Low outside temperature indicator*5 (→P.71)


Stop light indicator (→P.68)



Eco drive mode indicator (→P.355)



SPORT mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.355)



Comfort mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.355)



SPORT S mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.355)



SPORT S+ mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.355)



Custom mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.355)


AUTO mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.364)


DIRT mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.364)


SAND mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.364)


MUD mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.364)


DEEP SNOW mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.364)


ROCK mode indicator (if equipped) (→P.364)



"TOW HAUL" indicator (→P.187)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

*3: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*4: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

*5: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

*6: Vehicles without Center Display or rear camera

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator**

Vehicles without Center display: The indicators turn off when the shift position is changed to R regardless of whether the Lexus parking assist-sensor function is turned on or off.

■ **Stop light indicator**

This light comes on when the stop lights are illuminated by the operation of the brake pedal or the driving assist system.

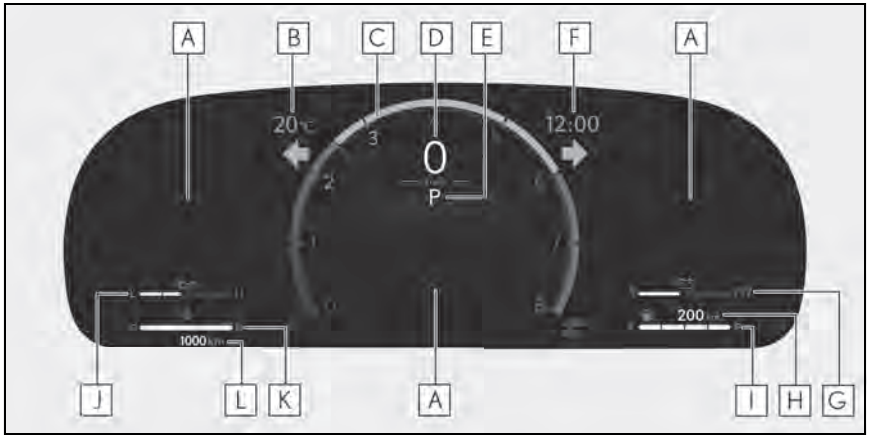
Gauges and meters

Meter display

■ Locations of gauges and meters

The meter display type setting can be changed. (→P.516)

▶ Type1/ Type3



A Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P.74)

Displays warning messages if a malfunction occurs (→P.479)

B Outside temperature (→P.71)

C Tachometer (Type 1 only)

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

D Digital speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

E Shift position and shift range/gear position

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range/gear position (→P.183)

F Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information. For details, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

G Voltmeter

Displays the charge state

H Distance to empty

Displays the driving range with remaining fuel. (→P.71)

I Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

J Engine oil pressure gauge

Displays the engine oil pressure

K Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

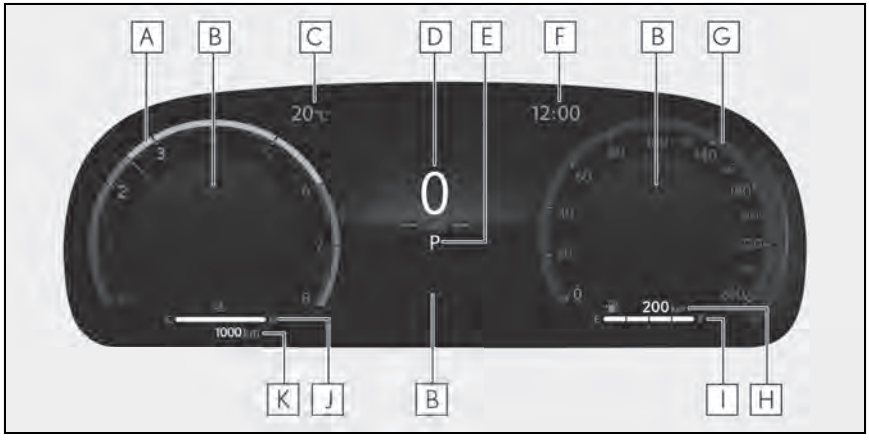
L Odometer, trip meter and oil maintenance

Odometer:
Displays the total distance that the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Oil maintenance:
Displays the distance until the next engine oil change.

▶ Type 2



The location of some displayed items and the units of measure may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

A Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

B Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.74)

Displays warning messages if a malfunction occurs (→P.479)

C Outside temperature (→P.71)

D Digital speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

E Shift position and shift range/gear position

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range/gear position. (→P.183)

F Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information.
For details, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

G Analog speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

H Distance to empty

Displays the driving range with remaining fuel (→P.71)

I Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

J Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

K Odometer and trip meter display (→P.72)

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Distance to empty**

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated. When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.
- When "Refuel" is displayed, the remaining fuel amount is low and the distance that can be driven with the remaining fuel cannot be calculated. Refuel immediately.

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning.
  Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.
- Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator  will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic

of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS). The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

https://www.yazaki-group.com/rd-tech/oss/880

WARNING

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.502)

■ Voltmeter

When the voltmeter indicates 19 V or higher, or 9 V or lower while the engine is running, there may be a battery or charging system malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ Engine oil pressure gauge

When the value of the engine oil pressure gauge drops while the engine is running, stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the amount of engine oil. (→P.434)

When the oil pressure drops even though the engine oil amount has not decreased, or if the oil pressure does not increase when engine oil is added, contact your Lexus dealer, as there may be a problem with the lubrication system.

Using the "ODO TRIP" switch

■ Display items

- Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

- Trip meter A/trip meter B

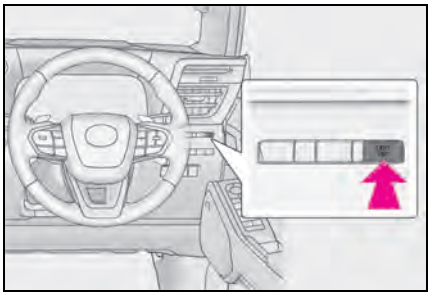
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

- Distance until next engine oil change

Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary.

■ Changing the display

Each time the "ODO TRIP" switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the switch will reset the trip meter.

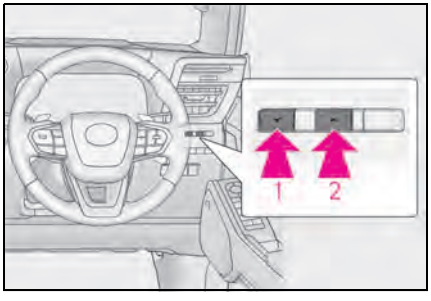


■ Pop-up display

Distance until the next engine oil change will be displayed when a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.

Adjusting the meter brightness

The meter brightness can be adjusted.



1 Darker

2 Brighter

■ Brightness of the meter lights (day mode and night mode)

The brightness of the meter lights can be adjusted individually.

In the following situations, the meters changes between day mode and night mode.

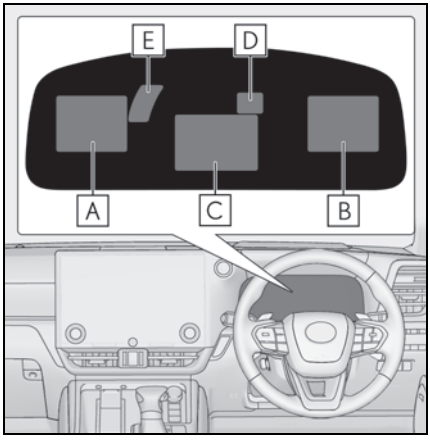
- Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark

Multi-information display

The multi-information display is used to display fuel efficiency related information and various types of driving-related information. The multi-information display can also be used to change the display settings and other settings.

Display contents

Following information is displayed in each area on the multi-information display.



A Content display area (left)

B Content display area (right)

C Content display area (center)

D Driving support system information display area

When driving support system information is displayed on the content display area, the system operating state will not be displayed in this area.

E RSA (Road Sign Assist) display area (→P.237)

■ **Content display area (center)**

- Blank (→P.85)
- Driving support system information display (→P.80)
- Map display (→P.80)

■ **Content display area (left/right)**

- Blank (→P.85)
- Fuel Economy (→P.79)
- Eco Driving Indicator (→P.80)
- Driving support system information display (→P.80)
- Navigation system-linked information display (→P.80)
- Audio system-linked display (→P.80)
- Drive information display (→P.81)
- Traction monitor (→P.81)
- Pitch & Roll (→P.81)
- Auxiliary Gauges (→P.83)
- Engine/Transmission oil temperature (→P.84)
- Turbo Gauge (→P.84)
- G-force (→P.84)

■ **The multi-information display is displayed when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Liquid crystal display**

→P.71

■ **When changing driving mode**

Background color of the multi-information display is changed following the selected

driving mode. (→P.355)

WARNING

■ **Caution for use while driving**

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

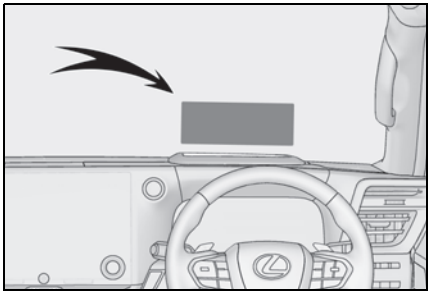
■ **The information display at low temperatures**

→P.72

Head-up display

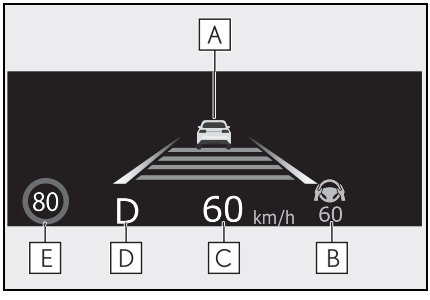
The head-up display projects a variety of driving-related information and the operating state of the driving support systems on the windshield.

Head-up display



The meter display type setting of head-up display can be changed. (→P.516)
The content displayed will differ according to the driving conditions and display mode of the head-up display. Depending on the situation, pop-up displays will also be displayed.

■ **Full**



Illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed by the

head-up display.

A Driving support system display area (→P.80)/Navigation system-linked display area/Tachometer display area (→P.78)

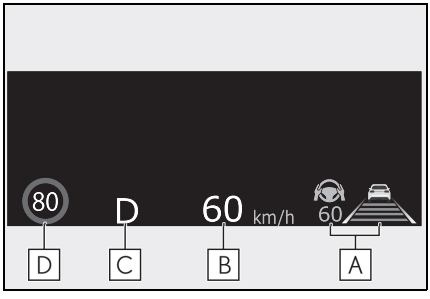
B Driving support system display area (→P.80)

C Speedometer

D Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.183)

E RSA (Road Sign Assist) display (→P.237)

■ Standard



Illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed by the head-up display.

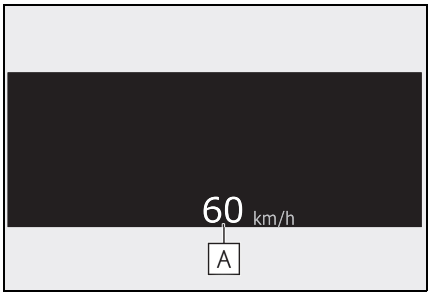
A Driving support system display area (→P.80)

B Speedometer

C Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.183)

D RSA (Road Sign Assist) display (→P.237)

■ Minimum



A Speedometer

■ Head-up display will operate when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ When using the head-up display

The head-up display may seem dark or hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

■ Street name display

Only street names which are included in the map data will be displayed.

WARNING

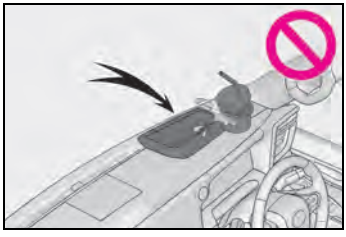
■ When using the head-up display

- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ Head-up display projector

● Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.



● Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.

● Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

Using the head-up display

■ Changing settings of the head-up display

1 Select ⚙ on the Center display.

2 Select "Vehicle customise".

3 Select "Head up display".

The following settings can be changed.

● Enabling/disabling the head-up display

Select to enabling/disabling the head-up display.

● Head-up display type

Select to change head-up display type. (→P.75)

● Brightness and vertical position of the head-up display

Select to adjust the brightness or vertical position of the head-up display.

● Display angle

Select to adjust the angle of the head-up display.

■ Enabling/disabling of the head-up display

If the head-up display is disabled, it will remain disabled when the engine switch is turned off then back to ON.

■ Display brightness

In addition to the brightness setting, the brightness of the display will change automatically according to the ambient brightness.

■ Head-up display automatic adjustment

If the display setting is recorded into memory, the head-up display will be automatically adjusted. (→P.159)

■ When the battery is disconnected

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

WARNING

■ Caution for changing settings of the head-up display

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

When changing the settings of the head-up display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while changing the settings of the head-up display.

Tachometer display area

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

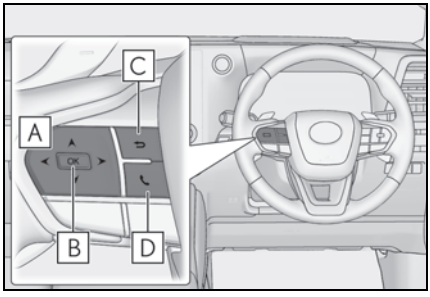
Tachometer is displayed when

Tachometer is displayed when all of the following conditions are met:

- When LTA (Lane Tracing Assist), LDA (Lane Departure Alert) and dynamic radar cruise control is turned off.
- Full mode (→P.75) is selected as head-up display type.
- When other than Eco driving mode is selected.

Displayed content

Components/Operations



A < / > : Change the screen and move the cursor

^ / v : Change the displayed content and scroll up/down the screen

B Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset/Display customizable items, display the cursor

C Return to the previous screen

D Call sending/receiving and history display

Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Display of drive information

Driving related information is displayed on the following displays.

- Multi-information display
- Head-up display
- Center display

The items displayed will differ depend-

ing on the display.

Switching the display of the multi-information display

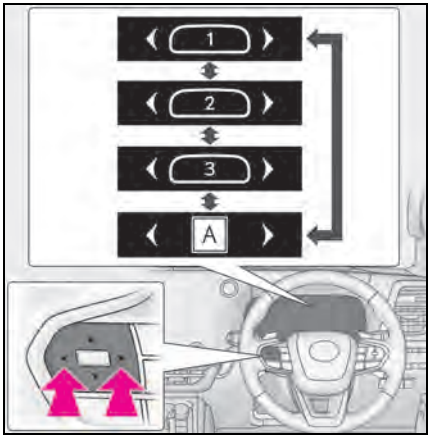
■ Changing the meter display type setting

The meter display type setting can be changed on the ⚙ screen of the Center display. (→P.516)

■ Changing the screen

Select items from the combination of 3 screens to display on each 3 content display areas.

Press ＜ or ＞ of the meter control switches to change the screen.



A Warning message

Select to display a warning message.

If there is no warning messages, this page will not be displayed. (→P.86)

■ Changing the display contents

Switches items displayed on each contents display area (left/center/right).

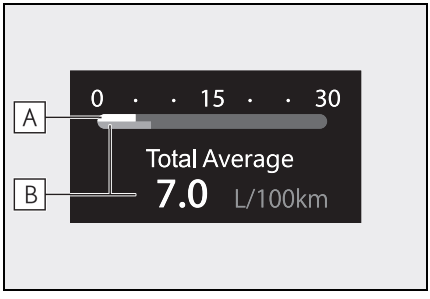
1 Press ＜ or ＞ to select the screen.

2 Press and hold OK to display the cursor on the content display area (center).

3 Press ＜ or ＞ to move the cursor and select the content display area.

4 Press ∧ or ∨ to select the items.

Fuel Economy



A Current fuel economy

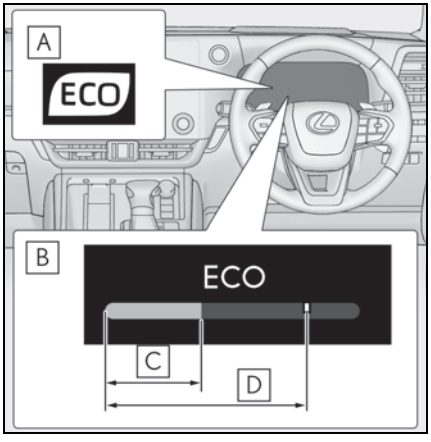
Displays the driving range with remaining fuel.

B Average fuel economy after reset*

*: Use the displayed fuel consumption as a reference only.

Eco Driving Indicator

■ Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration operation (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

If the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, the right side of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate. At this time, the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

D Zone of Eco driving

■ The ECO Driving indicator will not operate when

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift position is in any position other than D.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Driving support system information display

The operating state of the following systems can be displayed on the multi-information display or head-up display.

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.228)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) (→P.232)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (→P.239)
- Cruise control (→P.249)

Map display

Displays the map data according to the navigation system.

Navigation system-linked display

The following information is displayed on the multi-information display.

- Route guidance to destination
- Street name
- Compass

Audio system-linked display

The operating conditions of the audio system can be displayed on the multi-

information display.

Driving information display

The following items can be displayed on the multi-information display.

Use the displayed information as a reference only.

- "Average Speed": Displays the average vehicle speed since the display was reset.
- "Total Time": Displays elapsed time since the display was reset.

Off-road information display

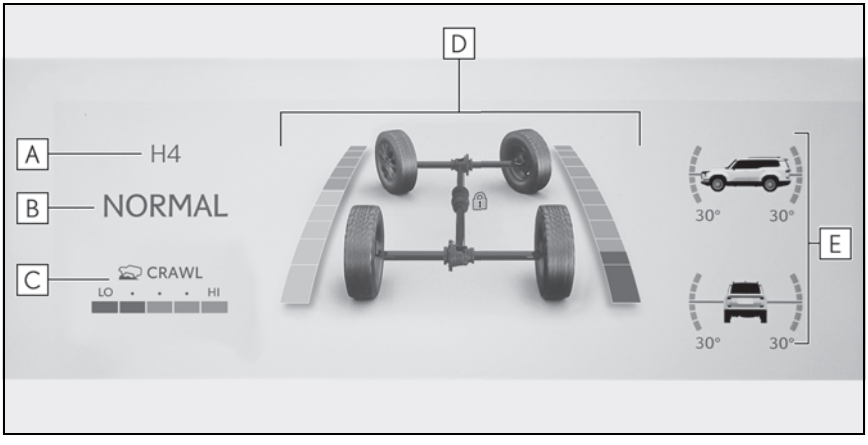
The following information is displayed on the Center display.

■ **Displaying the off-road information display on the Center display**

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select "Off-road information".

■ **Off-road information display**



A Transfer mode (→P.357)

B Driving mode (→P.355)

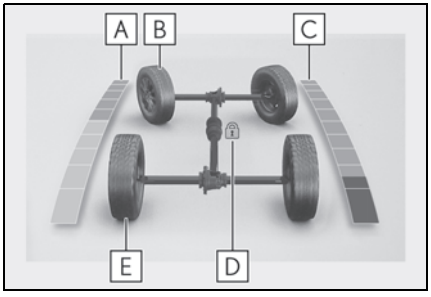
C Crawl control display (→P.83)

D Traction monitor display (→P.82)

E Inclinometer display (Pitch & roll display) (→P.82)

■ **Traction monitor display**

▶ Center display



A Push the brake pedal monitor

Displays the push the brake pedal level.

B Front tire direction display

Displays the operation amount and direction of the steering wheel via changes to the front tires on the display.

C Throttle opening monitor

Displays the real time throttle opening.

D Differential lock system operation status

Displays the operation status when center differential or rear differential is locked. (→P.358, 360)

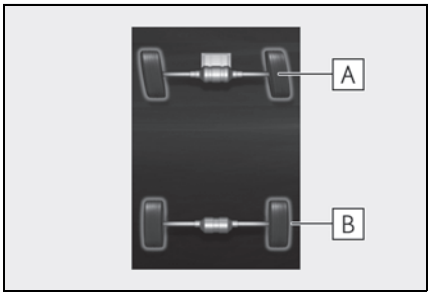
E Wheel spin display*

When a tire is spinning, its icon on the display changes its color and blinks.

*: This item is displayed only when driving mode is set to sport mode.

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display or Center display.

▶ Multi-information display



A Front tire direction display

Displays the operation amount and direction of the steering wheel via changes to the front tires on the display.

B Wheel spin display*

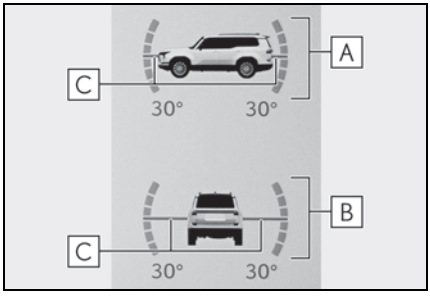
When a tire is spinning, its icon on the display changes its color and blinks.

*: This item is displayed only when driving mode is set to sport mode.

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display or Center display.

■ **Inclinometer display (Pitch & roll display)**

▶ Center display



A Degree markers of incline to the front and rear

Indicates the vehicle inclination in degrees in the front and rear directions.

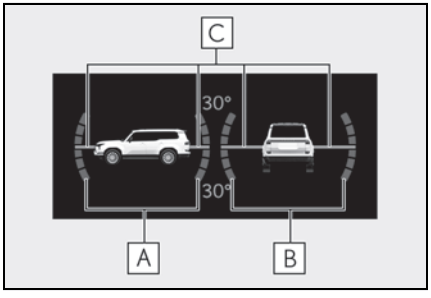
B Degree markers of incline to the left and right

Indicates the vehicle inclination in degrees in the left and right directions.

C Pointer

Indicates the degree of the vehicle inclination in comparison to a parallel line.

▶ Multi-information display



A Degree markers of incline to the front and rear

Indicates the vehicle inclination in degrees in the front and rear directions.

B Degree markers of incline to the left and right

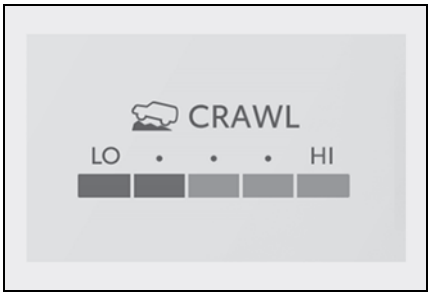
Indicates the vehicle inclination in degrees in the left and right directions.

C Pointer

Indicates the degree of the vehicle inclination in comparison to a parallel line.

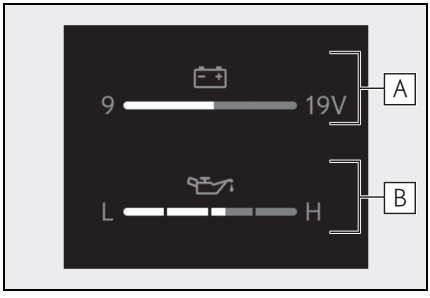
■ **Crawl control display (if equipped)**

Crawl Control operating condition is displayed. (→P.362)



Auxiliary Gauges

The following items can be displayed on the multi-information display.



A Voltmeter

Displays the charge state.

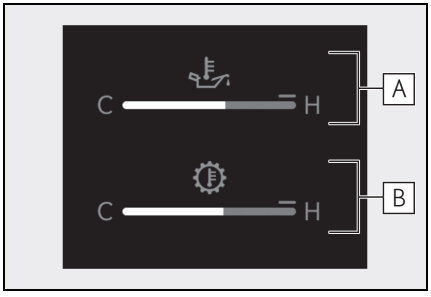
B Engine oil pressure gauge

Displays the engine oil pressure. A buzzer will sound and warning message will be displayed if the engine oil pressure becomes low. (→P.471)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

Engine oil temperature gauge/transmission oil temperature gauge

The following items can be displayed on the multi-information display.



A Engine oil temperature gauge

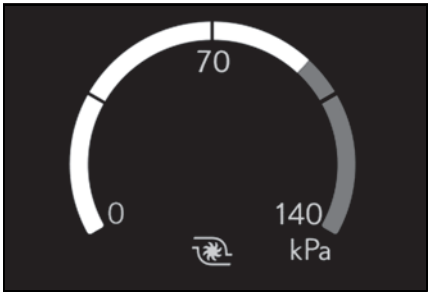
Displays the engine oil temperature. The display will flash if the engine oil temperature exceeds 140°C (284°F).

B Transmission oil temperature gauge

Displays transmission oil fluid temperature.

Turbo Gauge

Boost pressure can be displayed on the multi-information display.



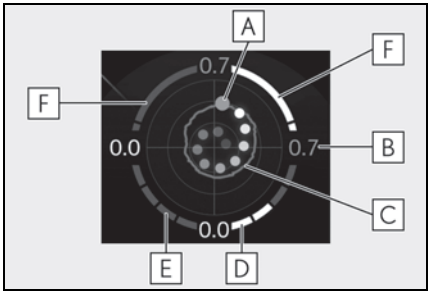
This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

G-force

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle on the multi-information display.

Displays around the periphery of the G-force display, the left and right steering amount, accelerator pedal input, and brake fluid pressure.

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.



A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

C Record of the maximum G-forces

D Accelerator pedal input

E Brake fluid pressure

F Steering amount

● Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

The display is reset each time the engine is started.

● Peak hold function

If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are generated, the G-force value display will turn amber and be held for 2 seconds.

■ G-force display

● The G-force values may not be zero even when the vehicle is parked, such as when it is parked on an incline.

● Depending on the vehicle usage conditions, the brake fluid pressure display may not reach its maximum reading even though the brake pedal is fully depressed.

● If a battery terminal is disconnected and reconnected, the steering amount display may be disabled temporarily. After driving the vehicle for a while, the display will be enabled.

Blank (No items)

Displays no drive information contents on the multi-information display.

Tire pressure

The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the Center display.

■ **Displaying the tire pressure on the Center display**

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select "Tyre pressure".

■ Tire inflation pressure

→P.443

Current fuel consumption/history screen

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the Center display.

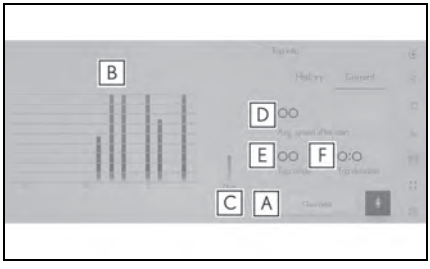
■ **Displaying fuel consumption/history screen on the Center display**

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select "Trip info".

3 Select "Current" or "History".

■ **Current fuel consumption screen**



A Resetting the history data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

C Current fuel consumption

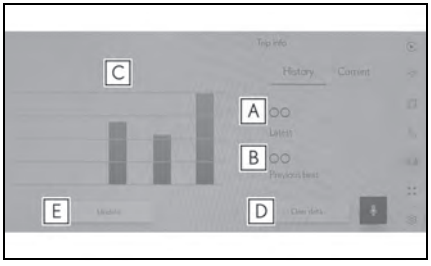
D Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

E Trip range

F Elapsed time since the engine was started.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference. The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ History fuel consumption screen



A Latest fuel consumption

B Best recorded fuel consumption

C Previous fuel consumption record

D Resetting the history data

E Updating the latest fuel consumption data

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference. The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ Updating the history data

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ Resetting the data

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear data".

■ Trip range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

Pop-up display information

Pop-up displays will be displayed on the multi-information display or the head-up display when necessary.

When a pop-up display is displayed, a current display may no longer be displayed. In this case, the display will return after the pop-up display disappears.

■ Driving support systems

Displays a warning/suggestion/advice message or the operating state of a relevant system.

- Dynamic radar cruise control
- Cruise control
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)
- Safe Exit Assist

■ Warning message

Some warning messages are displayed when necessary, according to certain conditions.

Warning messages are disappeared by pressing and holding switch function change switch. (→P.78)

■ Hands-free system status

Displayed when the hands-free system is operated.

■ Suggestion function

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. To select a response to a displayed suggestion, use the steering switches.

- Suggestion to turn off the headlights

If the headlights are left on for a certain

amount of time after the engine switch has been turned off, a suggestion message will be displayed.

- Suggestion to enable the power back door

If the power back door system is disabled (setting on the Center display set to off) and the power back door switch on the instrument panel is operated, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to enable the power back door system.

- Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)

If the windshield wipers are operated with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows.

To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

- Suggestion to close the power windows (Driving at high speeds)

If the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows.

To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Steering wheel switch operation display**

Displayed when an audio remote control switch or a talk switch on the steering wheel is operated.

■ **Navigation system-linked information**

Depending on the situation, navigation system-linked route guidance to destination may be displayed.

Items displayed when the engine switch is turned off

The following items will be displayed on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned off.

- Distance driven since starting*
- Driving time since starting*
- Average fuel consumption since starting*

*: It is reset each time the engine stops.

3-1. Key information

Keys 90

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Side doors 94

Power running boards 99

Back door 101

Glass hatch 116

Smart entry & start system 119

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 124

Rear seats 126

Head restraints 132

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel 135

Inside rear view mirror 136

Digital Rear-view Mirror 137

Outside rear view mirrors 145

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 148

Moon roof 151

3-6. Favorite settings

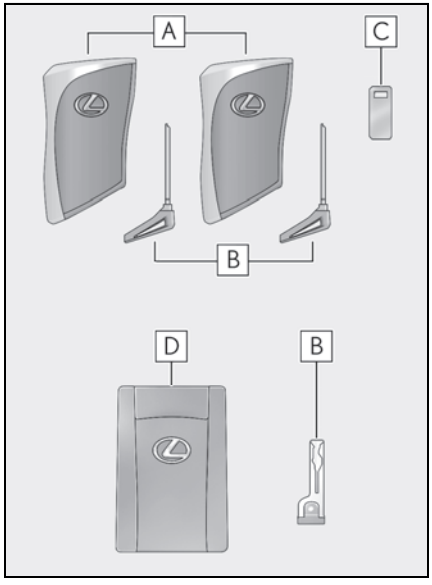
Driving position memory 154

My Settings 159

Keys

Key types

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.119)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P.92)

B Mechanical keys

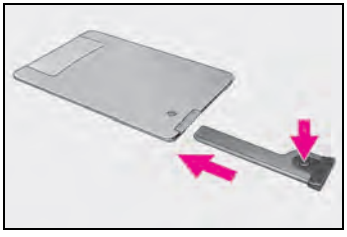
C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

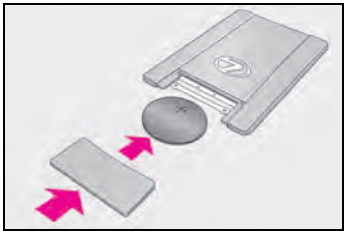
Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.119)

■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years (The card key battery life is from one year to one year and a half.).
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will

sound in the cabin when the engine stops.

- To reduce key battery depletion when the electronic key is to not be used for long periods of time, set the electronic key to the battery-saving mode. (→P.120)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary.
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- You can replace the battery by yourself (→P.455). However, as there is a danger that the electronic key may be damaged, it is recommended that replacement is carried out by your Lexus dealer.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers
- If the electronic key is near the vehicle for longer than necessary, even if the smart entry & start system is not used, the key battery may become depleted faster than normal. When not using the smart entry & start system, it is recommended not to stay with the electronic key near the vehicle longer than necessary.

If a message regarding the state of the electronic key or engine switch mode, etc. is shown

To prevent trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle, leaving the vehicle carrying the electronic key on your person without turning the engine switch to OFF or other passengers from unintentionally taking the key out of the vehicle, etc., a message that prompts the user to confirm the state of the electronic key or engine switch mode may be shown on the multi-information display. In those cases, follow the instructions on the display immediately.

If "Key Battery Low Replace Key Battery" is displayed on the multi-information display

The electronic key has a low battery. Replace the electronic key battery. (→P.455)

Replacing the key battery

→P.455

Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer.

If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is shown on the multi-information display

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately 10 days after a new electronic key has been registered.

If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask your Lexus dealer to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your possession) has been registered.

NOTICE

To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer, etc.

NOTICE

- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers.
- Do not place the keys near medical electrical equipment such as low-frequency therapy equipment or microwave therapy equipment, and do not receive medical attention with the keys on your person.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

→P.496

■ When an electronic key is lost

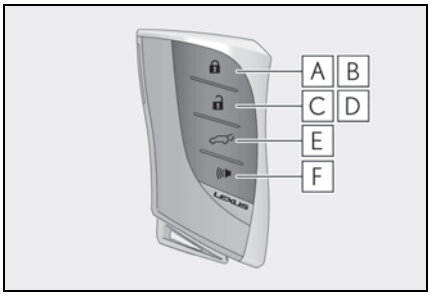
→P.496

■ Handling the card key (if equipped)

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



A Locks all the doors (→P.94)

B Closes the windows and the moon roof*1, 2 (→P.94)

C Unlocks all the doors (→P.94)

D Opens the windows and the moon roof*1, 2 (→P.94)

E Opens and closes the power back door (→P.103)

F Sounds the alarm (→P.93)

*1: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

*2: If equipped

Panic mode

When is pressed for longer than about 1 second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

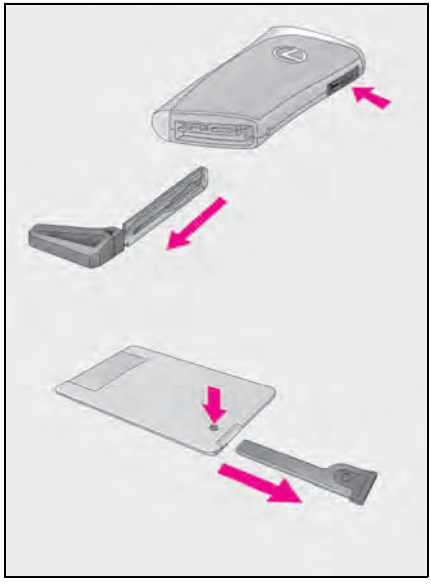


Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.496)



When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box (→P.401) as necessary. Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

If you lose your mechanical keys

→P.496

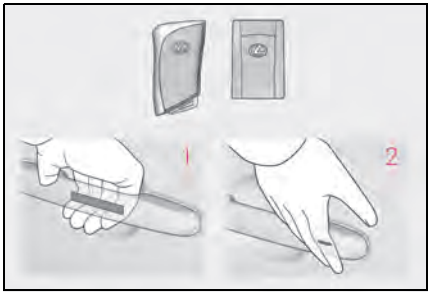
Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control, door lock switches or inside lock buttons.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Using the entry function

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Grip the front door handle or rear door handle with the sensor (if equipped) to unlock the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

2 Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the surface of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Using the wireless remote control



1 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Press and hold to close the windows and moon roof (if equipped). *

2 Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

Press and hold to open the windows and moon roof (if equipped). *

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control. Perform the switching operation in the vehicle or within approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) of the vehicle.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (→P.59)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation

is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step **3**.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
 Exterior: Beeps 3 times	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
	Holding a passenger's door handle unlocks all the doors.
 Exterior: Beeps twice	Holding the door handle unlocks all the doors.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door or the glass hatch is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.58)

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Side windows and moon roof (if equipped): A buzzer sounds to indicate that the side windows and moon roof are operating.

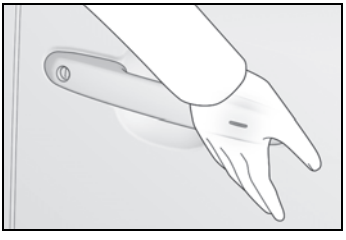
■ Security feature

If a door or the glass hatch is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again. (However, depending on the location of the electronic key, the key may be detected as being in the vehicle. In this case, vehicle may be unlocked.)

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle

When the door cannot be locked even if the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle is touched by a finger, touch the lock sensor with the palm.

When gloves are being worn, remove the gloves.



■ Door lock buzzer

A buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds in the following situations. Fully close all the doors and glass hatch, and lock the vehicle once more.

- If an attempt to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system is made when a door other than the door you are locking or the glass hatch is open.
- If an attempt to lock the doors using the wireless remote control is made when a door or the glass hatch is open.

■ Setting the alarm

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.58)

■ Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control

→P.120

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.496)
- Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.455)

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The doors cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the doors using the mechanical key. (→P.496)

■ **Passenger and rear seat reminder function**

As the first reminder so as not to forget luggage, etc. in the front passenger seat or a rear seat, when the engine switch is turned off after any of the following conditions are met, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 6 seconds.

Also, as the second reminder, when the doors are locked, a buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash for a few seconds, and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

- Rear seat reminder function: The engine is started within approximately 10 minutes after opening and closing a rear door.

Front passenger seat and rear seat reminder function: The engine is started within approximately 15 minutes after opening and closing a rear door or the front passenger's door.

- A rear door or the front passenger's door has been opened and closed after the engine was started.

The second reminder will not be activated if a rear door or the front passenger door was opened before the doors are locked.

When this function is disabled by following the message displayed on the meters, the passenger and rear seat reminder will be off.

This function will be re-enabled when the engine switch is turned to ON.

However, if the front passenger's door or a rear door is opened and then closed within approximately 2 seconds, the passenger and rear seat reminder function may not operate.

The passenger and rear seat reminder function determines that luggage, etc. has been placed in the front passenger seat or a rear seat based on opening and closing of the front passenger door or a rear door. Therefore, depending on the situation, the passenger and rear seat reminder function may not operate and you may still forget luggage, etc. in the front passenger seat or a rear seat, or it may operate unnecessarily.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant could be thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  Be especially careful for the diver's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the second seat.

WARNING

■ When opening or closing a door

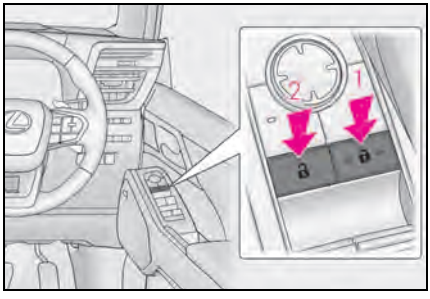
Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

■ When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ Using the door lock switches

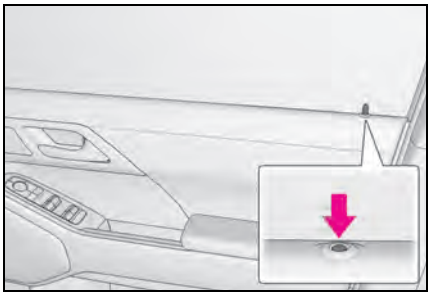


1 Locks all the doors

2 Unlocks all the doors

■ Inside lock buttons (to lock)

Push down the inside lock button to lock the door.



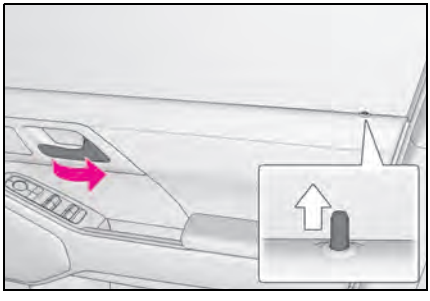
■ Inside door handles (to unlock)

For the front doors: Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

For the rear doors: Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.



■ Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Push down the inside lock button. (→P.97)

2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACC or ON, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

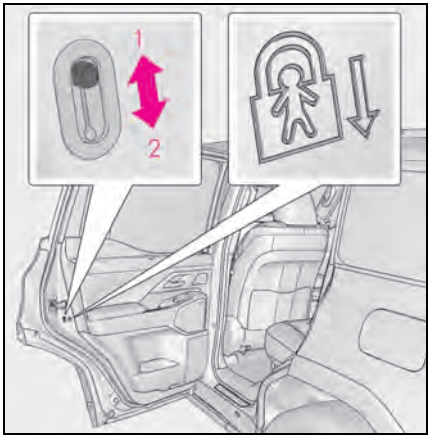
However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

■ **If a symbol indicating one or more doors are open is shown on the multi-information display**

The hood or one or more of the doors are not fully closed. The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed. Make sure that the hood and all the doors are closed.

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.



1 Unlock

2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P.516.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of P locks all the doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to P unlocks all the doors.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All the doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within approximately 45 seconds after turning the engine switch off.

Power running boards*

*: If equipped

The power running board deploys when opening a side door.

The power running board is stowed by closing a side door, operating the switch inside the vehicle, or by driving 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.

WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the power running boards**

Observe the following precautions.

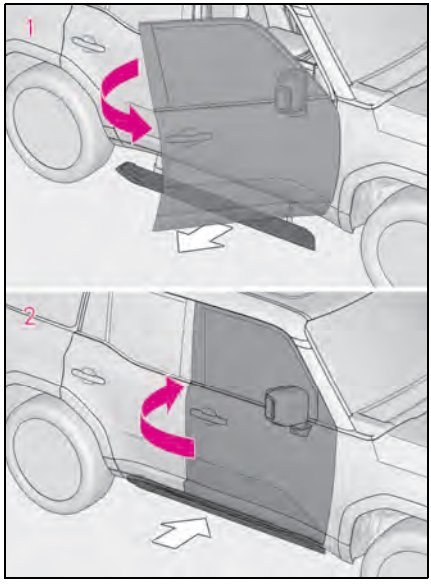
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers and people in the vehicle's surrounding area do not have a hand on the board or any part of their body in a position where it could be caught between the board and the vehicle when the power running board is being operated.
- Confirm that the boards have completely deployed or retracted before getting in or out of the vehicle. If someone gets in or out of the vehicle during the power running boards operation, the boards may stop deploying or stowing.
- Take care when pressing the power running board switch. The boards will deploy or stow and may hit other people or objects.
- Always check that the power running board switch is turned off when cleaning the boards, before jacking up or placing any object under the vehicle, or if boards are not operating correctly.
- Do not allow children to operate the power running boards. Operating the power running boards so that the board contacts someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.
- After driving, if the engine is running continuously, the power running boards may be hot. When getting in or out of the vehicle, be careful so that any bare skin does not come in contact with the metal portions.

■ **Jam protection function**

Do not place any body part between the board and vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury, as the jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught.

Side door linked operation (automatic mode)



1 Opening a door: The appropriate board deploys.

2 Closing a door: The appropriate

board retracts.

■ **Jam protection function**

If a board contacts an obstacle when deploying, it will retract. If an obstacle gets caught between a board and the vehicle when retracting, the board will deploy.

If an obstacle is detected 3 times in a row during power running board operation, the board will stop at the position it contacts the obstacle. Once the obstacle is cleared, when the side door on the same side as the board is opened and closed, or when the switch is operated, the board will attempt to retract or deploy again.

■ **Automatic stowing function**

The boards will be automatically stowed, for safety, under the following conditions:

- A board is not completely stowed
- Vehicle speed is approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher

The boards will not automatically deploy again until vehicle speed returns to less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

■ **If "Power Steps Unable to Deploy See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-Information display**

The board may not be completely deployed.

Close and open the door once more or use the switch inside the vehicle and completely deploy the board. (→P.100)

■ **If "Power Steps Unable to Retract See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-Information display**

The boards may not be completely stowed.

Check that nothing is caught between the boards and the vehicle.

■ **If "Power Steps System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When snow or mud is attached to the boards or the boards are frozen**

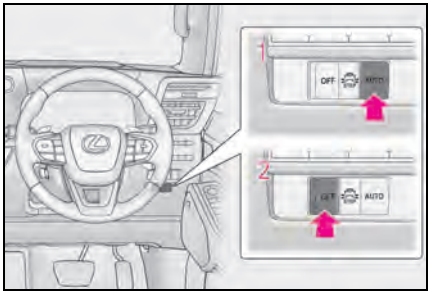
The power running boards may not operate properly. Before stepping on the power running board, make sure it is fully deployed.

If the power running boards are not operating properly, remove any snow, mud, or ice. If the power running boards still do not operate correctly, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **When getting in and out of the vehicle**

Take care because clothes and shoes may become dirty due to contact with the lower part of the vehicle body.

Deploying and stowing the power running boards from inside



1 Sets the power running boards to automatic mode.

Automatic mode allows the deploying/stowing of the boards to be linked to opening/closing of the side doors. (→P.99)

2 Stows the running boards on both sides.

■ **Automatic stowing function**

The boards will be stowed automatically for safety when the vehicle speed is approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

Perform the following initialization procedure.

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Press the "AUTO" switch then press the "OFF" switch quickly 10 times within 5 seconds.

The power running boards are fully deployed and then stowed.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened/closed by the following procedures.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Before driving**

- Make sure that the back door is fully closed.
  If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the luggage compartment may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could get heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

■ **Important points while driving**

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects or luggage in the luggage compartment may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment.
  In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully, while on a steep incline. Make sure that the back door is secured before using the luggage compartment.
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

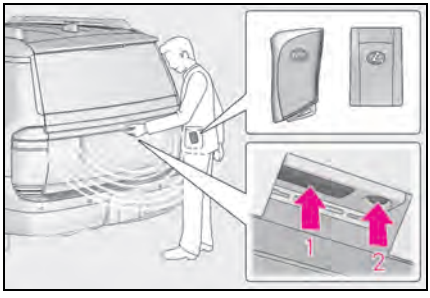


- Do not pull on the back door spindle (→P.113) to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door spindle. Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door spindle to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Unlocking and locking the back door from the outside

■ Using the entry function

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

2 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Using the wireless remote control

→P.94

■ Operation signals

→P.95

■ Security feature

→P.95

Unlocking and locking the back door from the inside

■ Using the door lock switches

→P.97

Opening/closing the back door

■ Using the wireless remote control

Press and hold the switch.

The power back door automatically opens/closes.

Unlock the back door before operating.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing stops the operation. When the switch is pressed and held again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.



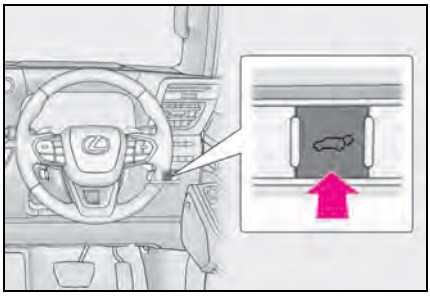
■ Using the power back door switch on the instrument panel

Press and hold the switch.

The power back door automatically opens/closes.

Unlock the back door before operating.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing stops the operation. When the switch is pressed and held again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.



■ Using the switches on the back door

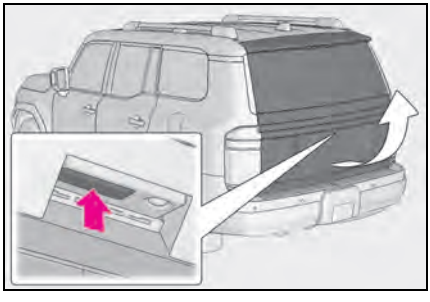
● Open

When the back door is unlocked: Press the back door opener switch.

When the back door is locked: While carrying the electronic key on your person, press and hold the back door opener switch.

The power back door automatically opens.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is opening/closing stops the operation.



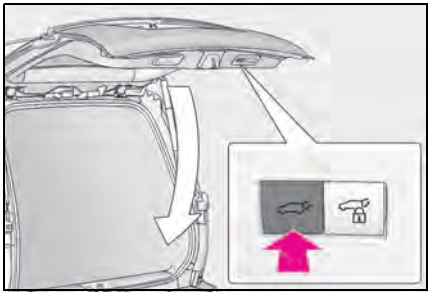
● Close

Press the switch on the lower part of the back door.

The power back door automatically closes.

Pressing the switch while the power back door is operating will stop the opera-

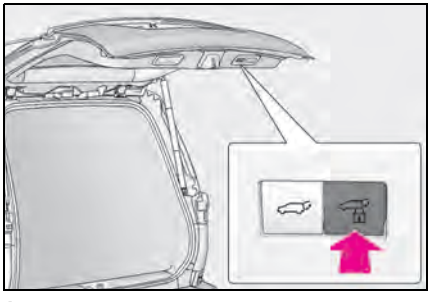
tion. When the switch is pressed again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.



- Close the back door and lock all doors after moving away from the back door (close & lock [Walk-Away] function)

1 Close all of the doors except the back door, carrying an electronic key and press the switch on the lower part of the back door.

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby.



2 While the buzzer is sounding, move away from the back door.

When the sensor detects that you are away from the back door, the buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash. Depending on the direction of moving away from the back door, the location and how to hold the electronic key or circumstances, it may not be detected properly.

All the doors other than the back door will be locked, and after the back door is closed, the back door will also be locked. When all the doors have been closed and locked, the buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash.

The standby state is canceled if you do not move away from the back door for 30 seconds. To operate the function again, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If you approach the back door carrying the electronic key, the back door operation will stop, all the doors will be unlocked, and the buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash.

If the switch is pressed after the back door operation has stopped, the close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby again.

- Close the back door and lock all doors (close & lock function)*

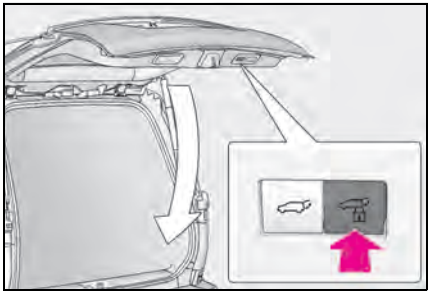
*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Close all of the doors except the back door, carrying an electronic key and press the switch on the lower part of the back door.

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the back door will begin closing automatically. All the doors except the back door are locked and then back door will also be locked at the same time it is closed. Operation signals will indicate that all the doors have been closed and locked. (→P.95)

Pressing the switch while the back door is operating will stop the operation.

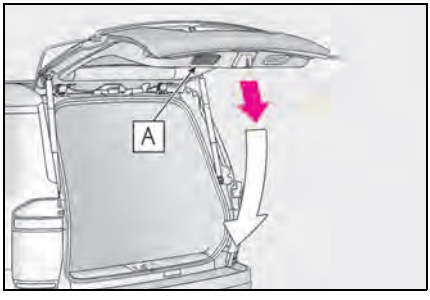
When the switch is pressed again during the halted operation, the back door will be closed.



Using the back door handle

Lower the back door using the back door handle [A].

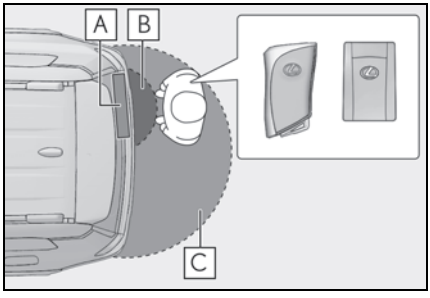
The back door closing assist (→P.108) will be activated, and the power back door will fully close automatically.



Using the Hands Free Power Back Door (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

The Hands Free Power Back Door enables automatic opening and closing of the power back door by putting your foot near the right lower part of the rear bumper and moving it away from the rear bumper. When operating the Hands Free Power Back Door, make sure that the engine switch is in OFF, the Hands Free Power Back Door operation is enabled and you are carrying an electronic key.

1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approximately 30 to 50 cm (11.8 to 19.7 in.) from the rear bumper.



[A] Kick sensor

[B] Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

[C] Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.119)

2 Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper, and then pulling your foot back after the buzzer sounds.

Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.

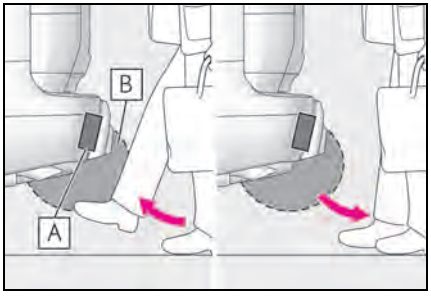
The back door will not start operating while a foot is detected under the rear bumper.

Operate the Hands Free Power Back Door without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.

If another electronic key is in the cabin or luggage compartment, it may take slightly longer than normal for the operation to occur.

If the buzzer sounds twice, perform a kick

operation again.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

3 When the kick sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a buzzer will sound and the back door will automatically fully open/close.

If a foot is moved under the rear bumper while the back door is opening/closing, the back door will stop moving.

If a foot is moved under the rear bumper again during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.

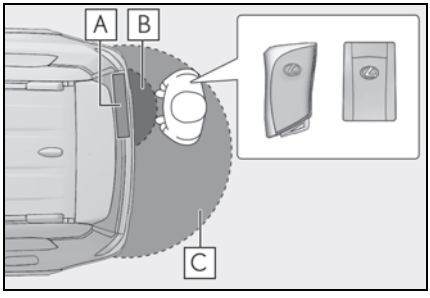
■ **Closing and locking the back door after moving away from the back door using the kick sensor (Hands Free close & lock [Walk-Away] function)** *1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

The Hands Free Power Back Door enables automatic closing and locking of the power back door by putting your foot near the right lower part of the rear bumper, moving it away from the rear bumper, and moving away from the back door. When operating the Hands Free Power Back Door, make sure that the engine switch is in OFF, the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation is enabled and you are carrying an electronic key.

1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approximately 30 to 50 cm (11.8 to 19.7 in.) from the rear bumper.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

C Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.119)

2 Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper, and then pulling your foot back after the buzzer sounds.

Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.

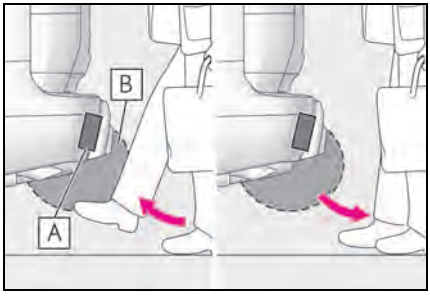
The back door will not start operating while a foot is detected under the rear bumper.

Operate the Hands Free Power Back Door without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.

If another electronic key is in the cabin or luggage compartment, it may take slightly

longer than normal for the operation to occur.

If the buzzer sounds twice, perform a kick operation again.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Back Door operation detection area

3 When the kick sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby.

4 While the buzzer is sounding, move away from the back door.

When the sensor detects that you are away from the back door, the buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash. Depending on the direction of moving away from the back door, the location and how to hold the electronic key or circumstances, it may not be detected properly.

All the doors other than the back door will be locked, and after the back door is closed, the back door will also be locked. When all the doors have been closed and locked, the buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash.

The standby state is canceled if you do not move away from the back door in 30 seconds. To operate the function again, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If you approach the back door carrying the electronic key, the back door operation will stop, all the doors will be unlocked, and the buzzer will sound and the emergency flashers will flash.

If the power back door is operated after the back door operation has stopped, the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function will go into standby again.

Luggage compartment lights

- The luggage compartment lights turn on when the back door is opened.
- When the engine switch is turned to OFF, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

Back door closer

In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

Whatever the state of the engine switch, the back door closer operates.

Power back door operating conditions

The power back door can automatically open and close under the following conditions:

- When the power back door system is enabled.
- When the back door is unlocked.

However, if the back door opener switch is pressed and held while carrying the electronic key on your person, the power back door will be operated even if the back door is locked. (→P.103)

- When the engine switch is in ON, in addition to the above for the opening operations, the back door operates for any of the following conditions:
  - Parking brake is engaged
  - The brake pedal is depressed
  - The shift lever is in P.

Operation of the power back door

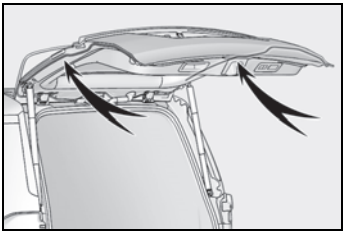
- A buzzer sounds to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.
- When the power back door system is dis-

abled, the power back door does not operate but it can be opened and closed by hand.

- When the power back door automatically opens, if an abnormality due to people or objects is detected, operation will stop.

■ **Jam protection function**

Sensors are equipped on both sides of the power back door. If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing, the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction or stop.



■ **Fall-down protection function**

While the power back door is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the power back door from suddenly shutting.

■ **Back door closing assist**

If the back door is lowered manually when the back door is stopped at an open position, the back door will fully close automatically.

■ **Back door reserve lock function**

This function is a function which reserves locking of all doors, beforehand, when the power back door is open.

When the following procedure is performed, all the doors except the power back door are locked and then power back door will also be locked at the same time it is closed.

1. Close all doors, except the back door.
2. During the power back door closing operation, lock the doors using the smart entry & start system (→P.94) or the wireless remote control. (→P.94)

Operation signals will indicate that all the doors have been closed and locked. (→P.95)

- If the electronic key is placed inside the vehicle after starting a close operation via the door reserve lock function, the electronic key may become locked inside the vehicle.
- If the power back door does not fully close due to the operation of the jam protection function, etc., while the back door is automatically closing after a door reserve lock operation is performed, the door reserve lock function is canceled and all the doors will unlock.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that all the doors are closed and locked.

■ **Close & lock (Walk-Away) function operating conditions**

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- Close & lock (Walk-Away) function is enabled.
- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the back door are closed.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The engine switch is in OFF.
- The electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas).

■ **Situations in which the close & lock (Walk-Away) function may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the function may not operate properly:

- When the smart entry & start system does not operate properly.
- When the close & lock function does not operate properly.
- When moving away from the back door while the close & lock (Walk-Away) function is in the standby state.
- When the number of electronic keys registered in the vehicle increases.

■ **Close & lock function* operating conditions**

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the power back door are closed.
- The engine switch is in OFF.

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Situations in which the close & lock function* may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the close & lock function may not operate properly:

- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed by a hand which is holding an electronic key
- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed when the electronic key is in a bag, etc. that is placed on the ground
- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed with the electronic key not near the vehicle

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Hands Free Power Back Door operating conditions (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

The Hands Free Power Back Door will open/close automatically when the following conditions are met:

- The Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation is enabled
- The engine switch is in OFF, or ON with the shift lever in P.
- The electronic key is within the operational range. (→P.119)
- A foot is put near the right lower part of the rear bumper and moved away from the rear bumper.
  The power back door may also be operated by putting a hand, an elbow, a knee, etc. near the right lower part of the rear bumper and moving it away from the rear bumper. Make sure to put it close enough to the right lower part of the rear bumper.

■ **Situations in which the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

In the following situations, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly:

- When a foot remains under the rear bumper
- If the rear bumper is strongly hit with a foot or is touched for a while

If the rear bumper has been touched for a while, wait for a short time before attempting to operate the Hands Free Power Back Door again.

- When operated while a person is too close to the rear bumper
- When an external radio wave source interferes with the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle (→P.120)
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Back Door, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When mud, snow, ice, etc. is attached to

the rear bumper

- When the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear bumper, such as plants
- When an accessory is installed to the rear bumper

If an accessory has been installed, turn the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation setting off.

■ Preventing unintentional operation of the Hands Free Power Back Door (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

When an electronic key is in the operation range, the Hands Free Power Back Door may operate unintentionally, so be careful in the following situations.

To prevent unintentional operation, turn the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) operation setting off.

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When dirt is wiped off the rear bumper
- When a small animal or small object, such as a ball, moves under the rear bumper
- When an object is moved from under the rear bumper
- If someone is swinging their legs while sitting on the rear bumper
- If the legs or another part of someone's body contacts the rear bumper while passing by the vehicle
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Back Door, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the vehicle is parked in a place where objects such as plants are near the rear bumper
- If luggage, etc. is set near the rear bumper
- If accessories or a vehicle cover is installed/removed near the rear bumper
- When the vehicle is being towed

■ Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*1 operating conditions

This function can be operated when all of the following conditions are met:

- Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function is enabled*2.
- Hands Free Power Back Door*1 is enabled.
- An electronic key is not detected within the vehicle.
- All of the doors other than the back door are closed.
- The engine switch is in OFF.
- The electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas).

*1: If equipped

*2: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Situations in which the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*1, 2 may not operate properly

In the following situations, the function may not operate properly:

- When the smart entry & start system does not operate properly.
- When the close & lock function does not operate properly.
- When moving away from the back door while the Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function is in the standby state.
- When the number of electronic keys registered in the vehicle increases.
- When the Hands Free Power Back Door does not operate properly.*1

*1: If equipped

*2: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **When reconnecting the battery**

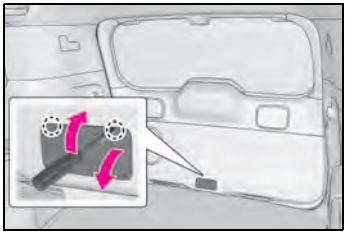
To enable the power back door to operate properly, close the back door manually.

■ **If the back door opener is inoperative**

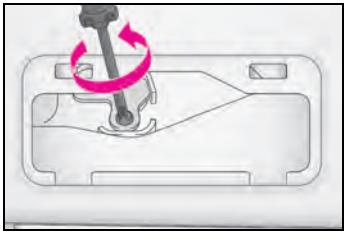
The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

1 Remove the cover.

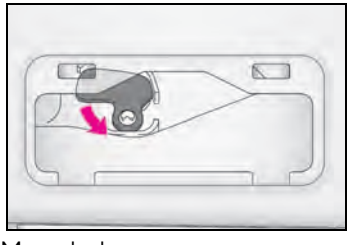
To prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



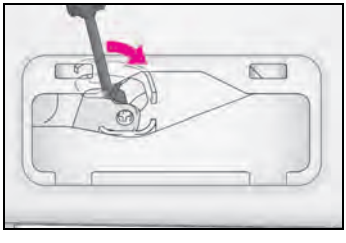
2 Loosen the screw.



3 Turn the cover.



4 Move the lever.



5 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

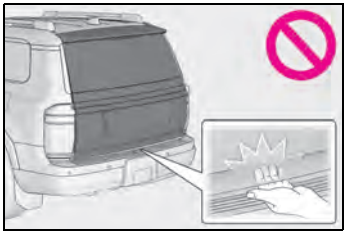
■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. power back door opening angle) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

■ **Back door closer**

- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is canceled.

■ **Power back door**

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.

WARNING

- If the power back door system is turned off while the back door is operating automatically, the automatic operation is stopped. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close unexpectedly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to ON or the engine is started during automatic operation
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

■ Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)

Observe the following precautions when operating the Hands Free Power Back Door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- When putting your foot under the rear bumper and moving it from the rear bumper, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes until they have cooled down sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.
- Do not leave the electronic key within the effective range (detection area) of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

■ Close & lock (Walk-Away) function and Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*1, 2

*1: If equipped

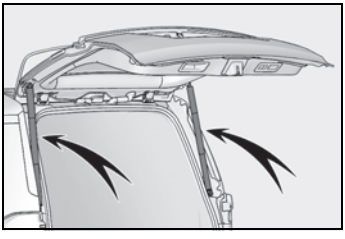
*2: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

The back door starts to close automatically when leaving the back door. Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.

NOTICE

■ Back door spindles

The back door is equipped with spindles that hold the back door in place. Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door spindle, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the spindle rod.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the spindle or apply lateral forces to it.

■ To prevent back door closer malfunction

Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating. Applying excessive force may cause the back door closer to malfunction.

■ To prevent damage to the power back door

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not close automatically.

■ Close & lock function*

When closing the power back door using the close & lock function, a different buzzer than the normal one will sound before the operation begins.

To check that the operation has started correctly, check that a different buzzer than the normal one has sounded.

Additionally, when the power back door is fully closed and locked, operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked. (→P.95)

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the operational signals have operated and that all of the doors are locked.

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ **Hands Free Power Back Door precautions (if equipped)**

The kick sensor is located behind the right lower part of the rear bumper. Observe the following to ensure that the Hands Free Power Back Door function operates properly:

● Keep the right lower part of the rear bumper clean at all times.

If the right lower part of the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate. In this situation, clean off the dirt or snow, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the Hands Free Power Back Door operates.
If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● Do not apply coatings that have a rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect, or other coatings, to the right lower part of the rear bumper.

● Do not park the vehicle near objects that may move and contact the right lower part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees.

If the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the right lower part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate. In this situation, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the Hands Free Power Back Door operates.
If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● Do not subject the rear bumper or its surrounding area to a strong impact.

If the rear bumper or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact, the Hands Free Power Back Door may not operate properly. If the Hands Free Power Back Door does not operate in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- The kick sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact.
- The right lower part of the rear bumper is scratched or damaged.

● Do not disassemble the rear bumper.

● Do not attach stickers to the rear bumper.

● Do not paint the rear bumper.

● If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, disable the Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor).

Canceling the power back door system

The power back door system can be enabled/disabled on the center display. (→P.516)

1 Select ⚙ on the center display.
2 Select “Vehicle customise”.
3 Select “Door control”.
4 Select “Power back door”.
5 Select (ON)/ (OFF).

When OFF is selected and the operations of the power back door is made to stop

from the center display, unless it is set to ON, the operation of the power back door will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

Canceling the Hands Free Power Back Door (if equipped)

The Hands Free Power Back Door (kick sensor) can be enabled/disabled on the center display. (→P.516)

1 Select ⚙ on the center display.
2 Select "Vehicle customise".
3 Select "Door control".
4 Select "Hands free".
5 Select (ON)/ (OFF).

When OFF is selected and the operations of the Hands Free Power Back Door is made to stop from the center display, unless it is set to ON, the operation of the Hands Free Power Back Door will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

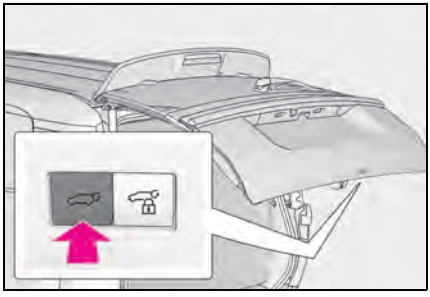
Adjusting the open position of the back door

The open position of the power back door can be adjusted.

1 Stop the back door in the desirable position. (→P.103)
2 Press and hold the switch on the lower part of the back door for approximately 2 seconds.

When the settings are completed, the buzzer sounds 4 times.

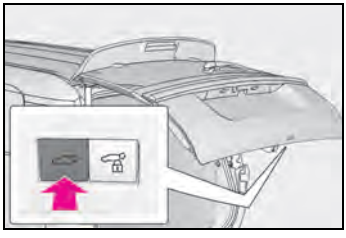
When opening the back door the next time, the back door will stop at that position.



Canceling the adjusted open position of the back door

Press and hold the switch on the lower part of the back door for approximately 7 seconds.

After the buzzer sounds 4 times, it sounds twice more. When the power back door does the opening operation the next time, the door will open to the initial settings position.



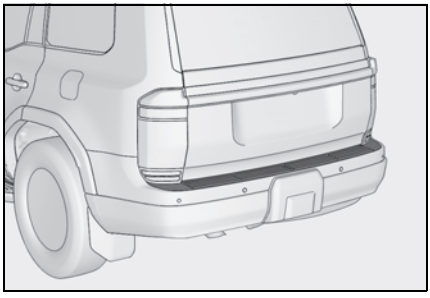
Customization

The opening position can be set with the center display. (→P.516)

Priority for the stop position is given to the last position set by either the switch on the lower part of the back door or center display.

Rear step bumper

The rear step bumper is for rear end protection and easier step-up loading.

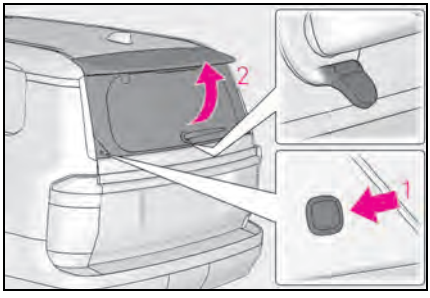


Glass hatch

The glass hatch can be opened using the glass hatch opener.

Opening the glass hatch

■ **Glass hatch opener**

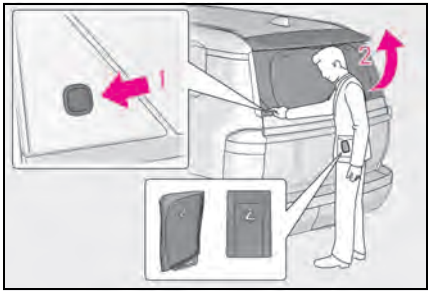


1 Press the button to pop up the glass hatch.

2 Raise

The glass hatch cannot be opened when the back door is locked. Unlock the back door to open the glass hatch. (→P.102)

■ **Smart entry & start system**



1 While carrying the electronic key, press the button to pop up the glass hatch.

2 Raise

The glass hatch can be opened even when the back door is locked.

■ **When opening the glass hatch**

- Open the glass hatch slowly and carefully.
- Use the glass hatch opener when the back door is closed.

■ **Opening the glass hatch while the rear window wiper is in operation**

Rear window wiper operation will stop moving. Operation will recommence after the glass hatch has been closed.

■ **Door lock buzzer**

→P.95

■ **After closing the glass hatch**

Check that the glass hatch is firmly closed. If it is not firmly closed, the power back door, the rear window wiper and washer will not operate correctly.

WARNING

■ **While driving**

- Keep the glass hatch closed while driving.

If the glass hatch is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.

In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the glass hatch before driving.

- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the glass hatch is fully closed. If the glass hatch is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Do not allow a child to open or close the glass hatch.

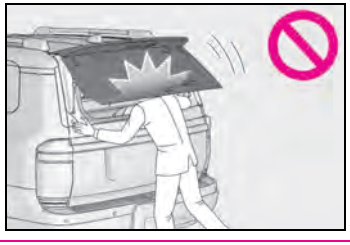
Doing so may cause the glass hatch to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing glass hatch.

■ **Operating the glass hatch**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the glass hatch before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the glass hatch suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the glass hatch, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the glass hatch is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the glass hatch in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The glass hatch may close if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the glass hatch on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the glass hatch unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the glass hatch is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



WARNING

- When closing the glass hatch, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc. from being caught.



- When closing the glass hatch, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface.
- Do not pull on the glass hatch damper stay to close the glass hatch, and do not hang on the glass hatch damper stay.

Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the glass hatch damper stay to break, causing an accident.

- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the glass hatch. Such additional weight on the glass hatch may cause the glass hatch to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

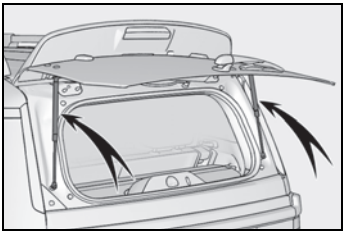
NOTICE

■ Glass hatch damper stays

The glass hatch is equipped with damper stays that hold the glass hatch in place.

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause damage to the glass hatch damper stay, resulting in malfunction.



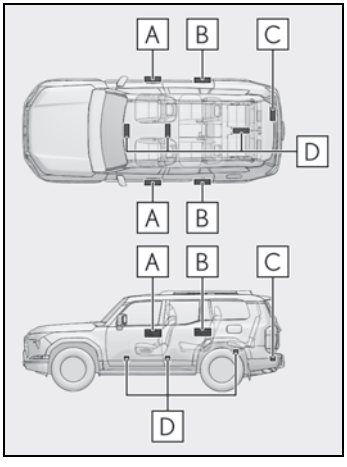
- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as strikers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the glass hatch.
- Do not place your hand or foot on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.94)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P.102)
- Starts the engine (→P.179)

Antenna location



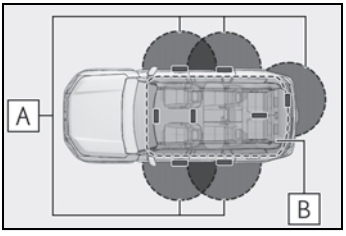
A Antennas outside the cabin (front)

B Antennas outside the cabin (rear) (if equipped)

C Antenna outside the luggage compartment

D Antennas inside the cabin

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



A When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the front door handles, rear door handles (if equipped) and back door opener switch. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

If an alarm sounds or a warning message is displayed

An alarm sounds and warning message displays shown on the multi-information display are used to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message.

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

- When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.

● When an interior alarm pings continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACC while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACC).	Turn the engine switch to OFF and close the driver's door.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

● In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors. Also the illuminated entry system may not operate properly.
- The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 40 seconds or longer.
- The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.

● If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ **Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode**

● When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding .

Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used.

To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



● Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance.

■ **When electronic key function stops**

If the position of the electronic key has not changed for a certain amount of time such as when the electronic key is left somewhere, the function of the electronic key stops to reduce depletion of the battery. In this case, function can automatically be restored by moving the position of the key such as by lifting it up.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.

● When the electronic key battery is depleted

● Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise

● When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
- Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
- Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
- Metallic wallets or bags
- Coins

- Hand warmers made of metal
- Media such as CDs and DVDs

● When other wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby

● When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves

- Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- Another electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
- Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
- Digital audio players
- Portable game systems

● If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

● When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

● When the vehicle is parked in a pay parking spot where radio waves are emitted.

If the doors cannot be locked/unlocked using the smart entry & start system, lock/unlock the doors by performing any of the following:

● Bring the electronic key close to either front door handle and operate the entry function.

● Operate the wireless remote control.

If the doors cannot be locked/unlocked using the above methods, use the mechanical key. (→P.93)

If the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system, refer to P.497.

■ **Note for the entry function**

● Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:

- The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
- The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover (if equipped) or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.

● Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.

● As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.

● Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.

● The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)

● If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

● Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.

● When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.

● If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the

vehicle:
- Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.120)

● If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.

● The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.

● A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

● If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

● To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.

● The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P.518)

● Battery-saving mode can reduce the power consumption of electronic keys. (→P.120)

■ **To operate the system properly**

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not operate.)

■ **If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly**

● Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P.496)

● Starting the engine: →P.497

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.518)

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to the explanations for the following operations.

● Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.94, 496)

● Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.497

● Stopping the engine: →P.180

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

● People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep away from the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.119)
The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

WARNING

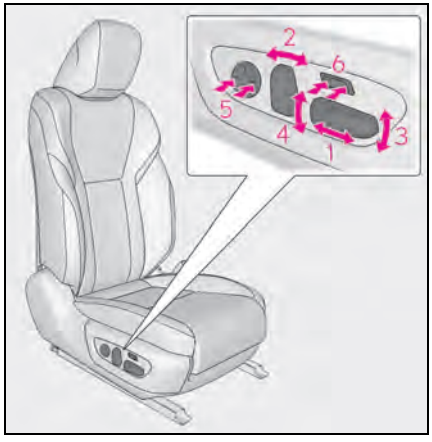
- User of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling the entry function.

Front seats

The seats can be adjusted (longitudinally, vertically, etc.). Adjust the seat to ensure the correct driving posture.

Adjustment procedure



1 Seat position control switch
2 Seatback angle control switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle control switch
4 Vertical height control switch
5 Lumbar support control switch
6 Seat cushion length control switch (driver's side only)

■ When adjusting the seat

- Make sure that any surrounding passengers or objects are not contact the seat.
- Make sure that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling or sun visor.

■ Power easy access system

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.154)

WARNING

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Front seat refresh system (if equipped)

Pneumatic chambers built into the front seat apply pressure to the occupant's body at different modes and intensities.

1 Touch on the main menu of the center display, then touch "Seat controls" on the sub menu.
2 Touch "Massage".

3 Select driver's seat or front passenger's seat.

4 Select the desired mode.

● "Centripetal"

Applies pressure sequentially from the front of the seat cushion to top of the seatback

● "Centrifugal"

Applies pressure sequentially from the top of the seatback to the front of the seat cushion

● "Upper body"

Applies pressure sequentially from the bottom to the top of the seatback

● "Lower body"

Applies pressure sequentially from the front to the back of the seat cushion

● "Lumbar"

Applies pressure sequentially from the bottom to the top of the lumbar area of the seatback

5 Select the desired intensity and then select (on).

The intensity can be adjusted in 5 steps.

To stop the operation, select (off).

If a seat is not occupied, do not operate the front seat refresh system for that seat.

■ **Operating conditions**

- The engine switch is in ON.
- For the front passenger's seat: The weight of an occupant is detected on the front passenger's seat.

Once weight is detected on the seat, the seat will be judged as occupied until the front passenger's door is opened then closed or the engine switch is turned off.

■ **Automatic stop function**

The operation will be canceled automatically after approximately 15 minutes.

WARNING

■ **Important points while driving**

Do not adjust the driver's seat refresh system while driving.
Using it may affect your ability to control the vehicle, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Using the refresh system**

- Those who are pregnant, have recently given birth, or suffer from ailments requiring rest (heart disease etc.) should consult a doctor before use.
- Do not allow children to use the refresh function.
- Do not use immediately after consuming a meal or alcohol, or for an extended period of time.
- If you feel sick while using the refresh function, immediately discontinue use.

Rear seats

Adjustment procedure

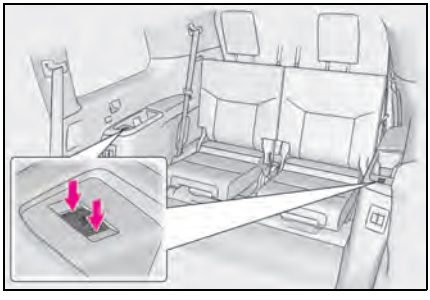
■ Second seat

Pull the lever and adjust the seatback angle.



■ Third seat (if equipped)

Press the switch and adjust the seatback angle.



WARNING

■ When operating the seatback

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Keep other passengers from being hit with the seatback.
- Do not bring your hands close to the moving parts or between the seats, as well as do not let any part of your body get caught.
- After adjusting the seat, make sure that the seat is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the reclining angle

Do not fold the seatback more than required. During a collision, your body could slip beneath the seat belt resulting in extreme pressure being applied to your abdomen, or the shoulder belt could wrap around your neck, which may result in death or serious injury.

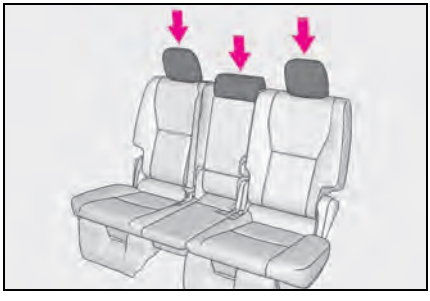
When entering and exiting the third seat (if equipped)

For easy access to the third seat, perform step **1** in "Tumbling the second seats". (→P.127)

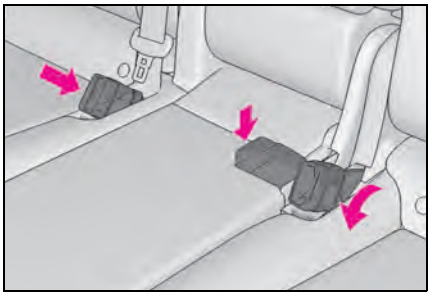
When tumbling the second seats

■ Before tumbling the second seats

1 Lower the head restraints to the lowest position.



2 Stow the second seat belt buckles.



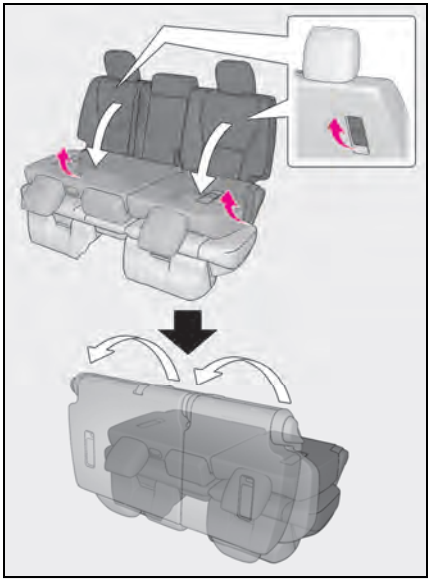
3 Stow the armrest. (→P.419)

4 Adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the second seat. (→P.124)

■ Tumbling the second seats

1 Pull the seatback adjustment lever or tumble lever on the seatback of the second seat.

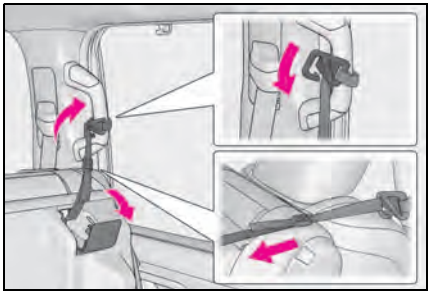
The seatback is folded forward and the seat springs up.



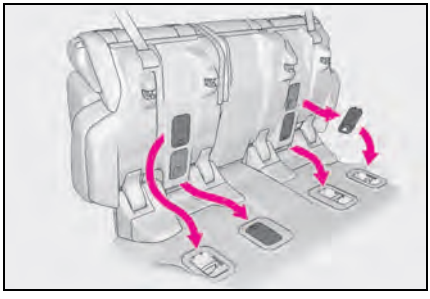
2 Open the cover on the back of the seat cushion and take out the tumble band, and attach the tumble band to the assist grip.

Pass the tumble band through the assist grip, attach the hook to the band and tighten the tumble band.

After securing the seat, close the tumble band cover.

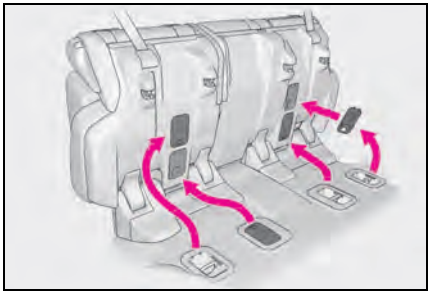


3 Remove the seat hook covers from the back of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.



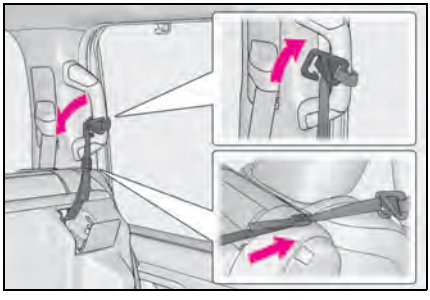
■ **Returning the second seat to its original position**

1 Remove the seat hook covers from the seat hooks, and return them to their original positions.

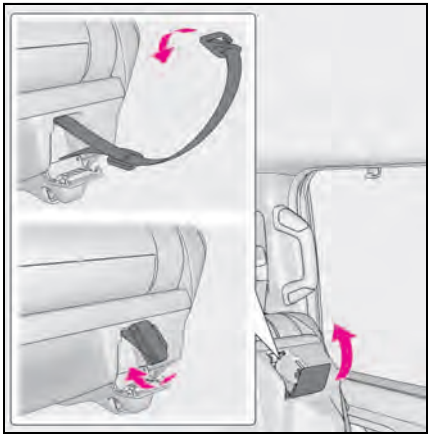


2 Remove the tumble band from the assist grip.

If removing from the assist grip is difficult, loosen the band.

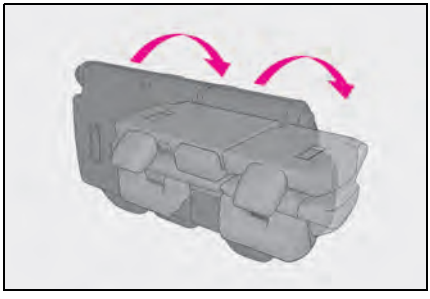


3 Stow the tumble band to its original position, and then close the cover.

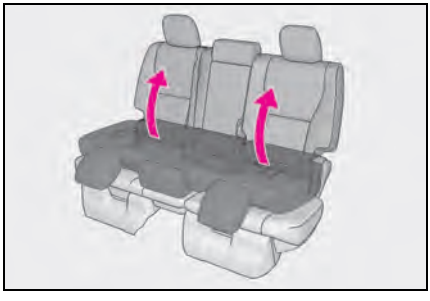


4 Return the seat to its original position.

Push the seat until it is locked.



5 Return the seatback securely to the locked position.



WARNING

■ When tumbling the second seat

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

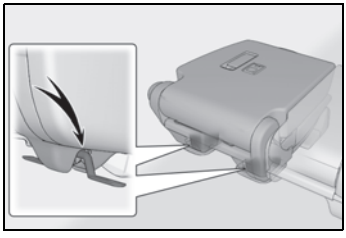
- Do not tumble the seat while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Check that there is no luggage and that there are no other people around the seat before tumbling operation.
- Do not insert hands or feet into the moving parts of the seat.
- Do not allow children to operate the seat.
- Do not tumble the second seat with any electrical devices left connected to the USB Type-C charging ports on the rear of the console. The second seat could strike the electrical device and damage it.

■ After tumbling the second seat

- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.
- Be sure to secure the seat using the tumble band after tumbling the second seat. If the seat is not secured, the seat may return while driving, resulting in serious injury.
- Be sure to install the seat hook covers on the seat hooks, or you may get burned when they become hot.

■ When returning the second seat to its original position

- Make sure the seat legs are securely latched to the floor when putting back the seats.



- When returning the second seat to the original position, be careful not to get hand, foot or any luggage caught between the second seat and the floor.

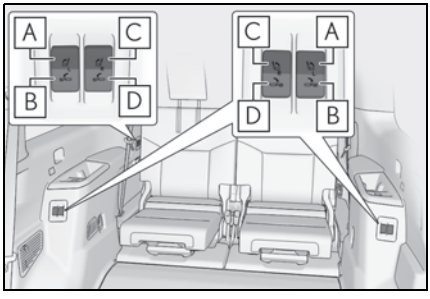


■ After returning the second seat to its original position

- Gently shake the second seat to the front and rear and check that it is secure
- Do not pinch the seat belt

When stowing the third seat (if equipped)

■ Third seat control switches



A Left seat return switch

B Left seat stow switch

C Right seat return switch

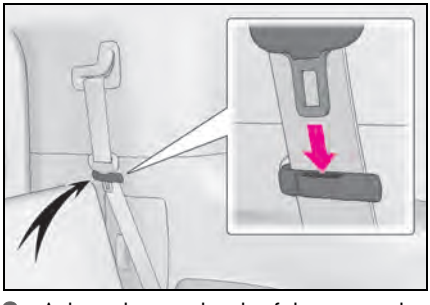
D Right seat stow switch

Operation can also performed using both the seat and luggage compartment switches.

■ Before stowing the third seats

1 Pass the seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.



2 Adjust the seatback of the second seat so that it does not interfere with the third seat. (→P.126)

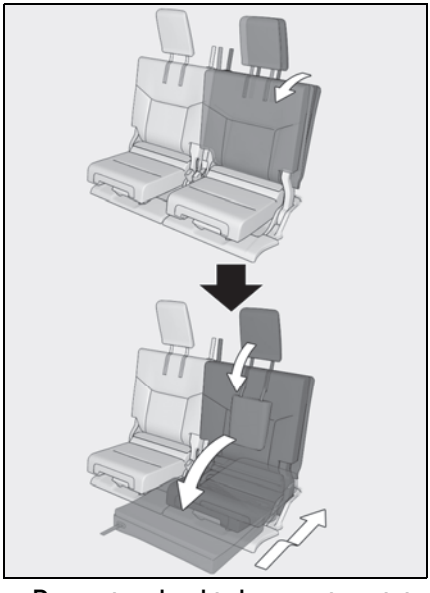
■ Stowing the third seat

Press and hold the stow switch to stow the third seat.

If the seatback is reclined, the operation stops at the most upright position. Press and hold the stow switch again.

After the buzzer sounds twice, the seatback will begin folding down. The head restraint will be automatically folded down and seat cushion will be automatically stowed in the floor.

When the seat has been stowed, the buzzer will sound twice and operation will be automatically stopped. When the operation has been stopped, release the switch.

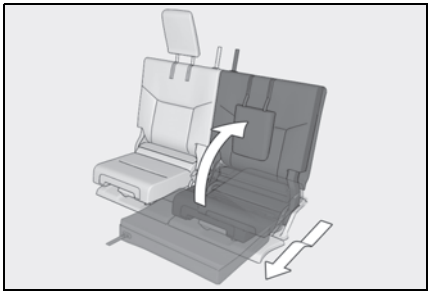


■ Returning the third seat to its original position

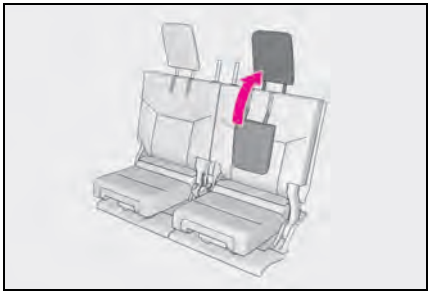
1 Press and hold the return switch to return the third seats.

After the buzzer sounds twice, the seatback and seat cushion will be started to return. Make sure not to release the switch before the operation has completed.

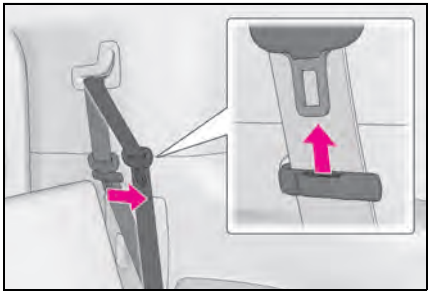
When the seat has been returned, the buzzer will sound twice and operation will be automatically stopped. When the operation has been stopped, release the switch.



2 Lift the head restraint.



3 Remove the seat belt from the seat belt hanger before using the third seat.



■ **The third power seats operating conditions**

- When the engine switch is OFF.
- When the engine switch is in ON, the third seats operate for any of the following conditions:
  - The shift lever is in P
  - The brake pedal is depressed
  - Parking brake is engaged

■ **Switch operation**

- Do not release the switch while the third seat is operating. Releasing the switch will cause the seat to stop operating and will sound a (continuous) buzzer. Press the switch again to stop the buzzer.
- If the third seat is close to the second seat or other surrounding parts, third seat movement may be restricted.

■ **If the warning buzzer sounds continuously**

If a system malfunction occurs, the warning buzzer may continue to sound while the engine switch is in ON. In this case, perform the following.

1 Press and hold the return switch on the luggage compartment.
2 Press the stow switch on the seat 5 times within 10 seconds, and check that the buzzer sounds 3 times. (Do not release the return switch on the back door until the buzzer sounds 3 times.)
3 Press and hold the return switch on the seat or luggage compartment.

After the seat is stowed, the warning buzzer will stop.

If the malfunction does not disappear even after performing this procedure above, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **When stowing the third seats**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check that there is no luggage and that there are no other people around the seat before stowing operation.
- Do not insert hands or feet into the moving parts of the seat.

WARNING

- Do not allow children to operate the seat.
- Do not use the seat if only the seat cushion has been stowed.

■ **After returning the third seat to its original position**

- Do not pinch the seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belt is removed from the hanger as before.
- Lift the head restraint to its original position.

NOTICE

■ **When stowing the third seats (vehicles with luggage cover)**

If there is the luggage cover attached to the vehicle, remove the luggage cover. (→P.405)

The third seat could strike the luggage cover and damage it.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

WARNING

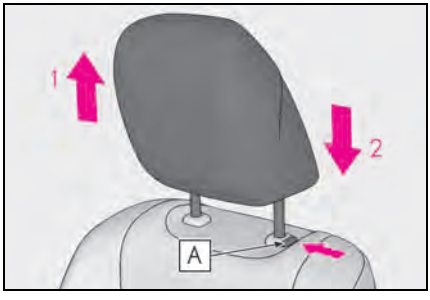
■ **Head restraint precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.
- Vehicles with third seat: When sitting on the third seat, make sure that the head restraint is not folded.

Vertical adjustment

■ **Front seats and outboard second seats**

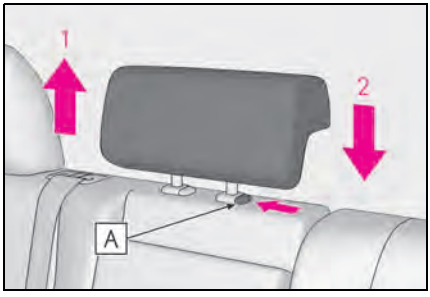


1 Up

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A .

■ Second center seat



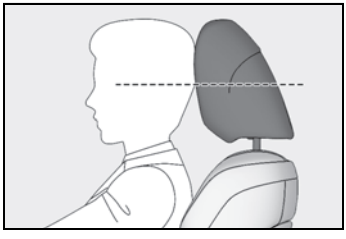
1 Up

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A .

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front seats and outboard second seats)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



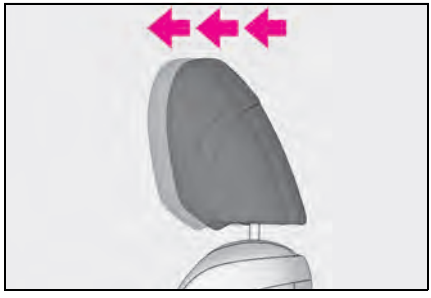
■ Using the second center seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

Horizontal adjustment (if equipped)

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

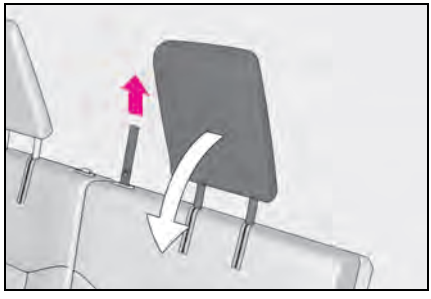
If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



Folding the head restraint (third seats) (if equipped)

Pull the strap up to fold the head restraint.

To return the head restraint, pull it up.

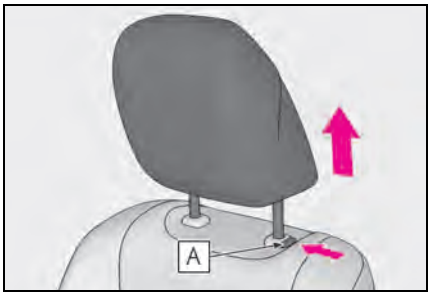


Removing the head restraints

■ Front seats and outboard second seats

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button A .

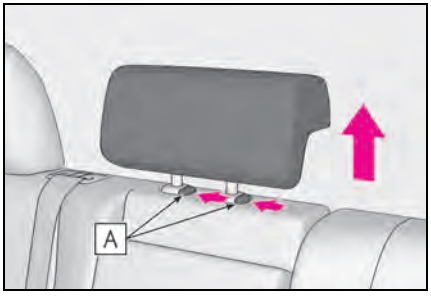
If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P.124, 126)



■ Second center seat

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release buttons A .

If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat angle. (→P.126)



■ Third seats (if equipped)

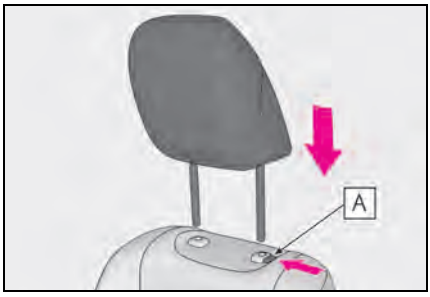
The head restraint cannot be removed.

Installing the head restraints

■ Front seats and outboard second seats

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

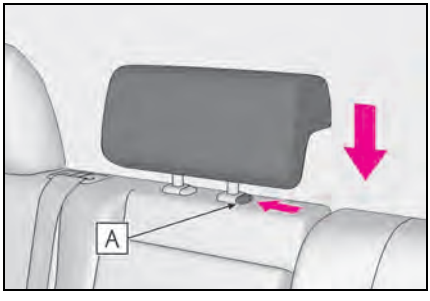
Press and hold the lock release button A when lowering the head restraint.



■ Second center seat

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

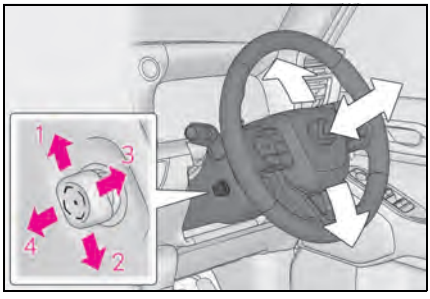
Press and hold the lock release button A when lowering the head restraint.



Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

■ Steering wheel can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

■ Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.154)

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.155)

WARNING

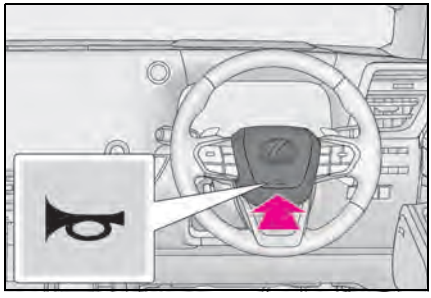
■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Sounding the horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



Inside rear view mirror*

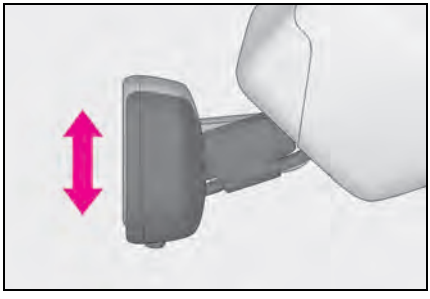
*: If equipped

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

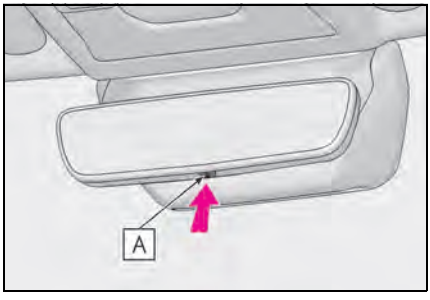
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

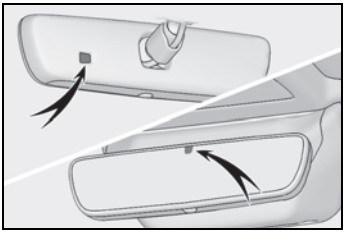
Changing automatic anti-glare function mode ON/OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator A illuminates. The function will be set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to ON. Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator A also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Digital Rear-view Mirror*

*: If equipped

The Digital Rear-view Mirror is a system that uses the camera on the rear of the vehicle and displays its image on the display of the Digital Rear-view Mirror.

The Digital Rear-view Mirror can be changed between optical mirror mode and digital mirror mode by operating the lever.

The Digital Rear-view Mirror allows the driver to see the rear view despite obstructions, such as the head restraints or luggage, ensuring rear visibility.

Also, the rear seats are not displayed and privacy of the passengers is enhanced.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

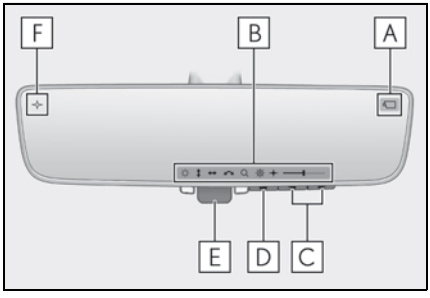
■ Before using the Digital Rear-view Mirror

● Make sure to adjust the mirror before driving. (→P.139)

- Change to optical mirror mode and adjust the position of the Digital Rear-view Mirror so that the area behind your vehicle can be viewed properly.
- Change to digital mirror mode and adjust the display settings.

● As the range of the image displayed by the Digital Rear-view Mirror is different from that of the optical mirror, make sure to check this difference before driving.

System components



A Camera indicator

Indicates that the camera is operating normally.

B Icon display area

Displays icons, adjusting gauge, etc. (→P.139)

C Select/adjust button

Press to change the setting of the item you want to adjust.

D Menu button

Press to display the icon display area and select the item you want to adjust.

E Lever

Operate to change between digital mirror mode and optical mirror mode.

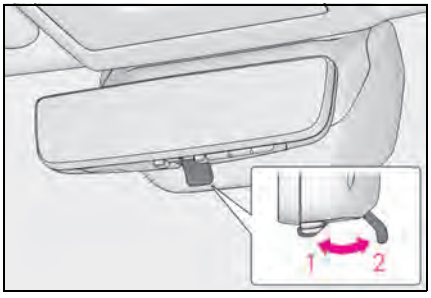
F Digital anti-glare mode indicator

In digital mirror mode, this indicates that the anti-glare function is on. (→P.139)

Changing modes

Operate the lever to change between

digital mirror mode and optical mirror mode.



1 Digital mirror mode

Displays an image of the area behind the vehicle.

will illuminate in this mode.

2 Optical mirror mode

Turns off the display of the Digital Rear-view Mirror allows it to be used as an optical mirror.

Digital mirror mode operating condition

The engine switch is turned to ON.

When the engine switch is changed from ON to OFF or ACC, the image will disappear after several seconds.

When using the Digital Rear-view Mirror in digital mirror mode

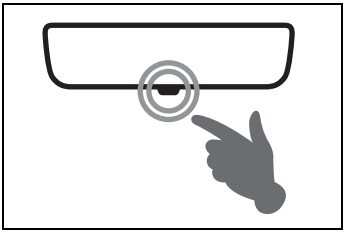
- If it is difficult to see the displayed image due to light reflected off the Digital Rear-view Mirror, the camera being dirty or covered with water droplets, dust, etc., or if lights of a vehicle behind your vehicle or the displayed image are bothering you, change to optical mirror mode.
- When it is raining, if the image is unclear due to water on the rear window, operate the rear wiper.
- When the back door is open, the Digital Rear-view Mirror image may not display properly. Before driving, make sure the back door is closed.
- If the display is difficult to see due to reflected light, close the sunshade for the moon roof (if equipped) or the electronic sunshade for the panoramic fixed moon roof with onetouch frosted glass control (if equipped).
- Any of the following conditions may occur when driving in the dark, such as at night. None of them indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Colors of objects in the displayed image may differ from their actual color.
  - Depending on the height of the lights of the vehicle behind, the area around the vehicle may appear white and blurry.
  - Automatic image adjustment for brighter surrounding image may cause flickering.

If it is difficult to see the displayed image or flickering bothers you, change to optical mirror mode.

- The Digital Rear-view Mirror may become hot while it is in digital mirror mode. This is not a malfunction.
- Depending on your physical condition or age, it may take longer than usual to focus on the displayed image. In this case, change to optical mirror mode.
- Do not let passengers stare at the displayed image when the vehicle is being driven, as doing so may cause motion sickness.

When the system malfunctions

If the symbol shown in the illustration is displayed when using the Digital Rear-view Mirror in digital mirror mode, the system may be malfunctioning. The symbol will disappear in a few seconds. Operate the lever, change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

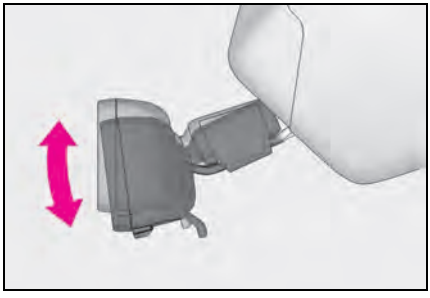


Adjusting the mirror

■ Adjusting the mirror height

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Change to optical mirror mode, adjusting the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

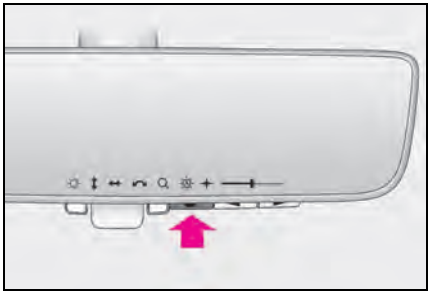


■ Display settings (digital mirror mode)

Settings of the display in the digital mirror mode, on/off operation of the automatic anti-glare function, etc. can be changed.

1 Press the menu button.

The icons will be displayed.



2 Press the menu button repeatedly and select the item you want to adjust.

3 Press or to change the setting.

The icons will disappear if a button is not operated for approximately 5 seconds or more.

Icons	Settings
	Select to adjust the brightness of the display.
	Select to adjust the area displayed up/down.
	Select to adjust the area displayed to the left/right.
	Select to adjust the angle of the displayed image.
	Select to zoom in/out the displayed image.
	Select to enable/disable the automatic anti-glare function.* Responding to the brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically adjusted. The automatic anti-glare function is enabled each time the engine switch is changed to ON.
	The digital anti-glare mode can be turned on and off. When enabled, the brightness of the display is reduced at night to reduce headlight glare from vehicles to the rear.

*: This is a function for the optical mirror mode, however, the setting can also be changed while using the digital mirror mode.

■ Enabling/disabling the automatic anti-glare function (optical mirror mode)

The automatic anti-glare function in the optical mirror mode can be enabled/disabled. The setting can be changed in both the digital mirror mode and the optical mirror mode.

▶ When using the digital mirror mode

→P.139

▶ When using the optical mirror mode

1 Press the menu button.

The icons will be displayed.



2 Press ▭ or ▭ to enable (ON)/disable (OFF) the automatic anti-glare function.

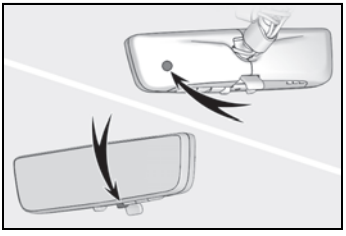
The icons will disappear if a button is not operated for approximately 5 seconds or more.

■ Adjusting the display (digital mirror mode)

- The icons will disappear if a button is not operated for approximately 5 seconds or more.
- If the displayed image is adjusted, it may appear distorted. This is not a malfunction.
- If the brightness of the Digital Rear-view Mirror is set too high, it may cause eye strain. Adjust the Digital Rear-view Mirror to an appropriate brightness. If your eyes become tired, change to optical mirror mode.
- The brightness of the Digital Rear-view Mirror will change automatically according to the brightness of the area in front of your vehicle.
- The digital anti-glare mode operates only in locations where the surroundings are dark. Depending on the surrounding illumination environment, the image may not darken and it may not be possible to reduce headlight glare from vehicles to the rear.

■ To prevent the light sensors from malfunctioning

To prevent the light sensors from malfunctioning, do not touch or cover them.



⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the Digital Rear-view Mirror or adjust the display settings while driving.
  Stop the vehicle and operate the Digital Rear-view Mirror control switches. Failure to do so may cause a steering wheel operation error, resulting in an unexpected accident.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

The size of the vehicles and other objects may look different when in digital mirror mode and optical mirror mode.
When backing up, make sure to directly check the safety of the area around your vehicle, especially behind the vehicle. Additionally, if a vehicle approaches from the rear in the dark, such as at night, the surrounding area may appear dim.

■ To prevent causes of fire

If the driver continues using the Digital Rear-view Mirror while smoke or odor comes from the mirror, it may result in fire. Stop using the system immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.

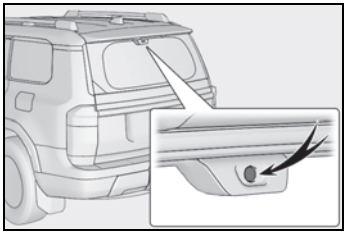
Cleaning the Digital Rear-view Mirror

■ Cleaning the mirror surface

If the mirror surface is dirty, the image on the display may be difficult to see. Clean the mirror surface gently using a soft dry cloth.

■ The camera

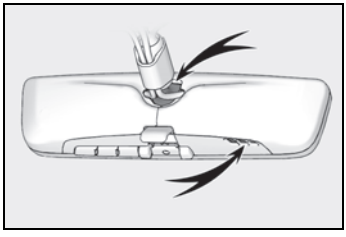
The camera for the Digital Rear-view Mirror is located as shown.



NOTICE

■ To prevent the Digital Rear-view Mirror from malfunctioning

Do not block the vent holes of the mirror. Otherwise, the mirror may be hot, leading to a malfunction or a fire.



■ To prevent the camera from malfunctioning

- Observe the following precautions, otherwise the Digital Rear-view Mirror may not operate properly.

- Do not strike or hit the camera or subject it to a strong impact, as the camera installation position and angle may be changed.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the camera.
- Do not allow an organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coating to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- When applying colored film (including transparent film) to the rear window glass, do not apply it to the area in front of the camera. If film is applied to the area in front of the camera, the image from the camera may not display properly.

- Do not subject the camera to a strong impact as this could cause a malfunction.
If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice any of the following symptoms, refer to the following table for the likely cause and the solution. If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see.	The mirror surface is dirty.	Clean the mirror surface gently, using a soft dry cloth.
	Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the Digital Rear-view Mirror.	Change to optical mirror mode. (If the light is coming through the moon roof [if equipped] or panoramic fixed moon roof with onetouch frosted glass control [if equipped], close the sunshade or electronic sunshade.)
	• The vehicle is in a dark area. • The vehicle is near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present. • The temperature around the camera is extremely high/low. • The ambient temperature is extremely low. • It is raining or humid. • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens. • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights, etc. • Exhaust gas is obstructing the camera.	Change to optical mirror mode. (Change back to digital mirror mode when the conditions have improved.)

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The image is difficult to see.	Foreign matters such as water droplets or dust is on the camera lens.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
	The luggage in the luggage compartment is reflected off the rear window glass and obstructing the camera.	• Change to optical mirror mode. • Move the luggage to a position where it does not obstruct the camera or cover it with a black cloth to reduce the amount it is reflected off the rear window glass.
	The rear window glass is fogged up.	Change to optical mirror mode. After defogging the rear window using the rear window defogger (→P.387), use the digital mirror mode again.
	The outside of the rear window glass is dirty.	Use the rear window wiper to remove dirt.
	The inside of the rear window glass is dirty.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The image is out of alignment.	The back door is not fully closed.	Fully close the back door.
	The camera or its surrounding area has received a strong impact.	Change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The display is dim and is displayed.	The system may be malfunctioning.	Change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
goes off.		

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
 is displayed.	The Digital Rear-view Mirror is extremely hot. (The display will gradually become more dim. If the temperature continues to increase, the Digital Rear-view Mirror will turn off.)	Reducing the cabin temperature is recommended to reduce the temperature of the mirror. ( will disappear when the mirror becomes cool.) If  does not disappear even though the mirror is cool, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The lever cannot be operated properly.	The lever may be malfunctioning.	Change to optical mirror mode and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. (To change to optical mirror mode, press and hold the menu button for approximately 10 seconds.)

Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

■ Defogging the mirrors

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.387)

■ Auto anti-glare function (driver's side only)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror (if equipped) or automatic anti-glare function of the Digital Rear-view Mirror (if equipped) (optical mirror mode) is set to auto mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror or automatic anti-glare function of the Digital Rear-view Mirror (optical mirror mode) to reduce reflected light. (→P.136, 140)

■ When using the outside rear view mirrors in a cold weather

When it is cold and the outside rear view mirrors are frozen, it may not be possible to fold/extend them or adjust the mirror surface. Remove the ice, snow, etc. covering the outside rear view mirrors.

WARNING

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ If ice should jam the mirror

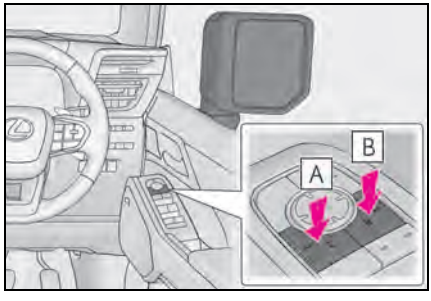
Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

When selecting the mirror to adjust, the indicator on the switch illuminates.

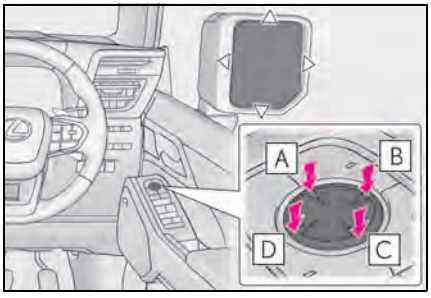
Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.



A Left

B Right

2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



A Up

B Right

C Down

D Left

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

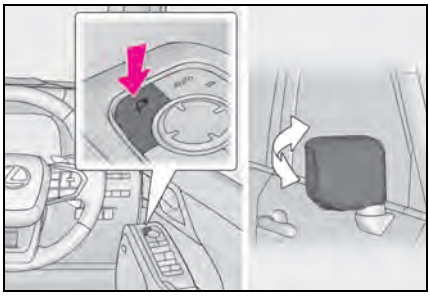
A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.155)

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



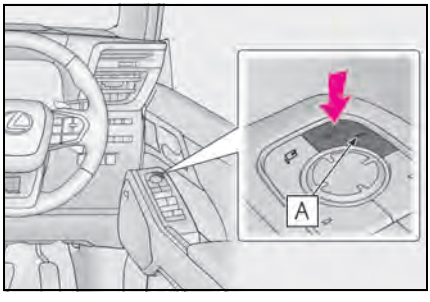
■ Setting automatic mode

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

When in automatic mode, the indicator A will come on.

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



■ Customization

The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Linked mirror function when reversing

When either “L” or “R” of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, select neither “L” nor “R”.

■ Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

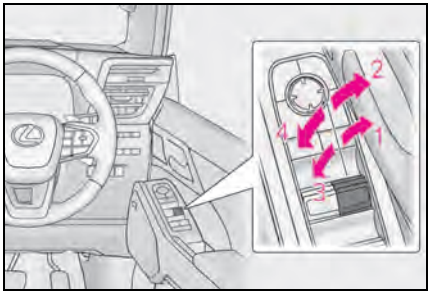
When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Power windows

Opening and closing the power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



1 Closing

2 One-touch closing*

3 Opening

4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Operating the power windows using the voice control system*

*: If equipped

The power windows can be opened and closed using the voice control system. (It can be performed only when the window lock switch is disabled.)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ Catch protection function

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ When the window cannot be opened or closed

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the side window cannot be opened and closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in ON, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the side window can be opened and closed.
- If the side window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the side window.

3 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.

4 Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the side window is completely opened, continue holding the

switch for an additional 1 second or more.

5 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.

6 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the side window is completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.497)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.94)
- If the power windows are closed using the door lock linked window operation when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Power window open reminder function

A message is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned to OFF and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

Customization

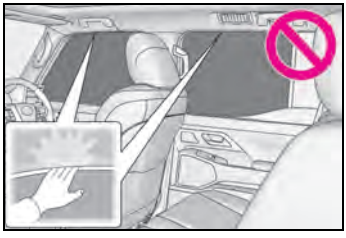
Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.150)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also, do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

WARNING

- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

■ Catch protection function

- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

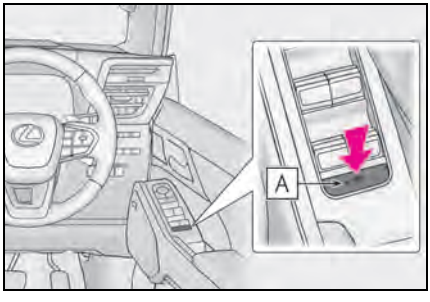
Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function can be used to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

Press the switch.

The indicator A will come on and the passenger windows will be locked.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the driver's switch even if the lock switch is on.



■ The window lock switch can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ When the battery is disconnected

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

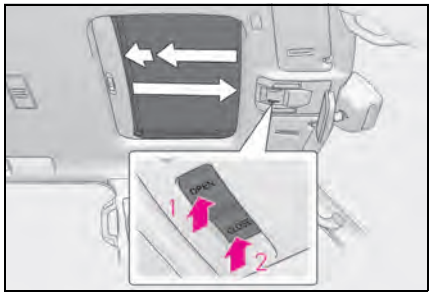
Moon roof*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Operating the moon roof

■ Opening and closing



1 Opens the moon roof*

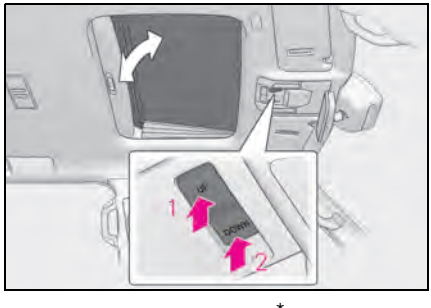
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ Tilting up and down



1 Tilts the moon roof up*

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ Door lock linked moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.497)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.94)
- If the moon roof is closed using the door lock linked window operation when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

- If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1 The moon roof will close, re-open and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second.
Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Moon roof open reminder function

A message is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned to OFF and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Opening the moon roof

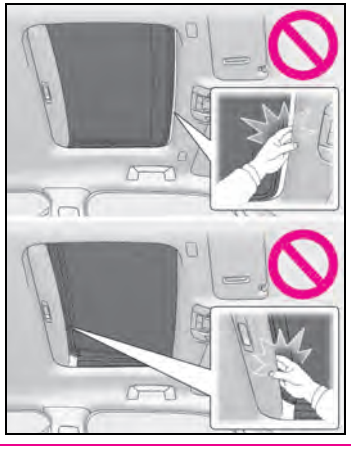
● Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or head outside the vehicle while it is moving.

● Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Opening and closing the moon roof

● The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations.
In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.

● Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.



WARNING

- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed.

Driving position memory

This feature automatically adjusts the positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

When My Settings is turned on:

Driving positions for the registered drivers (3 patterns) and guest (1 pattern) can be registered in My Settings.

When electronic key assignment is registered for My Settings, the driving position for each driver can be recalled (memory recall function).

When My Settings is turned off:

Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded.

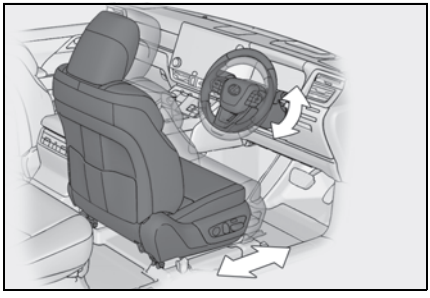
Each electronic key can be registered to recall your preferred driving position (memory recall function).

For details about My Settings, refer to P.159.

Enabling easier driver entry and exit (power easy access system)

When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned to OFF.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.



When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACC or ON.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ Operation of the power easy access system

- When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.
- If the seat position is adjusted during power easy access system operation, the automatic operation will stop. (The seat will change to manual operation.)
- If the seat position is adjusted during or after the power easy access system operation when the driver is exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system will not operate when entering the vehicle.

■ **Jam protection function**

If a person or object interferes while the seat is moving automatically, the operation will stop.

■ **Customization**

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

■ **While the power easy access system is operating and the steering wheel and seat is moving**

Be careful not to get body parts or luggage caught. Failure to do so may cause an injury or damage to the luggage.

Recording/recalling a driving position

■ **Recording procedure**

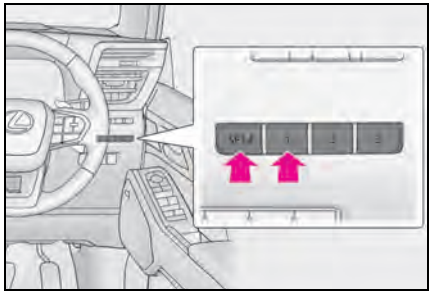
1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display to the desired positions.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

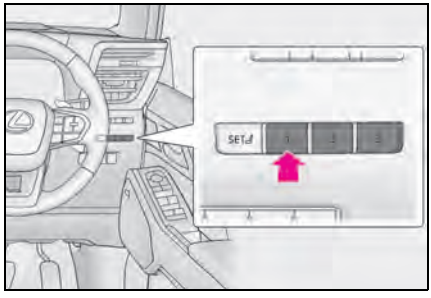


■ **Recall procedure**

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ **To stop the position recall operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ **Jam protection function**

If a person or object interferes while the seat is moving automatically, the operation will stop.

■ **Using the voice control system (if equipped)**

The following operations can be performed using the voice control system:

- Driving position registration
- Recalling the driving position (can be operated only when the shift lever is in P)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.124)**

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off**

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

■ **In order to correctly use the driving position memory function**

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

■ **When recalling the driving position**

Take care when recalling the driving position so that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling.

■ **When the recorded seat position cannot be recalled**

The seat position may not be recalled in some situations when the seat position is recorded in a certain range. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Registering/recalling/canceling a driving position to an electronic key (memory recall function)

■ **When My Settings is turned on (an individual is identified with an electronic key):**

The driving positions can be automatically recalled for each registered driver by registering electronic key assignments in My Settings.

- Registering procedure

When the shift lever is shifted to P after driving the vehicle, the current driving position will be recorded.

- Recall procedure

1 Carry only the electronic key that has been assigned and registered in My Settings, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position other than the steering wheel and head-up display will move to the recorded position. However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the driving position will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON.

The seat, steering wheel and head-up display (only when the engine switch is in ON) will move to the recorded position.

- Cancelation procedure

Initialize the driver registered settings in

My Setting.

For information on initializing driver registered settings, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **When My Settings is turned on (an individual is identified with face information):**

The driving position can automatically be recalled for each registered driver by registering face information in the face authentication system and registering the face information assignment in My Settings.

● Registering procedure

When the shift lever is shifted to P after driving the vehicle, the current driving position will be recorded.

● Recall procedure

Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON.

After face authentication is performed successfully, the seat, steering wheel and head-up display (only when the engine switch is turned to ON) move to the registered driving position.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the driving position will not move.

● Cancelation procedure

Delete face information from the face authentication system.

For information on deleting face information, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **When My Settings is turned off:**

Each electronic key can be registered to automatically recall your preferred driving position.

● Registering procedure

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

1 Carry only the electronic key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more electronic keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

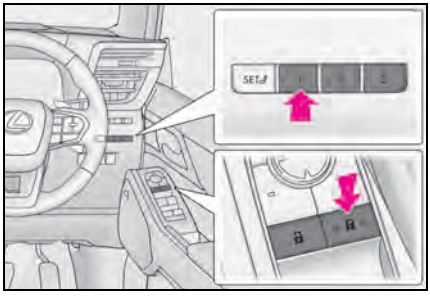
2 Check that the shift lever is in P.

3 Turn the engine switch to ON.

4 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

5 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



● Recall procedure

1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position other than the steering wheel and head-up display will move to the recorded position. However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the driving position will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat, steering wheel and head-up display (only when the engine switch is in ON) will move to the recorded position.

● Cancelation procedure

1 Carry only the electronic key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Check that the shift lever is in P.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If the button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ **Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function (when My Settings is turned off)**

If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ **Jam protection function**

If a person or object interferes while the seat is moving automatically, the operation will stop.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.516)

My Settings

By identifying an individual through a device, such as an electronic key, the driving position and vehicle settings recorded for that driver can be recalled when the vehicle is entered.

By assigning an authentication device to a driver in advance, the driver can enter the vehicle with their preferred settings.

Settings for up to 3 drivers can be recorded by My Settings.

For details on how to assign/delete electronic keys, set driver names, perform initialization, change drivers manually, or delete a driver, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Types of assigned authentication devices

An individual can be identified using the following authentication devices.

- Electronic key

An individual is identified when the smart entry & start system detects their electronic key. (→P.119)

- Face authentication system

An individual is identified at the opening/closing of the door when face information registered using the driver monitor camera is identified. (→P.216)

Individual identification by face authentication is prioritized than by electronic key, if the latter has identified with another registered driver.

- Bluetooth® device

An individual can be identified if the same Bluetooth® device that was used as a hands-free phone the last time the vehicle was entered is connected to the audio system.

If an individual is identified by detecting an electronic key or face information, identification by Bluetooth® device will not be performed.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Recalled functions

When an individual is identified from an authentication device, settings for the following functions are recalled.

- Driving position (memory recall function)

After an individual is identified, the driving position that was set when driving was last completed (with shift lever set to P) is recalled when either of the following operations is performed.

- When an individual is identified from an electronic key: Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control
- When an individual is identified from the face authentication system: After the driver monitor identifies face information, turning the engine switch to ACC or ON

- Meter displays* and head-up display information*

When an individual is identified, the display settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled.

- Multimedia settings*

When an individual is identified, the multimedia system settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled.

- Safe driving support function*

When an individual is identified, the vehicle settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled.

- Vehicle settings that available on the center display*

When an individual is identified, the vehicle settings used when the engine switch was last turned off are recalled.

*: Some settings are excluded

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 163
Cargo and luggage 169
Trailer towing 171

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 179
Automatic transmission 183
Turn signal lever 188
Parking brake 188
Brake Hold 191

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 194
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 196
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 200
Fog light switch 202
Windshield wipers and washer 203
Rear window wiper and washer 205

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 207

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 209
Driver monitor 216
PCS (Pre-Collision System) . 217
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 228
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 232
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 237
Dynamic radar cruise control 239
Cruise control 249
Emergency Driving Stop System 252
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Safe Exit Assist 259
Lexus parking assist-sensor . 263
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 269
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function 274
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 277
Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle) 281
Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle) 284
Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) 285
Multi-terrain Monitor 287
Driving mode select switch .. 355
Four-wheel drive system 357
Rear differential lock system 360
Crawl Control 361
Multi-terrain Select 364
Downhill assist control system 367

Driving assist systems..... 369

4-6. Driving tips

Off-road precautions 375

Winter driving tips 377

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ **Starting the engine**

→P.179

■ **Driving**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.184)

2 Release the parking brake. (→P.188)

If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake will be released automatically. (→P.189)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ **Stopping**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake. (→P.188)

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P.184)

■ **Parking the vehicle**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake (→P.188), and shift the shift lever to P (→P.184).

Make sure the parking brake indicator light is on.

3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ **Starting off on a steep uphill**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.184)

2 Pull the parking brake switch to set the parking brake manually. (→P.188)

3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

4 Press the parking brake switch and parking brake is released manually.

■ **When starting off on a uphill**

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.369)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driv-

ing conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while sport mode*, SPORT S mode* or SPORT S+* mode is selected (→P.355)
- When the brake pedal is depressed while "REMOLQUE" mode is selected

*: If equipped

Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating.

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles): Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles): Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 km (600 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

Idling time before stopping the engine

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle immediately after high-speed driving or driving up a hill.

Driving condition	Idling time
Normal city driving	Not necessary
High-speed driving (constant speed of approx. 100 km/h [62 mph])	Not necessary
Steep hill driving or continuous driving at 100 km/h (62 mph) or more (race track driving etc.)	Approximately 1 minute

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.509)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

WARNING

■ When driving the vehicle

● Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.

- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

● Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

● During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control. However, power assist for these systems may be lost making it difficult to steer or brake before stopping the vehicle depending on the remaining charge in the battery or usage conditions. In this situation, you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.462

● Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.183)

● Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, inside rear view mirror (if equipped), Digital Rearview Mirror (if equipped) or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.

● Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

● Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.

● Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.

● After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift lever

● Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely.

The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the shift lever is in P. You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode. (→P.357)

- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the brake booster device does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.

NOTICE

- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ **Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- Make sure to idle the engine immediately after high-load driving. Stop the engine only after the turbocharger has cooled down. Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbocharger.

■ **If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.485)

■ **When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain, etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.
- Cooling failure due to clogging of the radiator or operation failure of the cooling fan, etc.

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Sudden start restraint control (Drive-Start Control [DSC])

When the following unusual operation is performed with the accelerator pedal depressed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted to R*.
- When the shift lever is shifted from P or R to forward drive shift position such as D*.

When the system operates, a message appears on the multi-information display. Read the message and follow the instruction.

*: Depending on the situation, the shift position may not be changed.

■ Drive-Start Control (DSC)

● When the Active TRC is turned off (→P.370), sudden start restraint control also does not operate. If your vehicle has trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow due to sudden start restraint control operation, deactivate Active TRC (→P.370) so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

Also, sudden start restraint control will not operate in the following conditions:

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4" position.
- When the center differential is locked
- When Multi-terrain Select* is selected

*: If equipped

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

⚠ WARNING

■ **Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

● Receptacles containing gasoline

● Aerosol cans

■ **Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

● Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.

● Do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.

● When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.

● Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

WARNING

- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover (if equipped)
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - On the auxiliary box or tray that has no lid
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

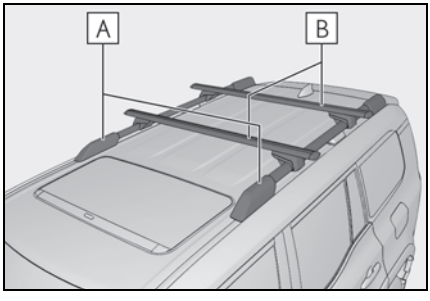
- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.

Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Roof luggage carrier (if equipped)*

*: The roof luggage carrier differs depending on the models.

■ Roof luggage carrier components



A Roof rails

B Cross rails

WARNING

■ When loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent. When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P.508)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 100 kg (220 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier. Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between both cross rails.

NOTICE

■ When loading cargo (vehicles with moon roof or panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control)

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof or panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control.

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

For towing purposes, we recommend use of the following parts:

- When towing a caravan trailer etc., use a distributing hitch.
- When the total trailer weight is greater than the vehicle weight, use a sway control device.

Weight limits

Confirm that the total trailer weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

Gross vehicle weight

The gross vehicle weight must not exceed the following:

- Vehicles with 22-inch tires

3175 kg (7000 lb.)

- Vehicles with 20-inch tires

▶ Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension system

3150 kg (6945 lb.)

▶ Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system

3175 kg (7000 lb.)

● Vehicles with 18-inch tires

3110 kg (6856 lb.)

The gross vehicle weight is the sum weight of the unloaded vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage, hitch and trailer tongue load. Also included is the weight of any special equipment installed on your vehicle.

Gross axle weight

The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed the following:

● Front

Vehicles with 22-inch tires: 1530 kg (2976 lb.)

Vehicles with 20-inch tires: 1605 kg (3538 lb.)

Vehicles with 18-inch tires: 1570 kg (3858 lb.)

● Rear

Vehicles with 22-inch tires: 1775 kg (3913 lb.)

Vehicles without 22-inch tires: 1860 kg (4101 lb.)

Trailer tongue load

The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11% of the total trailer weight, not exceed the following:

● Vehicles with 22-inch tires

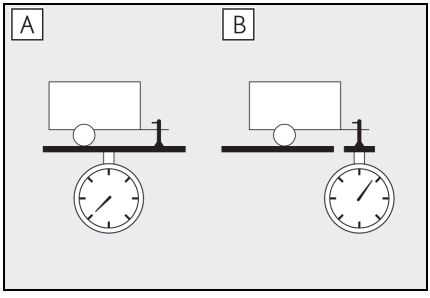
310 kg (683 lb.)

● Vehicles without 22-inch tires

350 kg (772 lb.)

(Tongue load/Total trailer weight x 100 = 9 to 11%)

The total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing stations, building supply companies, trucking companies, junk yards, etc.

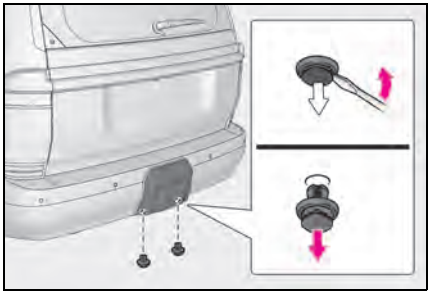


A Total trailer weight

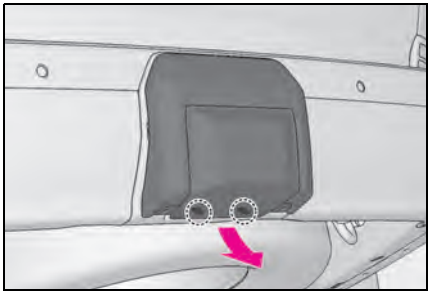
B Tongue load

Removing hitch cover

1 Remove the clips.

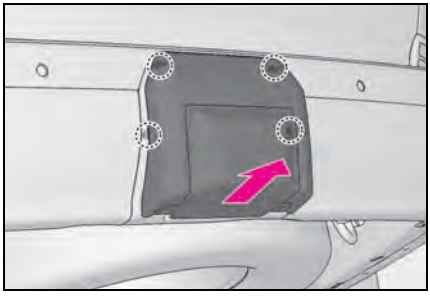


2 Pull the lower edge of the hitch cover toward you and remove the 2 claws.



3 Pull the hitch cover toward you and remove it.

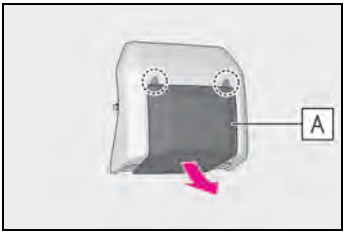
When reattaching the cover, reverse the steps listed.



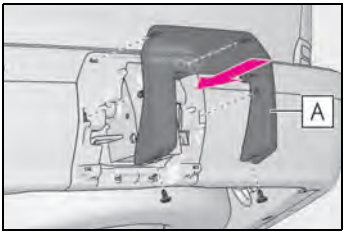
Reattaching the hitch cover

The outer hitch cover can be reattached after a trailer hitch is installed.

1 Remove the outer hitch cover [A] from the hitch cover.



2 Securely install the 4 claws of the outer hitch cover [A], and install the clips.



Towing a trailer

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as a towing kits, etc.

Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be rated for towing a higher weight, the operator must never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch.

For vehicles where the towing device blocks any of the lights or license plate, the following shall be observed:

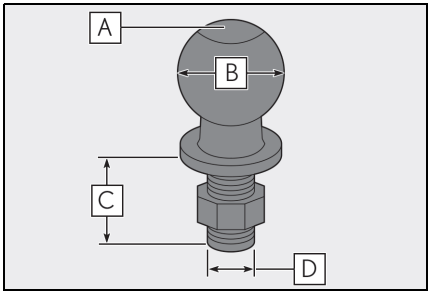
- Do not use towing devices that can-

not be easily removed or repositioned.

- Towing devices must be removed or repositioned when not in use.

Selecting trailer ball

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.



A Trailer ball load rating

Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.

B Ball diameter

Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.

C Shank length

Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut by at least 2 threads.

D Shank diameter

Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.

Connecting trailer lights

Use the wire harness stored in the rear end.

Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P.514)
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set up at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The trailer is level when it is hitched. Do not drive if the trailer is not level, and check for improper tongue weight, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

When towing a trailer

Disable the following systems, as the systems may not operate properly.

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.228)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) (→P.232)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (→P.239)
- Cruise control (→P.249)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (→P.254)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor*1 (→P.263)
- RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function (→P.269)
- RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function*2 (→P.274)
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake)*3 (→P.277)

*1: When the 7-pin connector is connected, the rear sensor automatically turns off.

*2: When the 7-pin connector is connected, the Rear Camera Detection function automatically turns off.

*3: When the 7-pin connector is connected,

the Parking Support Brake function automatically turns off.

Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that you do not use a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train components (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) to tow a trailer for the first 800 km (500 miles) of driving.

Maintenance

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Warranty and Service Booklet".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 1000 km (600 miles) of trailer towing.

If trailer sway occurs

One or more factors (crosswinds, passing vehicles, rough roads, etc.) can adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing instability.

- If trailer swaying occurs:
  - Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
    Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
  - Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
    Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize (if enabled, Trailer Sway Control can also help to stabilize the vehicle and trailer.).

- After the trailer swaying has stopped:
  - Stop in a safe place. Get all occupants out of the vehicle.
  - Check the tires of the vehicle and the trailer.
  - Check the load in the trailer.
    Make sure the load has not shifted.
    Make sure the tongue weight is appropriate, if possible.
  - Check the load in the vehicle.
    Make sure the vehicle is not overloaded after occupants get in.

If you cannot find any problems, the speed at which trailer swaying occurred is beyond the limit of your particular vehicle-trailer combination.
Drive at a lower speed to prevent instability. Remember that swaying of the towing vehicle-trailer increases as speed increases.

WARNING

To avoid accident or injury

- The total trailer weight (trailer weight plus the weight of cargo) must not exceed the following:
  - Vehicles with 22-inch tires
    3130 kg (6900 lb.)
  - Vehicles without 22-inch tires
    3500 kg (7716 lb.)
- The gross combined weight (sum of your vehicle weight plus its load and the total trailer weight) must not exceed the following:
  - Vehicles with 22-inch tires
    6305 kg (13900 lb.)
  - Vehicles with 20-inch tires
    Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension system: 6650 kg (14660 lb.)
    Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system: 6675 kg (14715 lb.)
  - Vehicles with 18-inch tires
    6610 kg (14572 lb.)
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load capacities.

WARNING

- Never load more weight in the back than in the front of the trailer. About 60% of the load should be in the front half of the trailer, and the remaining 40% in the rear.

■ Hitches

- Use only a hitch that conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Depending on the type of trailer coupler you use, the trailer ball may need to be coated with grease. If so, apply grease to the trailer ball in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer of the trailer coupler.
- Remove the trailer ball whenever you are not towing a trailer. Remove the trailer hitch if you do not need it. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting hole in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

■ When towing a trailer

- If the total trailer weight exceeds 750 kg (1653 lb.), trailer brakes are required.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

■ When the gross vehicle mass or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded

Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Add an additional 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) to the recommended tire inflation pressure value. (→P.514)
- Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is lower.

NOTICE

■ When installing a trailer hitch

- Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches, as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.

■ Brakes

Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

■ Do not directly splice trailer lights

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

- Before starting out, check the trailer lights and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in

an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle.

- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 16 km/h (10 mph) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making turns.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a larger than normal turning radius.
- Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Periodically check the rear to prepare for being passed be large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel, reduce speed immediately but gradually, and steer straight ahead. Never increase speed. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not put the transmission in D. If in the M mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 7 or lower. (→P.186)
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 30°C [85°F]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P.502)
- Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels when parking. Apply the

parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in P. Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

1 Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

2 Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.

3 When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

4 Apply the parking brake firmly.

5 Shift into P and turn off the engine.

- When restarting after parking on a slope:

1 With the transmission in P, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

2 Shift into a forward gear. If reversing, shift into R.

3 Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

4 Have someone retrieve the blocks.

WARNING

■ To avoid an accident

- Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.
- Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range when trailer towing.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Pull the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.188)

The parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

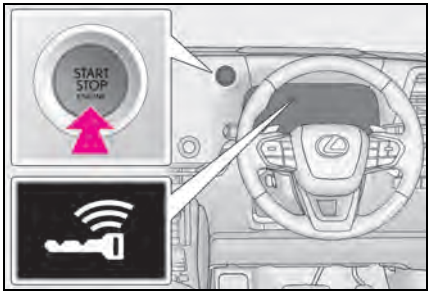
4 Press the engine switch quickly but fully.

When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



■ Engine switch illumination

According to the situation, the engine switch illumination operates as follows.

- When driver's door or front passenger's door is opened, the engine switch illumination illuminates.
- When depressing the brake pedal with carrying the electronic key on your person, the engine switch illumination illuminates brighter.
- When the engine switch is in ACC or ON, the engine switch illumination illuminates.
- When the engine switch mode is changed from ACC or ON to OFF, the engine switch illumination illuminates for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the engine switch illumination turns off.

■ If the engine does not start

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.57) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- If a message related to start-up is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key, the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.497 to start the engine. However, if the electronic key is carried inside the vehicle and the doors are locked (→P.97), the engine can be started.

■ If the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started using the

smart entry & start system. Refer to P.498 to restart the engine.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P.90

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P.120

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P.121

■ **When "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Electronic key battery**

→P.455

■ **Operation of the engine switch**

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch to OFF, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch to OFF, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ **Customization**

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.497.

WARNING

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When starting the engine**

If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch**

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.188)

Check the parking brake indicator is illuminated.

3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P.184)

Do not press the shift release button after shifting the shift lever to P.

4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

The engine will stop, and the meter display will be extinguished.

5 Release the brake pedal and check that "ACCESSORY" or "POWER ON" is not shown on the multi-information display.

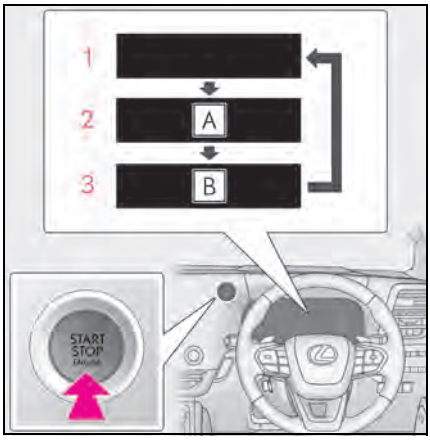
WARNING

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

- If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.462)
  However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control. However, power assist for these systems may be lost making it difficult to steer or brake before stopping the vehicle depending on the remaining charge in the battery or usage conditions. In this situation, you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If the engine switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message will be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- To restart the engine after performing an emergency shutdown, shift the shift lever to N and then press the engine switch.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



A "ACCESSORY"

B "POWER ON"

1 OFF*1

The emergency flashers can be used.

The multi-information display will not be displayed.

2 ACC*2

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.
"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

3 ON

All electrical components can be used.
"POWER ON" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

*1: If the shift lever is in a position other than P or the shift release button is pressed when turning off the engine, the engine switch will remain ON, will not turn to OFF.

*2: ACC mode can be enabled/disabled on the customize menu. (→P.522)

■ **When ACC customization is in off**

- With the engine switch is turned off, the multimedia system can still be used for a

certain time until the battery saving function starts operating.

- When the safe exit assist is operating, a buzzer will sound and a voice guidance will be given.

■ **Auto power off function**

- If the vehicle is left in ACC or ON (the engine is not running) for more than 20 minutes with the shift lever is in P or the shift release button is not pressed, the engine switch will automatically turn to OFF.
- If the battery is low with the shift lever is in P or the shift release button is not pressed, and the engine switch is in ACC or ON (the engine is not operating), a buzzer sounds and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. If this continues, the engine switch is automatically turn to OFF.

However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "POWER ON" is displayed on the multi-information display, the engine switch is not in OFF. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch to OFF.

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped when the shift lever is in a position other than P or the shift release button is pressed, the engine switch will not be turned to OFF. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch to OFF:

1. Check that the parking brake is set.
2. Shift the shift lever to P.

Do not press the shift release button after shifting the shift lever to P.

3. Check that "POWER ON" is displayed on the multi-information display and press the engine switch shortly and firmly.
4. Check that "ACCESSORY" or "POWER ON" on the multi-information display is off.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not stop the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P or the shift release button pressed. If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P or the shift release button pressed, the engine switch will not be turned to OFF but instead remain ON. If the vehicle is left in ON, battery discharge may occur.

Automatic transmission

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving*1
M	M mode driving*2 (→P.186)

*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

*2: Selecting gear steps using the M position achieves suitable engine braking forces by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches.

■ Driving on a downhill

On declines, there may be case where the vehicle shifts down automatically to obtain engine braking. As a result of the downshifting, the engine speed may increase.

■ To protect the automatic transmission

- If the tires spin continually when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed and released repeatedly while driving, the automatic transmission temperature may become too high and the automatic transmission may be damaged. To avoid damaging the automatic transmission, the system may temporarily lock the gear. If the automatic transmission temperature falls, the gear locking is canceled and the automatic transmission is returned to the normal operation.
- If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmis. Oil Temp High Stop in a Safe Place and See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to P and wait until the warning message goes off. If the warning message goes off, you may start the vehicle again. If the warning message do not go off, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with dynamic radar cruise control or cruise control activated

Even when switching the driving mode to sport mode*, SPORT S mode* or SPORT S+* mode while driving in D position (→P.355) with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because dynamic radar cruise control or cruise control will not be canceled.

*: If equipped

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

→P.168

■ AI-SHIFT

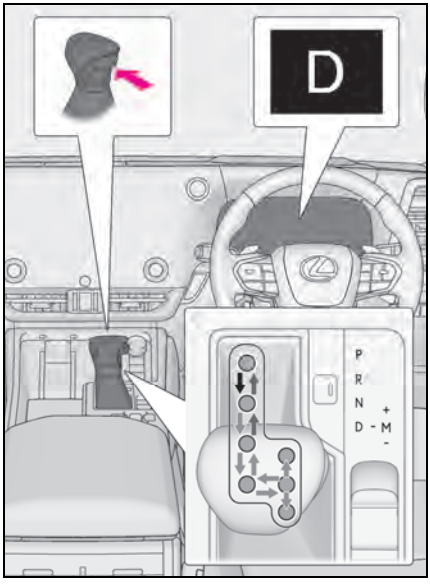
The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift gears suddenly.
Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in ON and the brake pedal depressed*, shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever normally.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

*: For the vehicle to be able to be shifted from P, the brake pedal must be depressed before the shift release button is pushed. If the shift release button is pushed first, the shift lock will not be released.

■ Shift lock system

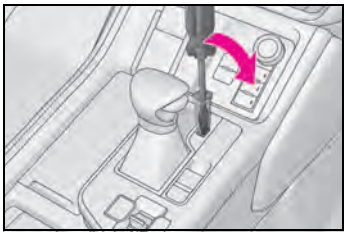
The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.
The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in ON, the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

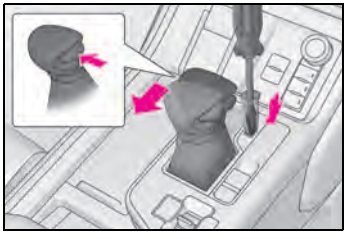
First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.
If the shift lever cannot be shifted even though the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the engine switch off.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.
   To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



5 Press and hold the shift lock override button and then push the button on the shift knob.
The shift lever can be shifted while both buttons are pressed.



WARNING

■ To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.
If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Selecting the driving mode

■ Drive mode

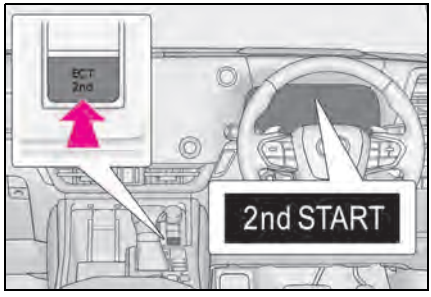
→P.355

■ Second start mode (if equipped)

Use second start mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

Press the button to use second start mode.

Press the button again to cancel second start mode.



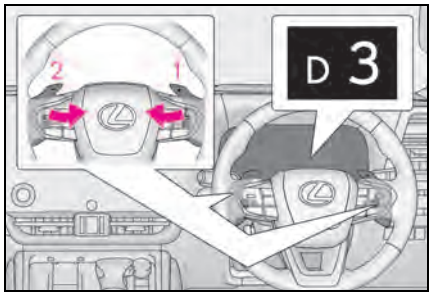
■ Second start mode automatic deactivation

Second start mode is automatically deactivated if the engine is turned off after driving in second start mode.

Selecting gear steps in the D position

To drive using temporary gear step selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch when driving with the shift lever in D.

Changing the gear step allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The selected gear step, from D1 to D10, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Gear step functions

- 10 levels of accelerating force and engine braking can be selected.
- A lower gear step will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

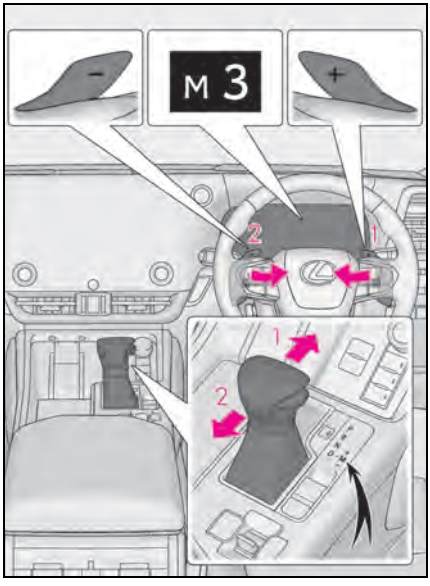
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D
- When the "+" paddle shift switch is pressed and held

Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in M mode

To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. The selected gear, from M1 to M10, will be fixed and displayed on the meter.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When it is necessary to protect the

engine or automatic transmission when the engine coolant temperature is low, the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high or low, or other reasons.

Also, the gear will not shift when the vehicle speed is low, even if an upshift operation is performed.

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **If the "M" indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to M**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

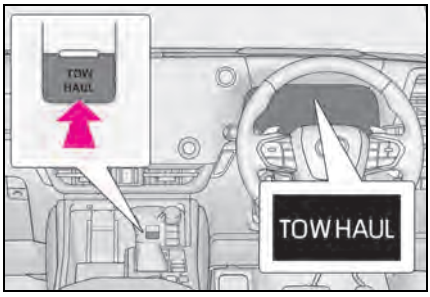
"TOW HAUL" switch

Use "REMOLQUE" mode when pulling a trailer or hauling a heavy load. Activating "REMOLQUE" mode is changes engine, transmission, and steering to be more suitable when pulling a trailer.

Press the "TOW HAUL" switch to use "REMOLQUE" mode.

The "TOW HAUL" indicator will come on.

Press the switch once more to cancel the mode.



■ **Automatic deactivation of "REMOLQUE" mode**

"REMOLQUE" mode is deactivated the following conditions:

- When the front-wheel drive control switch is in "L4"
- When driving mode select or Multi-terrain Select (if equipped) is selected

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intentions of the driver:



1 Left turn

2 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

3 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Right turn

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **If the indicator flashes faster than usual**

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

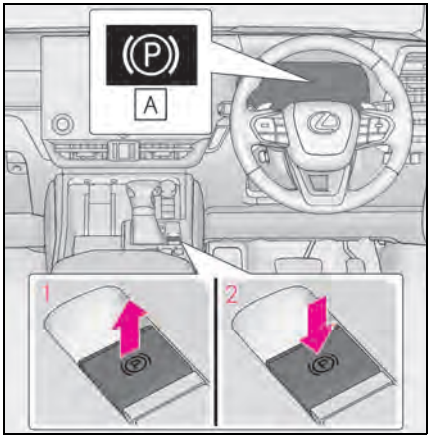
Parking brake

The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually. In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ **Using the manual mode**

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



A Parking brake indicator light

1 Pull the switch to set the parking brake.

The parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Pull and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

2 Press the switch to release the

parking brake.

- Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
- Using the parking brake automatic release function, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal. When using this function, slowly depress the accelerator pedal. (→P.189)

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light turn off.

If the parking brake indicator light flash, operate the switch again. (→P.475)

■ Turning the automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until a buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.

When the automatic mode is turned on, the parking brake operates as follows.

- When the shift lever is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light will turn off.
- When the shift lever is shifted to P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the vehicle stopped and the brake pedal depressed.

The auto function may not operate if the shift lever is moved extremely quickly or the brake pedal is not firmly depressed. In this situation, apply the parking brake manually. (→P.191)

■ Turning the automatic mode off

While the vehicle is stopped and depressing the brake pedal, press and hold the parking brake switch until a buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in ON, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in ON, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ Parking brake automatic release function

When all of the following conditions are met, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal.

- The driver's door is closed
- The driver is wearing the seat belt
- The shift lever is in a forward driving position or reverse driving position
- The malfunction indicator lamp or brake system warning light is not illuminated

When depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.

If the parking brake is not released when the accelerator pedal is depressed, release the parking brake manually.

When the shift lever is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released automatically.

■ Parking brake automatic lock function

The parking brake will be set automatically under the following conditions:

- The brake pedal is not depressed
- The driver's door is open
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened
- The shift lever is in a position other than N
- The malfunction indicator lamp and

brake system warning light are not illuminated

■ If "Parking Brake Temporarily Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ If "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "Parking Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Parking brake indicator light

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will turn on and stay on as described below:
  ON: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in ON: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned to OFF with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ When the parking brake switch malfunctions

Automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) will be turned on automatically.

■ Parking the vehicle

→P.163

■ Parking brake engaged warning buzzer

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "Parking Brake ON" is displayed on the multi-information display (with the vehicle reaching a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

■ If the brake system warning light comes on

→P.470

■ Usage in winter time

→P.379

WARNING

■ When parking the vehicle

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally by a child and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Parking brake switch

Do not set any objects near the parking brake switch. Objects may interfere with the switch and may lead the parking brake to unexpectedly operate.

■ Parking brake automatic lock function

Never use the automatic parking brake engagement function in place of normal parking brake operation. This function is designed to reduce the risk of a collision due to the driver forgetting to engage the parking brake. Over-reliance on this function to park the vehicle safely may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ When the system malfunctions

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ When the vehicle battery is discharged

The parking brake system cannot be activated. (→P.498)

■ When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

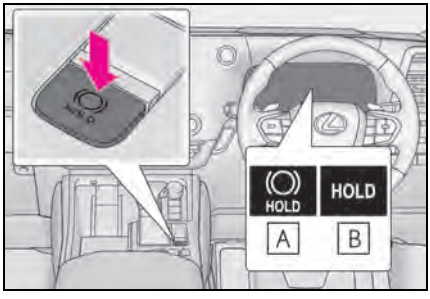
Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, M, N or P with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator A (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator B (yellow) comes on.



■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- "Parking Brake Unavailable" or "Parking Brake Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the

system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ **Brake hold function**

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- When do not wish for the parking brake to operate automatically, press and hold the brake hold switch until the standby indicator (green) turns off, and then turn the engine switch off.

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

Perform any of the following operations to release the parking brake:

- Depress the accelerator pedal. (The parking brake will not be released automatically if the seat belt is not fastened.)
- Operate the parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.188)

■ **When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary**

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Brake Hold Malfunction Press Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" or "Brake Hold Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When another control activates with the brake hold system (vehicles with downhill assist control system)**

A message is displayed on the multi-information display in any of the following cases.

- "Brake Hold Unavailable See the Owner's Manual"
  - When the brake hold switch is pressed while the downhill assist control system is activated.
  - When the brake hold switch is pressed while the four-wheel drive control switch is turned to L4 mode.
- "Brake Hold Unavailable Press Brake to Deactive"
  - When the DAC/CRAWL switch is operated while the brake hold system is activated.
  - When the four-wheel drive control switch is turned to L4 mode while the brake hold system is activated.

The brake hold system and downhill assist control system or transfer L4 mode cannot be activated at the same time.

Please press the brake hold switch with the

brake pedal depressed to turn off the brake hold system.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P.475

WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

Take care when using the brake hold system on a steep incline, exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold brakes in such situations.

Also, the system may not activate depending on the angle of the slope.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning on the headlights

Operating the switch turns on the lights as follows:



1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.194) and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

■ **AUTO mode can be used when**

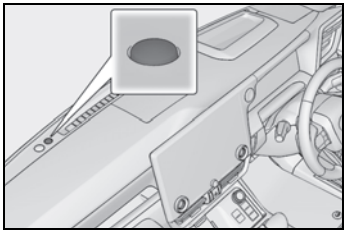
The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Daytime running light system**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch in the AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after the driver's door is opened and closed if the engine switch is turned to OFF. (The lights turn off immediately if on the key is pressed after all the doors are locked.)
- When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to OFF and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON, or turn the light switch AUTO once and then back to or .

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned to ACC or OFF and the driver's door is opened while the tail lights are

turned on.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Battery-saving function**

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the headlights and/or tail lights are on when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes. When the engine switch is turned to ON, the battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ **When unlocking the doors (welcome lamp)**

The front position lights automatically turn on when the surroundings are dark and the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the AUTO position.

■ **Stop lights**

Depending on whether the tail lights are illuminated or not, illuminating state of the stop lights differs.

■ **Customization**

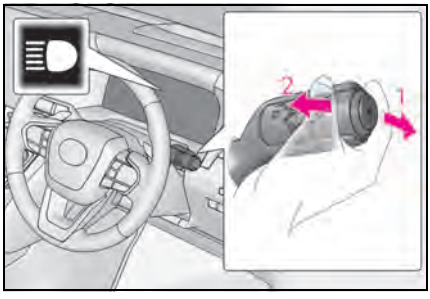
Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.516)

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Cornering lights

When any of the following conditions is met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direction of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift lever is in R (both left and right side cornering lights)

■ Cornering light control

- The lights illuminate when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or less. However, the lights turn off when the vehicle speed increases to approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.
- After the lights remain illuminated for 30 minutes, they automatically turn off.

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

*: If equipped

The Adaptive High-beam System uses a front camera located on the upper portion of the windshield to detect the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically controls the light distribution of the headlights.

⚠ WARNING

■ For safe use

Do not overly rely on the Adaptive High-beam System. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

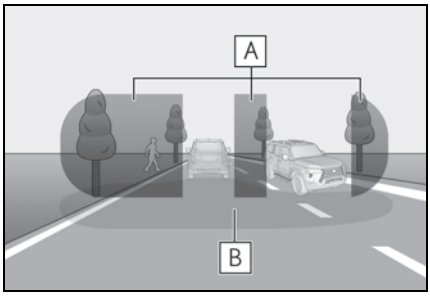
■ To prevent unintentional operation of the Adaptive High-beam System

- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

System controls

- According to the vehicle speed, the brightness and illuminated area of the high beams are adjusted.
- When driving around a curve, the system uses the high beams to brightly illuminate the direction of travel of the vehicle.
- The high beams are illuminated so that the area around a vehicle ahead is shaded. (Shaded high beam)

The shaded high beam helps ensure forward visibility while reducing the dazzling effect on the drivers of vehicles ahead.



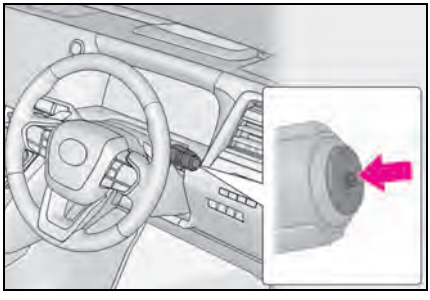
A Area illuminated by the high beams

B Area illuminated by the low beams

- According to the distance to a preceding vehicle, the illuminated area of the low beams is adjusted.

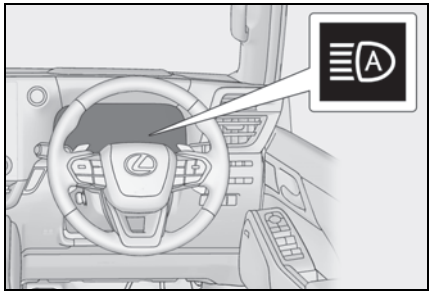
Using the Adaptive High-beam System

1 Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO or position.

When the headlight switch lever is in the low beam position, the AHS will be enabled and the AHS indicator will illuminate.



System operating conditions

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will illuminate and the system will operate:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or more*.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.

*: When driving around a curve at a vehicle speed of approximately 30 km/h or more, the direction of travel of the vehicle will be brightly illuminated.

- When all of the following conditions are met, the headlights will change to the shaded high beams according to the position of vehicles ahead:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or more.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There is a vehicle ahead with lights on.
  - There are few streetlights or other lights on the road ahead.
- If any of the following conditions are met, the system will change to the low beams:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 12 km/h (7.5 mph) or lower.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - There are many vehicles ahead.
  - There are many streetlights or other lights on the road ahead.

Front camera detection

- In the following situations, the high beams may not be automatically changed to the shaded high beams:
  - When a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle

- When another vehicle crosses in front of the vehicle
- When vehicles ahead are repeatedly detected and then hidden due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When a vehicle ahead approaches from a far lane
- When a vehicle ahead is far away
- When a vehicle ahead has no lights
- When the lights of a vehicle ahead are dim
- When a vehicle ahead is reflecting strong light, such as the headlights of your vehicle
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213

● The high beams may change to the shaded high beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.

● House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the shaded high beams, cause the high beams not to change to the shaded high beams, or change the area that is not illuminated.

● The following may change the speed at which the shaded areas change or the timing at which the headlights change to the low beams:

- The brightness of lights of vehicles ahead
- The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
- The distance between the vehicle and a vehicle ahead
- When a vehicle ahead only has lights illuminated on one side
- When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage

● The light distribution control of the headlights may not match the driver's expectations

● Bicyclists and other small vehicles may not be detected.

● In the following situations, the system may not be able to correctly detect the brightness of the surroundings. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually change between the high beams and low beams.

- When there are lights similar to headlights or tail lights in the surrounding area
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the headlights are repeatedly changing between the high beams and low beams.
- When use of the high beams is inappropriate or when the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers.
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa
- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213

■ **Customization**

The settings of some functions can be changed. (→P.516)

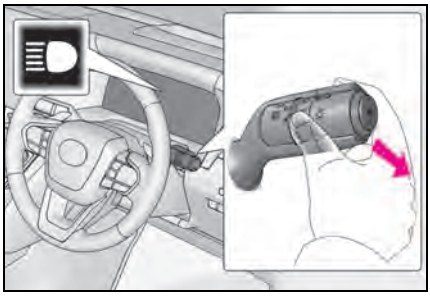
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Changing to the high beams

Push the lever forward.

The AHS indicator will turn off and the headlight high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to enable the Adaptive High-beam System again.

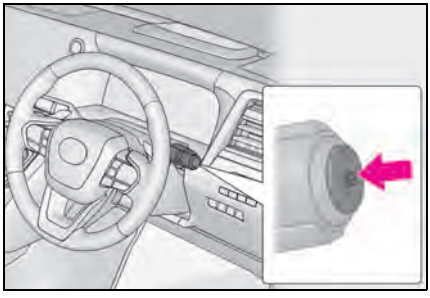


■ **Changing to the low beams**

Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The AHS indicator will turn off.

Press the switch to enable the Adaptive High-beam System again.

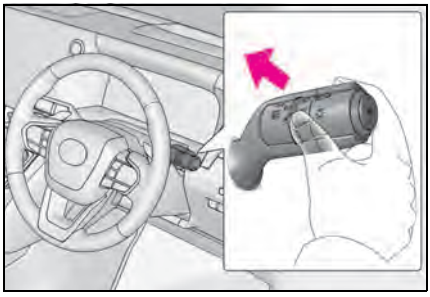


Temporarily changing to the low beams

It is recommended to switch to the low beams when use of the high beams is inappropriate or when the high beams may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Pull the lever rearward and then return it to its original position.

The high beams will illuminate while the lever is pulled, however, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams will remain on for a certain amount of time. After this, the Adaptive High-beam System will operate.



AHB (Automatic High Beam)

The Automatic High Beam uses a front camera located on the upper portion of the windshield to detect the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically changes the headlights between the high beams and low beams.

WARNING

■ **For safe use**

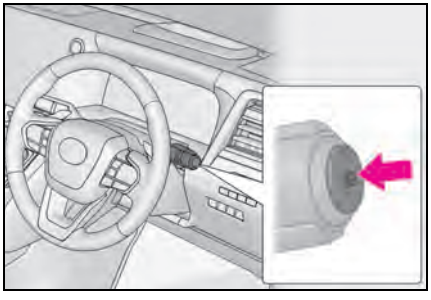
Do not overly rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ **To prevent unintentional operation of the Automatic High Beam System**

● When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

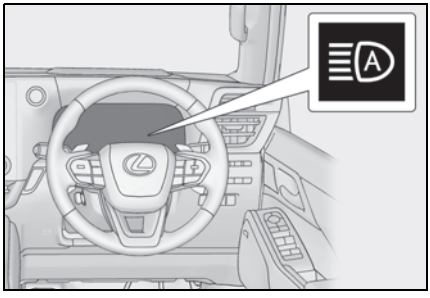
Using the Automatic High Beam system

1 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO or position.

When the headlight switch lever is in the low beam position, the AHB system will be enabled and the AHB indicator will illuminate.



■ **Automatic operating conditions of the high beams**

● When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will illuminate automatically:
- The vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no vehicles ahead with lights on.
- There are few streetlights or other lights on the road ahead.

● If any of the following conditions are met, the headlights will change to the low beams:
- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- There is a vehicle ahead with lights on.
- There are many streetlights or other lights on the road ahead.

■ **Front camera detection**

● In the following situations, the high beams may not be automatically changed to the low beams:
- When a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle
- When another vehicle crosses in front of the vehicle
- When vehicles ahead are repeatedly detected and then hidden due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When a vehicle ahead approaches from

a far lane
- When a vehicle ahead is far away
- When a vehicle ahead has no lights
- When the lights of a vehicle ahead are dim
- When a vehicle ahead is reflecting strong light, such as own headlights
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213

● The headlights may change to the low beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.

● House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beams to change to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.

● The following may change the timing at which the headlights change to the low beams:
- The brightness of lights of vehicles ahead
- The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
- The distance between the vehicle and a vehicle ahead
- When a vehicle ahead only has lights illuminated on one side
- When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage

● The headlights may change between the high beams and low beams unexpectedly.

● Bicycles and other small vehicles may not be detected.

● In the following situations, the system may not be able to correctly detect the brightness of the surroundings. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually change between the high beams and low beams.
- When there are lights similar to headlights or tail lights in the surrounding area
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the headlights are repeatedly changing between the high beams and low beams.
- When use of the high beams is inappropriate or when the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers.
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa
- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213

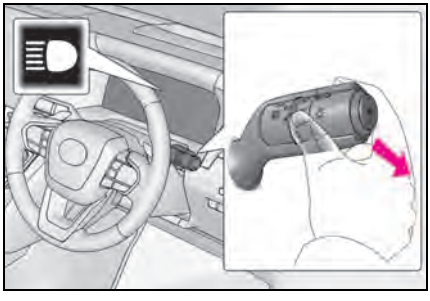
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Changing to the high beams

Push the lever forward.

The AHB indicator will turn off and the headlight high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to enable the Automatic High Beam system again.

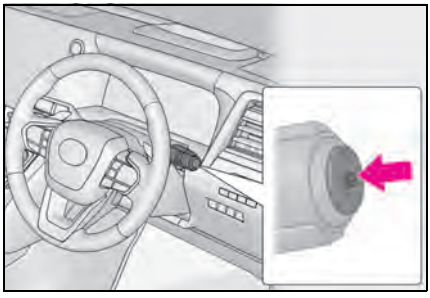


■ Changing to the low beams

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The AHB indicator will turn off.

Press the switch to enable the Automatic High Beam system again.

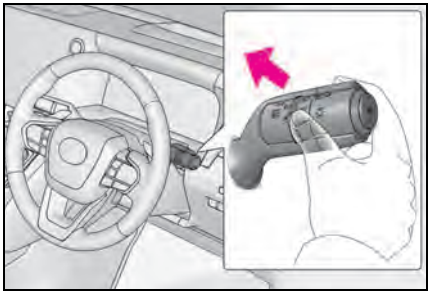


Temporarily changing to the low beams

It is recommended to switch to the low beams when use of the high beams is inappropriate or when the high beams may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Pull the lever rearward and then return it to its original position.

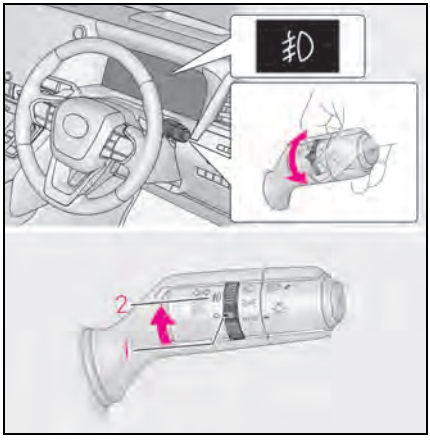
The high beams will illuminate while the lever is pulled, however, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams will remain on for a certain amount of time. After this, the Automatic High Beam system will operate.



Fog light switch

The fog lights offer improved visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

Operating procedure



1 ○ Off

2 Fog lights on

■ Fog lights can be used when

The front position lights are turned on.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

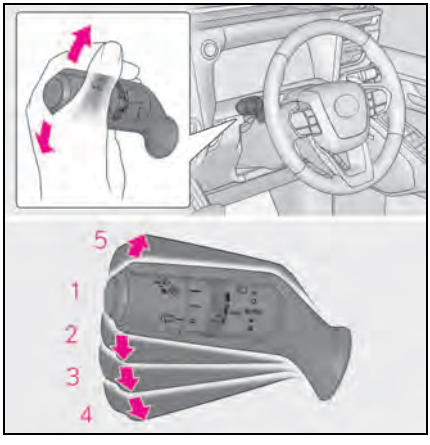
NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the lever operates the wipers or washer as follows. When AUTO is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



1 ○ Off

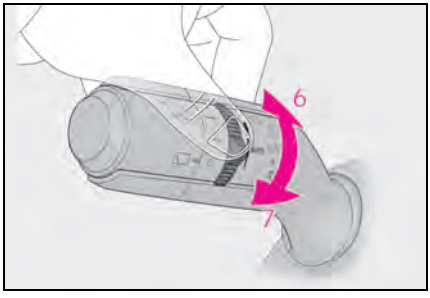
2 AUTO Rain-sensing operation

3 ▼ Low speed operation

4 ▼▼ High speed operation

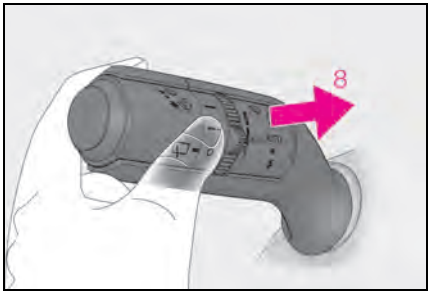
5 ▲ Temporary operation

When AUTO is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

When the engine switch is in ON and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

■ **The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Operating the windshield wipers and washer using the voice control system***

*: If equipped

The following operation can be performed using the voice control system.

- Operating the windshield wipers only once
- Operating the windshield washer (it can be performed only when the vehicle is stopped)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

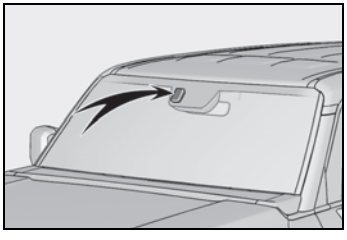
■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode will not switch.)

■ **Raindrop sensor**

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to the AUTO position while the engine switch is in ON, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- When the sensor sensitivity ring is turned toward high while in AUTO mode, the wipers will operate once to indicate that the sensor sensitivity is enhanced.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 85°C (185°F) or higher, or -30°C (22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO".

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else does not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the wiper on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Rear window wiper and washer

The rear window wiper and washer can be used by operating the lever.

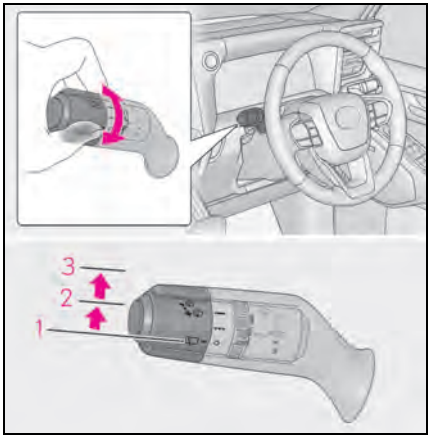
NOTICE

■ When the rear window is dry

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the switch operates the rear window wiper as follows:

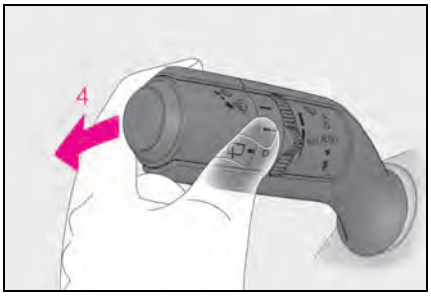


1 ○ Off

2 - - - Intermittent operation

3 — Normal operation

4 Driving



4 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pushing the lever operates the wiper and washer.

The washer will automatically operate and clean the following cameras.

- The camera for panoramic view monitor* (if equipped)
- The camera for Multi-terrain Monitor (if equipped) (→P.343)

*: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when

The rear window wiper and washer are operate when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The glass hatch is closed.

Operating the rear window wiper and washer using the voice control system*

*: If equipped

The following operation can be performed using the voice control system.

- Operating the rear window wiper only once
- Operating the rear window washer (it can be performed only when the vehicle is stopped)

For details regarding the voice control system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

If no washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid reservoir.

Dripping prevention wiper sweep

When the washer is operated, the wipers will operate once more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

Back door opening linked rear window wiper stop function

When the rear window wiper is operating, if the back door is opened while the vehicle is stopped, operation of the rear window wiper will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wiper. When the back door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

Reverse-linked rear window wiper function

When the shift lever is shifted to R when the front wipers are operating, the rear window wiper will operate once.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the wiper on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the engine switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

■ Fuel types

→P.515

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

⚠ WARNING

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

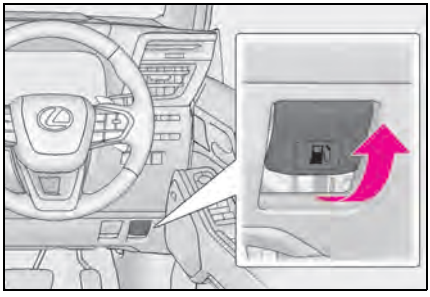
NOTICE

■ Refueling

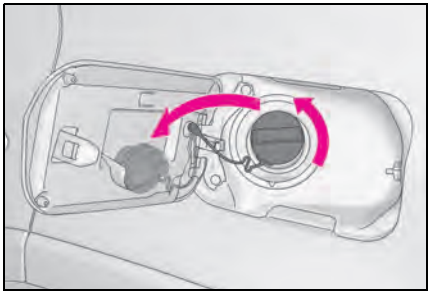
Do not spill fuel during refueling. Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Opening the fuel tank cap

1 Pull the lever.

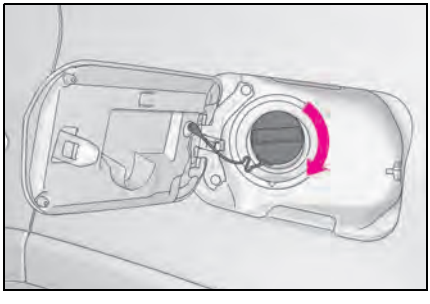


2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open it and put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.



Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the driving assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

WARNING

■ Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + operates under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants in a collision and assist the driver under normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

■ For safe use

- Do not overly rely on this system. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely. This system may not operate in all situations and provided assistance is limited. Over-reliance on this system to drive the vehicle safely may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.
- If attention is necessary while performing driving operations or a system malfunction occurs, a warning message or warning buzzer will be operated. If a warning message is displayed on the display, follow the instructions displayed.
- Depending on external noise, the volume of the audio system, etc. it may be difficult to hear the warning buzzer. Also, depending on the road conditions, it may be difficult to recognize the operation of the system.

■ When it is necessary to disable the system

In the following situations, make sure to disable the system.

Failure to do so may lead to the system not operating properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- When the vehicle is tilted due to being overloaded or having a flat tire
- When driving at extremely high speeds
- When towing another vehicle
- When the vehicle is being transported by a truck, ship, train, etc.
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When using an automatic car wash
- When a sensor is misaligned or deformed due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor or the area around the sensor
- When accessories which obstruct a sensor or light are temporarily installed to the vehicle

WARNING

- When a compact spare tire or tire chains are installed to the vehicle or an emergency tire puncture repair kit has been used
- When the tires are excessively worn or the inflation pressure of the tires is low
- When tires other than the manufacturer specified size are installed
- When the vehicle cannot be driven stably, due to a collision, malfunction, etc.

Driving assist systems

■ **AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)***

→P.196

■ **AHB (Automatic High Beam)**

→P.200

■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System)**

→P.217

■ **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)**

→P.228

■ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert)**

→P.232

■ **RSA (Road Sign Assist)**

→P.237

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control**

→P.239

■ **Cruise control**

→P.249

■ **Emergency Driving Stop System**

→P.252

■ **Driver monitor**

→P.216

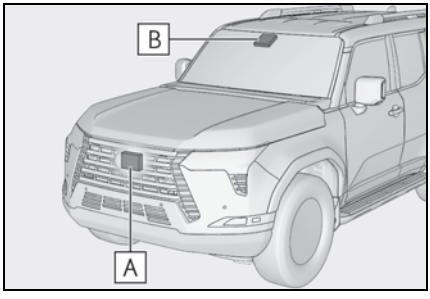
*: If equipped

Sensors used by Lexus Safety System +

Various sensors are used to obtain the necessary information for system operation.

■ **Sensors which detect the surrounding conditions**

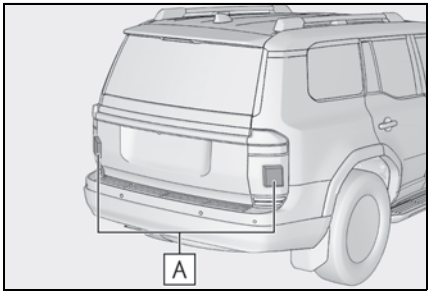
▶ Front



A Front radar sensor

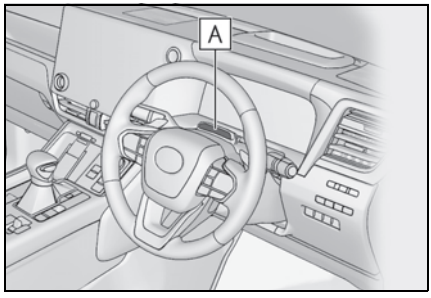
B Front camera

▶ Rear



A Rear side radar sensors

Sensors which detect the driver condition



A Driver monitor camera

WARNING

To prevent malfunction of the radar sensors

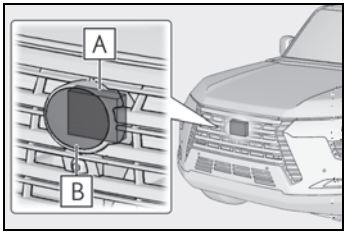
Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may lead to a radar sensor not operating properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the radar sensors and radar sensor covers clean at all times.

Clean the front of a radar sensor or the front or back of a radar sensor cover if it is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc.

When cleaning the radar sensor and radar sensor cover, use a soft cloth to remove dirt so as to not damage them.



A Radar sensor

B Radar sensor cover

- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers), aluminum tape, etc. to a radar sensor or radar sensor cover and their surrounding area.
- Do not subject a radar sensor or its surrounding area to impact.

If a radar sensor, the front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Do not disassemble the radar sensors.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensors or radar sensor cover, or replace them with anything other than Lexus genuine parts.
- In the following situations, recalibration of the radar sensors will be necessary. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.
  - When a radar sensor is removed and installed, or replaced
  - When the front bumper or the front grille has been replaced

To prevent malfunction of the front camera

Observe the following precautions.

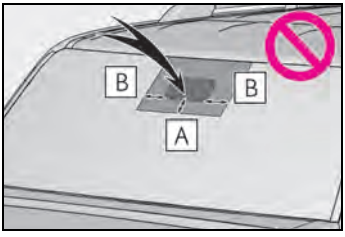
Failure to do so may lead to the front camera not operating properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always keep the windshield clean.
  - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
  - Even if a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.

WARNING

- If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.

● Do not attach stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the area of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



A Approximately 4 cm (1.6 in.)

B Approximately 4 cm (1.6 in.)

● If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation, or ice.

● If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.

● Do not attach window tint to the windshield.

● Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.

If the windshield has been replaced, recalibration of the front camera will be necessary. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

● Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.

● Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.

● Do not damage the lens of the front camera or allow it to become dirty.

When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Do not touch the lens of the front camera.

If the lens of the front camera is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.

● Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.

● Do not change the position or orientation of the front camera or remove it.

● Do not disassemble the front camera.

● Do not modify any parts around the front camera, such as the inside rear view mirror or ceiling.

● Do not attach accessories which may obstruct the front camera to the hood, front grille, or front bumper. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

● If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.

● Do not modify or change the headlights and other lights.

■ Front camera installation area on the windshield

If the system determines that the windshield may be fogged up, it will automatically operate the heater to defog the part of the windshield around the front camera. When cleaning, etc., be careful not to touch the area around the front camera until the windshield has cooled sufficiently, as touching it may cause burns.

WARNING

■ Precautions for the driver monitor camera

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may lead to malfunction of the driver monitor camera and the systems not operating properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not subject the driver monitor camera or its surrounding area to strong impact.

If subjected to a strong impact, the driver monitor camera may move out of alignment and the driver may no longer be detected correctly. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Do not disassemble or modify the driver monitor camera.
- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers), etc. to the driver monitor camera or its surrounding area.
- Do not allow the driver monitor camera or its surrounding area to get wet.
- Do not cover the driver monitor camera or place anything in front of it.
- Keep the lens of the driver monitor camera free from damage.
- Do not touch the lens of the driver monitor camera or allow it to become dirty.

When there is dirt or fingerprints on the camera lens, clean it with a dry, soft cloth so as to not mark or damage it.

- When cleaning the lens, do not use detergents or organic solvents that may damage plastic.

■ Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly

- When the height or inclination of the vehicle has been changed due to modifications
- When the windshield is dirty, fogged up, cracked or damaged
- When the ambient temperature is high or low
- When mud, water, snow, dead insects, foreign matter, etc., is attached to the front of the sensor
- When in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow, or a sandstorm
- When water, snow, dust, etc. is thrown up in front of the vehicle, or when driving through mist or smoke
- When the headlights are not illuminated while driving in the dark, such as at night or when in a tunnel
- When the lens of a headlight is dirty and illumination is weak
- When the headlights are misaligned
- When a headlight is malfunctioning
- When the headlights of another vehicle, sunlight, or reflected light shines directly into the front camera
- When the brightness of the surrounding area changes suddenly
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, radar equipped vehicles, etc., or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present
- When a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- When in a location or near objects which strongly reflect radio waves, such as the following:
  - Tunnels
  - Truss bridges
  - Gravel roads
  - Rutted, snow-covered roads
  - Walls
  - Large trucks
  - Manhole covers

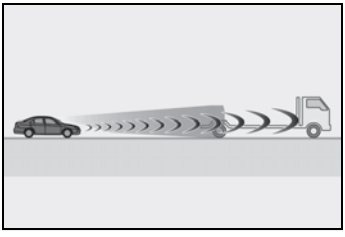
- Guardrail
- Metal plates

● When near a step or protrusion

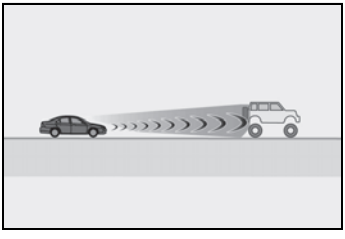
● When a detectable vehicle is narrow, such as a small mobility vehicle

● When a detectable vehicle has a small front or rear end, such as an unloaded truck

● When a detectable vehicle has a low front or rear end, such as a low bed trailer



● When a detectable vehicle has extremely high ground clearance



● When a detectable vehicle is carrying a load which protrudes from its cargo area

● When a detectable vehicle has little exposed metal, such as a vehicle which is partially covered with cloth, etc.

● When a detectable vehicle is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor, sidecar, etc.

● When the distance between the vehicle and a detectable vehicle has become extremely short

● When a detectable vehicle is at an angle

● When snow, mud, etc. is attached to a detectable vehicle

● When driving on the following kinds of roads:

- Roads with sharp curves or winding roads
- Roads with changes in grade, such as sudden inclines or declines
- Roads which is sloped to the left or right
- Roads with deep ruts
- Roads which are rough and unmaintained
- Roads which frequently undulate or are bumpy

● When the steering wheel is being operated frequently or suddenly

● When the vehicle is not in a constant position within a lane

● When parts related to this system, the brakes, etc. are cold or extremely hot, wet, etc.

● When the wheels are misaligned

● When driving on slick road surfaces, such as when it is covered with ice, snow, gravel, etc.

● When the course of the vehicle differs from the shape of a curve

● When the vehicle speed is excessively high when entering a curve

● When entering/exiting a parking lot, garage, car elevator, etc.

● When driving in a parking lot

● When driving through an area where there are obstructions which may contact your vehicle, such as tall grass, tree branches, a curtain, etc.

● When driving in strong wind

■ **Situations in which the lane may not be detected**

● When the lane is extremely wide or narrow

● Immediately after changing lanes or passing through an intersection

● When driving in a temporary lane or lane regulated by construction

● When there are structures, patterns, shadows which are similar to lane lines in the surrounding

● When there are multiple white lines for a lane line

● When the lane lines are not clear or driv-

ing on a wet road surface

- When a lane line is on a curb
- When driving on a bright, reflective road surface, such as concrete

■ Situations in which some or all of the functions of the system cannot operate

- When a malfunction is detected in this system or a related system, such as the brakes, steering, etc.
- When the VSC, Active TRC, or other safety related system is operating
- When the VSC, Active TRC, or other safety related system is off

■ Changes in brake operation sound and pedal response

- When the brakes have been operated, brake operation sounds may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but this does not indicate a malfunction.
- When the system is operating, the brake pedal may feel stiffer than expected or sink. In either situation the brake pedal can be depressed further. Further depress the brake pedal as necessary.

■ Situations in which the driver monitor may not operate properly

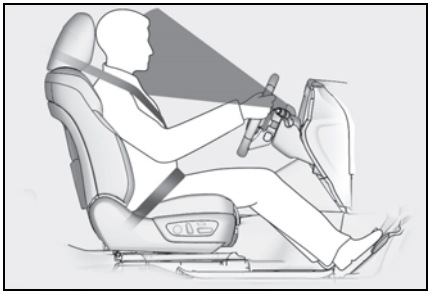
In situations such as the following, the driver monitor camera may not be able to detect the driver's face, and the function may not operate properly.

- When the inside of the vehicle is hot, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun
- When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of following vehicle, shines onto the driver monitor camera
- When the brightness inside the vehicle changes frequently due to the shadows of surrounding structures, etc.
- When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, is shining onto the driver's face
- When light, either inside or outside of the vehicle, is being reflected from the lenses of eyeglasses or sunglasses
- When there are multiple faces in the detection range of the driver monitor camera, such as when a front or rear passenger is leaning toward the driver's seat
- When the driver's face is outside of the detection range of the driver monitor camera, such as when leaned forward or when their head is outside of the window
- When the driver monitor camera is being blocked by the steering wheel, a hand holding the steering wheel, an arm, etc.
- When the driver is wearing a hat
- When the driver is wearing an eyepatch
- When the driver is wearing eyeglasses or sunglasses that do not easily transmit infrared rays
- When the driver is wearing contact lenses
- When the driver is wearing a face mask
- When the driver is laughing or their eyes are only slightly open
- When the driver's eyes, nose, mouth, or shape of their face is blocked
- When the driver is wearing makeup which makes it difficult to detect their eyes, nose, mouth, or shape of their face
- When the driver's eyes are blocked by the frame of eyeglasses, sunglasses, hair, etc.
- When there is a device inside the vehicle that radiates near infrared rays, such as a non-genuine driver monitoring system.

Driver monitor

Basic functions

During controlled driving, the driver monitor camera detects the position and direction the driver is facing, and whether their eyes are opened or closed. Through this, the system determines if the driver is checking their surroundings and if the driver can perform driving operations.



Warning function

In situations such as the following, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed to warn the driver.

- When the system determines that the driver is not paying attention to the road or their eyes are closed
- When the driver's face cannot be detected or the system determines that the driver has poor driving posture

Face identification

The driver monitor is used as a device to identify faces in order to identify an individual.

For information about how to use the face identification function, priorities among other devices of individual identification, and linked vehicle settings, see "My Settings". (→P.159)

WARNING

For safe use

- The driver monitor is not designed to prevent the driver from driving carelessly or having a poor driving posture. Pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving.
- The driver monitor cannot reduce drowsiness. If you feel unable to concentrate or drowsy, take a break and sleep as necessary in order to ensure safe driving.

Warning function

These functions may not operate when the vehicle speed is low.

Face identification

Face identification starts when the door is opened then closed.

In face identification, facial traits are digitized and stored in a built-in computer, to be used for identification in My Settings.

- Face image or video are not stored. Voice is not stored either.
- Digitized face information is not used for any purpose other than identification in My Settings. Additionally, face information cannot be decoded and will not be disclosed or provided to a third party.
- Face information can be deleted by yourself.
- For the handling of face information, please consent to the following before using it:
  - Face identification does not guarantee a complete identity authentication, collation, or identification.
  - When face information registration fails frequently or face identification fails fre-

quently, the driver cameras should be cleaned or face information should be registered again.
- Face information stored in the vehicle computer cannot be decoded or moved to another media. Therefore, it is necessary to register face information again once it is deleted or relevant parts are replaced.
- Once deleted, face information cannot be restored. It is necessary to register face information again.

■ **Situations where face identification may not be performed correctly**

This system is designed for use to identify facial traits. In the following situations, face information may not be able to be registered or identified correctly:

- When a part of the driver's face (eyebrows, eyes, nose, or mouth) is not visible
- When the driver is wearing glasses/sun glasses, a face mask, muffler, etc.
- When the driver is not facing front
- When part of driver's face is covered with hair, beard, a hand, clothes, jewelry, etc.
- When the driver is closing eyes
- When a non-registered driver is a twin, etc. with a registered driver, whose face looks quite alike with each other

■ **Situations in which the driver monitor may not operate properly**

→P.215

Changing Driver monitor settings

The settings of Driver monitor can be changed through customize settings. (→P.524)

PCS (Pre-Collision System)

The pre-collision system uses sensors to detect objects (→P.218) in the path of the vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detectable object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.227)

WARNING

■ **For safe use**

- Driving safely is solely the responsibility of the driver. Pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving.

Never use the pre-collision system in place of normal braking operations. This system cannot help avoid or reduce the impact of a collision in every situation. Over-reliance on this system to drive the vehicle safely may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

- Although the pre-collision system is designed to help avoid or help reduce the impact of a collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions. Therefore, it may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.

Read the following items carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- For safe use: →P.209

■ When to disable the pre-collision system

- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

Detectable objects

The system can detect the following as detectable objects. (Detectable objects differ depending on the function.)

- Vehicles
- Bicycles*
- Pedestrians
- Motorcycles*
- Walls

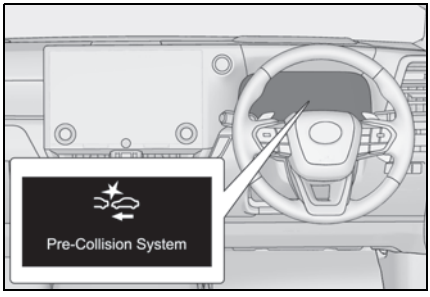
*: Detected as a detectable object only when being ridden.

System functions

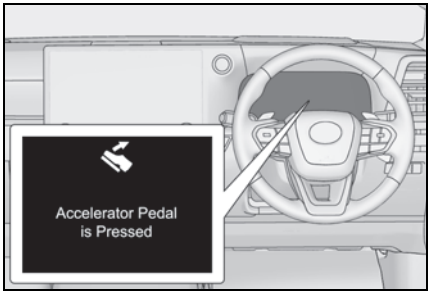
■ Pre-collision warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, a buzzer will sound and an icon and warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.

If the detectable object is a vehicle, moderate braking will be performed with the warning.



If the system determines that the accelerator pedal is strongly depressed, the following icon and message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Pre-collision brake assist

If the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high and the brake operation by the driver is insufficient, the braking power will be increased.

■ Pre-collision brake control

If the system determines that the possibility of a collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the

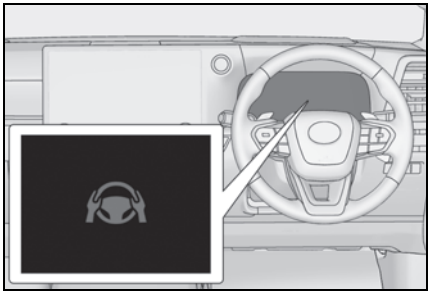
impact of the collision.

■ **Emergency steering assist**

If the system determines that the following conditions are met, assistance will be provided to help enhance vehicle stability and prevent lane departure. During assistance, in addition to the pre-collision warning, the following icon will be displayed on the multi-information display.

- The possibility of a collision is high
- There is sufficient space within the lane to perform evasive steering maneuvers
- The driver is operating the steering wheel

During assistance, the pre-collision warning will operate and a message will be displayed to warn the driver.

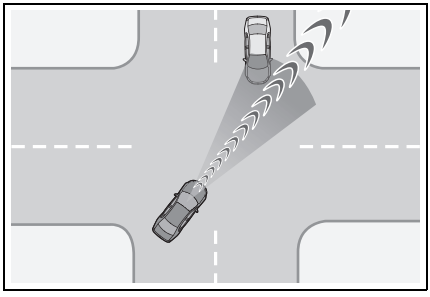


■ **Intersection collision avoidance support (left/right turn)**

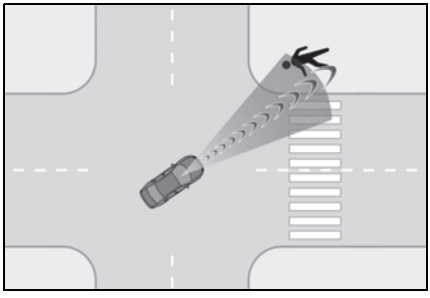
In situations such as the following, if the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, the pre-collision warning and pre-collision braking will operate.

Depending on the intersection, assistance may not operate correctly.

- When turning left/right at an intersection and crossing the path of an oncoming vehicle



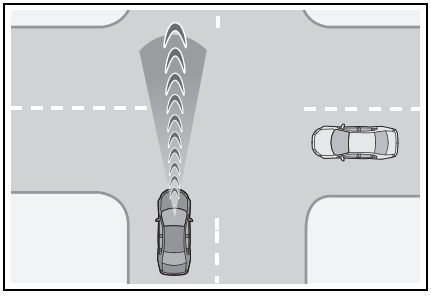
- When turning left/right and a pedestrian or bicycle is detected



■ **Intersection collision avoidance support (crossing vehicles)**

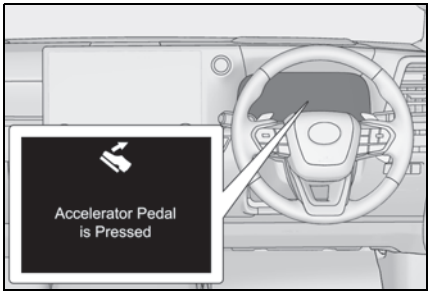
At an intersection, etc., if the system determines that the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle or motorcycle is high, the pre-collision warning and pre-collision braking will operate.

Depending on the intersection, assistance may not operate correctly.



■ Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed

When driving at a low speed, if the accelerator pedal is strongly depressed and the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision, engine output will be restrained or the brakes will be applied weakly to restrict acceleration. During operation, a buzzer will sound and the following icon and message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Suspension control (if equipped)

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, the AVS (→P.370) controls the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

WARNING

■ Pre-collision braking

- When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.
- The pre-collision braking function is not designed to hold the vehicle stopped. If the vehicle is stopped by pre-collision brake control, the driver should operate the brakes immediately as necessary.
- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision brake control.

■ Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed

If the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed function from operating or possibly causing its operation to be canceled.

■ Emergency steering assist

- The emergency steering assist will be canceled when the system determines that lane departure prevention control has completed.
- Depending on operations performed by the driver, emergency steering assist may not operate or operation may be canceled.

WARNING

- If the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly, the steering wheel is turned heavily, the brake pedal is depressed, or the turn signal lever is operated, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and the emergency steering assist may not operate.
- While the emergency steering assist is operating, if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly, the steering wheel is turned heavily, or the brake pedal is depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and emergency steering assist operation may be canceled.
- While the emergency steering assist is operating, if the steering wheel is held or turned in the opposite direction of system operation, emergency steering assist operation will be canceled.

Operating conditions of each function of the pre-collision system

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detected object is high.

However, the system will not operate in the following situations:

- When the vehicle has not been driven a certain amount after a terminal of the battery has been disconnected and reconnected
- When the shift lever is in R
- When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

The following are the operational speeds and cancelation conditions of each function:

- Pre-collision warning

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding vehicles, stopped vehicles	Approximately 5 to 180 km/h (3 to 110 mph)	Approximately 5 to 180 km/h (3 to 110 mph)
Oncoming vehicles	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approximately 80 to 220 km/h (50 to 130 mph)
Bicycles	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Pedestrians	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)
Preceding motorcycles, stopped motorcycles	Approximately 5 to 180 km/h (3 to 110 mph)	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)
Oncoming motorcycles	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)

While the pre-collision warning is operating, if the steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly, the pre-collision warning may be cancelled.

● Pre-collision brake assist

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding vehicles, stopped vehicles	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approximately 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Bicycles	Approximately 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approximately 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)
Pedestrians	Approximately 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approximately 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)
Preceding motorcycles, stopped motorcycles	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approximately 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision braking

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding vehicles, stopped vehicles	Approximately 5 to 180 km/h (3 to 110 mph)	Approximately 5 to 180 km/h (3 to 110 mph)
Oncoming vehicles	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approximately 80 to 220 km/h (50 to 130 mph)
Bicycles	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)
Pedestrians	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding motorcycles, stopped motorcycles	Approximately 5 to 180 km/h (3 to 110 mph)	Approximately 5 to 80 km/h (3 to 50 mph)
Oncoming motorcycles	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approximately 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is strongly depressed
- The steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly

● Emergency steering assist

The emergency steering assist will not operate when the turn signal lights are flashing.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding vehicles, stopped vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, motorcycles	Approximately 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)	Approximately 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)

While the emergency steering assist is operating, if any of the following are performed, emergency steering assist operation may be cancelled:

- The accelerator pedal is strongly depressed
- The steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly
- The brake pedal is depressed

● Intersection collision avoidance support (left/right turn)

The intersection collision avoidance support (for left/right turning vehicles) will not operate when the turn signal lights are not flashing.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approximately 5 to 40 km/h (3 to 25 mph)	Approximately 5 to 75 km/h (3 to 45 mph)	Approximately 10 to 115 km/h (7 to 70 mph)
Pedestrians	Approximately 5 to 30 km/h (3 to 20 mph)	-	Approximately 5 to 40 km/h (3 to 25 mph)

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Bicycles	Approximately 5 to 30 km/h (3 to 20 mph)	-	Approximately 5 to 50 km/h (3 to 30 mph)
Oncoming motorcycles	Approximately 5 to 40 km/h (3 to 25 mph)	Approximately 5 to 75 km/h (3 to 45 mph)	Approximately 10 to 115 km/h (7 to 70 mph)

● Intersection collision avoidance support (crossing vehicles)

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Crossing vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles, Motorcycles (side)	Approximately 5 to 60 km/h (3 to 38 mph)	• Your vehicle speed or less • Approximately 40 km/h or less (25mph or less)	Approximately 5 to 60 km/h (3 to 38 mph)

● Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed

The Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed function will not operate when the turn signal lights are flashing.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding vehicles, stopped vehicles, Pedestrians, Bicycles, Wall	Approximately 0 to 15 km/h (0 to 9 mph)	Approximately 0 to 15 km/h (0 to 9 mph)

While the Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed function is operating, if any of the following are performed, the low speed sudden acceleration suppression function operation will be cancelled:

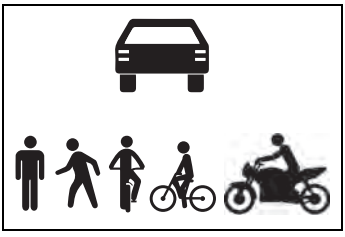
- The accelerator pedal is released.
- The steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly

■ **Detection of detectable objects**

Objects are detected based on their size, shape, and movement.

Depending on the ambient brightness, movement, posture and direction of a detectable object, it may not be detected and the system may not operate properly.

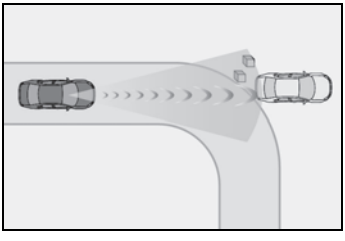
The system detects shapes, such as the following, as detectable objects.



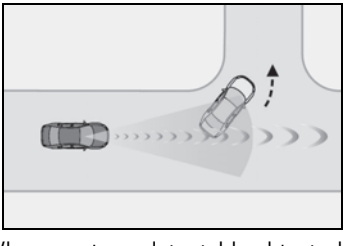
■ **Situations in which the system may operate even though the possibility of a collision is not high**

● In certain situations, such as the following, the system may determine that the possibility of a collision is high and operate:

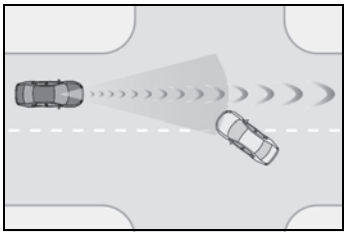
- When passing a detectable object
- When changing lanes while overtaking a detectable object
- When suddenly approaching a detectable object
- When approaching a detectable object or other object on the roadside, such as guardrails, utility poles, trees, walls, etc.
- When there is a detectable object or other object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



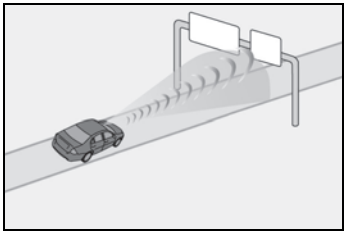
- When there are patterns or a painting ahead of the vehicle that may be mistaken for a detectable object
- When passing a detectable object that is changing lanes or turning left/right



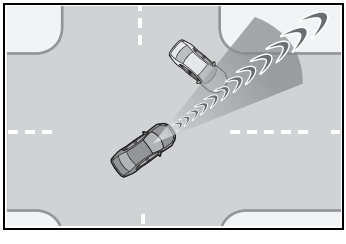
- When passing a detectable object which is stopped to make a left/right turn



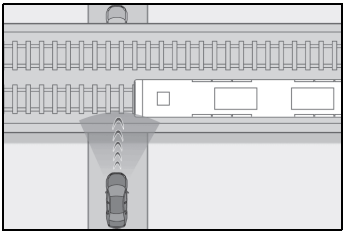
- When a detectable object stops immediately before entering the path of the vehicle
- When passing through a location with a structure above the road (traffic sign, billboard, etc.)



- When approaching an electric toll gate barrier, parking lot barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When turning left/right and an oncoming vehicle, oncoming motorcycle, pedestrian or bicycle crosses in front of the vehicle
- When attempting to turn left/right in front of an oncoming vehicle, oncoming motorcycle, pedestrian or bicycle
- When turning left/right and an oncoming vehicle, oncoming motorcycle, pedestrian or bicycle stops or changes course immediately before entering the path of the vehicle
- When turning left/right and an oncoming vehicle turns left/right in front of the vehicle



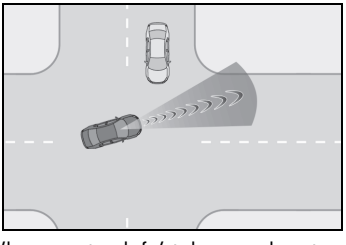
- When the steering wheel is operated toward the path of an oncoming vehicle
- When there is an object moving above or under the road



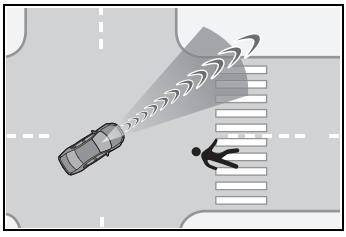
Situations in which the system may not operate properly

In certain situations, such as the following, a detectable object may not be detected by the front sensors, and the system may not operate properly:

- When a detectable object is approaching your vehicle
- When your vehicle or a detectable object is wandering
- When a detectable object makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When suddenly approaching a detectable object
- When the detectable object is near a wall, fence, guardrail, manhole cover, steel plate on the road surface, or another vehicle
- When there is a structure above a detectable object
- When part of a detectable object is hidden by another object (large luggage, umbrella, guardrail, etc.)
- When multiple detectable objects are overlapping
- When a bright light, such as the sun, is reflecting off of a detectable object
- When a detectable object is white and looks extremely bright
- When the color or brightness of a detectable object causes it to blend in with its surroundings
- When a detectable object cuts in front of or suddenly emerges in front of your vehicle
- When approaching a vehicle which is diagonal
- If a bicycle is a child sized bicycle, is carrying a large load, is carrying an extra passenger, is carrying a forward leaning rider, or has an unusual shape (bicycles equipped with a child seat, tandem bicycles, etc.)
- If a pedestrian or bicycle is shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.).
- When the silhouette of a pedestrian or bicycle is unclear (such as when they are wearing a raincoat, long skirt, etc.)
- When a pedestrian is bending forward or squatting
- When a pedestrian or bicycle is moving at high speed
- When a pedestrian is pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
- When a detectable object blends in with the surrounding area, such as when it is dim (at dawn or dusk) or dark (at night or in a tunnel)
- When the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time after the engine was started
- While turning left/right or a few seconds after turning left/right
- While driving around a curve and a few seconds after driving around a curve
- When turning left/right and an oncoming vehicle is driving in a lane 3 or more lanes from the vehicle
- When turning left/right and the direction of the vehicle differs greatly from the direction traffic flows in the oncoming lane



- When turning left/right, a pedestrian or bicycle behind the vehicle comes in front of it as if it overtakes the vehicle



- When at an intersection, the approaching crossing vehicle is long in overall length, such as a large truck, towing trailer, etc.

● In addition to the preceding, in certain situations, such as the following, the emergency steering assist may not operate properly:

- When a detectable object is too close to the vehicle
- When there is insufficient space to perform evasive steering maneuvers or an obstruction exists in the evasion direction
- When there is an oncoming vehicle

● In addition to the preceding, in certain situations, such as the following, walls may not be detected as a target object and the Acceleration Suppression at Low Speed function may not operate properly:

- When scenery behind the wall is visible, such as a glass door, grid fence, etc.
- When the wall is slanted or low
- When the wall is narrow, such as a pole, etc.
- When the wall is made of plants, such as a hedge, etc.
- When the road, etc. is reflected on the wall
- When the vehicle is approaching the wall at an angle

Changing the pre-collision setting

● The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting. (→P.523)

The system is enabled each time the engine switch is turned to ON.

● When the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

● The pre-collision setting can be changed on the customize settings. (→P.523)

● When the pre-collision warning timing is changed, the emergency steering assist timing will also be changed.
When later is selected, the emergency steering assist will not operate in most cases.

● When the system determines that the driver is not facing forward, the pre-collision warning and emergency steering assist will operate at the earlier timing, regardless of the user setting.

● When the dynamic radar cruise control is operating, the pre-collision warning will operate at the earlier timing, regardless of the user setting.

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)

LTA functions

- When driving on a road with clear lane lines with the dynamic radar cruise control operating, lane lines and preceding and surrounding vehicles are detected using the front camera and radar sensor, and the steering wheel is operated to maintain the vehicle's lane position.

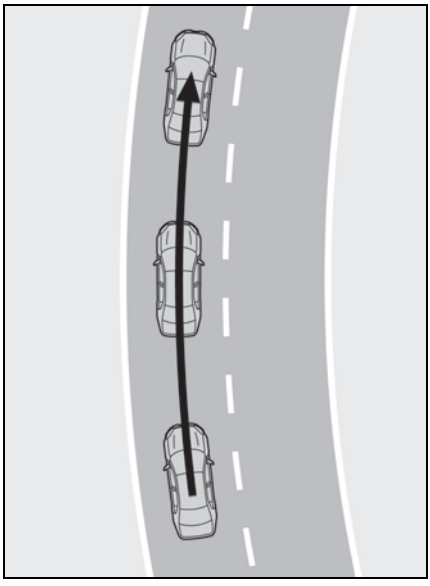
Use this function only on highways and expressways.

If the dynamic radar cruise control is not operating, the function will not operate.

In situations where the lane lines are difficult to see or are not visible, such as when in a traffic jam, support will be provided using the path of preceding and surrounding vehicles.

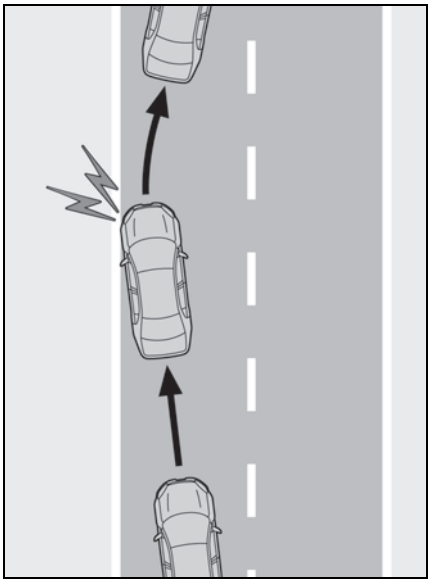
If the system determines that the steering wheel has not been operated for a certain amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, the driver will be alerted and this function will be temporarily canceled.

If the steering wheel is firmly gripped, the function will begin operating again.



- When the function is operating, if the vehicle is likely to depart from its lane, the driver will be alerted via a display and buzzer.

When the buzzer sounds, check the area around the vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.



WARNING

■ Before using the LTA system

- Do not overly rely on the LTA system. The LTA system is not a system which provides automated assistance in driving and it is not a system which reduces the amount of attention necessary for safe driving. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to their surroundings and operating the steering wheel as necessary to ensure safety. Also, the driver is responsible for taking adequate breaks when fatigued, such as when driving for a long time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident.
- When not using the LTA system, turn it off using the LTA switch.

■ Operating conditions of function

This function is operable when all of the following conditions are met:

- The LTA system detects lane lines or the path of preceding or surrounding vehicles.
- The dynamic radar cruise control is operating.
- The lane width is approximately 3 to 4 m (10 to 13 ft.).
- The turn signal lever is not being operated.
- The vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or decelerating more than a certain amount.
- The steering wheel is not being turned with a large force.
- The hands off steering wheel warning (→P.230) is not operating.
- The vehicle is being driven in the center of a lane.

■ Temporary cancelation of functions

- When the operating conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function will automatically be restored. (→P.229)
- If the operating conditions of a function are no longer met while the function is operating, a buzzer may sound to indicate that the function has been temporarily canceled.
- The steering assist operation of the function can be overridden by the steering wheel operation of the driver.

■ Lane departure warning function when the LTA is operating

- Even if the LDA warning method is changed to vibration of the steering wheel, if the vehicle deviates from the lane while the LTA is operating, the warning buzzer will sound to alert the driver.
- If steering wheel operation equivalent to that necessary for a lane change is detected, the system will determine the vehicle is not deviating from the lane and the warning will not operate.

■ **Hands off steering wheel warning operation**

- When the system determines the driver is not holding the steering wheel, a message urging the driver to grip the steering wheel and the icon shown in the illustration will be displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. If the system detects that the steering wheel is held, the warning will be canceled. When using the system, make sure to grip the steering wheel firmly, regardless of whether the warning is operating or not.



- If no operations are detected for a certain amount of time, the warning will operate and the function will be temporarily canceled. This warning may also operate if the driver only operates steering wheel a small amount continuously.

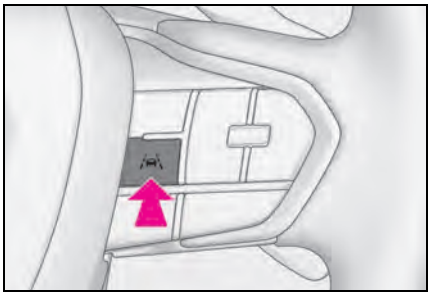
■ **Situations in which the hands off steering wheel warning may not operate properly**

- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, handle control condition and road surface, the warning function may not operate.

Enabling/disabling the system

The LTA will change between ON/OFF each time the LTA switch is pressed.

When the LTA is ON, the LTA indicator will illuminate.

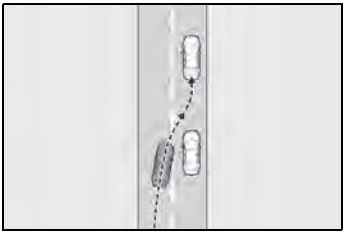


WARNING

■ **Situations in which the functions may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Do not overly rely on these functions. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to their surroundings and operating the steering wheel as necessary to ensure safety.

- When a preceding or surrounding vehicle changes lanes (Your vehicle may follow the preceding or surrounding vehicle and also change lanes)



- When a preceding or surrounding vehicle is swaying (Your vehicle may sway accordingly and depart from the lane)
- When a preceding or surrounding vehicle departs from a lane (Your vehicle may follow the preceding or surrounding vehicle and also depart from the lane)

WARNING

- When a preceding or surrounding vehicle is being driven extremely close to the left/right lane line (Your vehicle may follow the preceding or surrounding vehicle accordingly and depart from the lane)
- When there are moving objects or structures in the surrounding area (Depending on the position of the moving object or structure relative to your vehicle, your vehicle may sway)
- When the vehicle is struck by a crosswind or the turbulence of other nearby vehicles
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213
- Situations in which the lane may not be detected: →P.214
- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

Operation display of steering wheel operation support

The operating state of the LTA system is indicated.

Indicator	Lane display	Steering icon	Situation
 White	 Gray/White	 Gray	LTA is on standby
 Green	 Green	 Green	LTA is operating
 Yellow Flashing	 Yellow Flashing	 Green	The vehicle is departing the lane toward the side which the lane display is flashing

LDA (Lane Departure Alert)

Basic functions

The LDA system warns the driver if the vehicle may deviate from the current lane or course*, and also can slightly operate the steering wheel to help avoid deviation from the lane or course*.

The front camera is used to detect lane lines or a course*.

*: Boundary between the asphalt and grass, soil, etc., or structures, such as a curb, guardrail, etc.

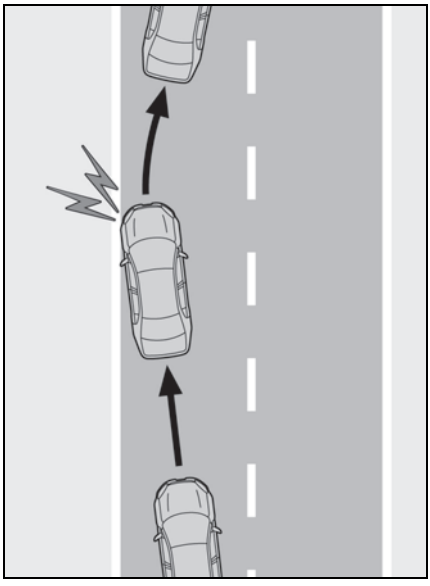
■ Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, a warning is displayed on a display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

Check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane or course*.

If the system determines that the vehicle may collide with a vehicle in an adjacent lane, the lane departure alert will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

*: Boundary between the asphalt and grass, soil, etc., or structures, such as a curb, guardrail, etc.



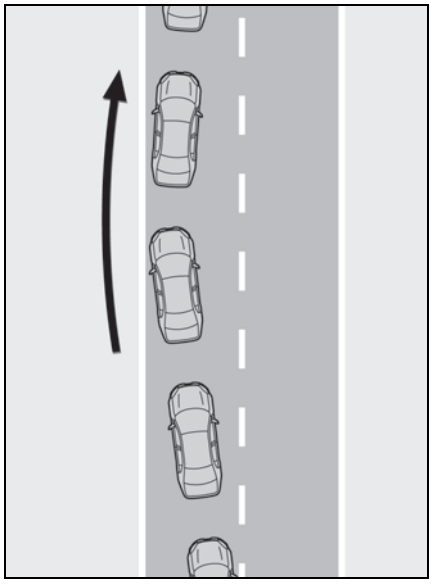
■ Lane departure prevention function

If the system determines that the vehicle is likely to depart from its lane or course*, it provides assistance through steering wheel operations to help avoid deviation from the lane or course.

If the system determines that the steering wheel has not been operated for a certain amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning message may be displayed and a warning buzzer may sound to alert the driver.

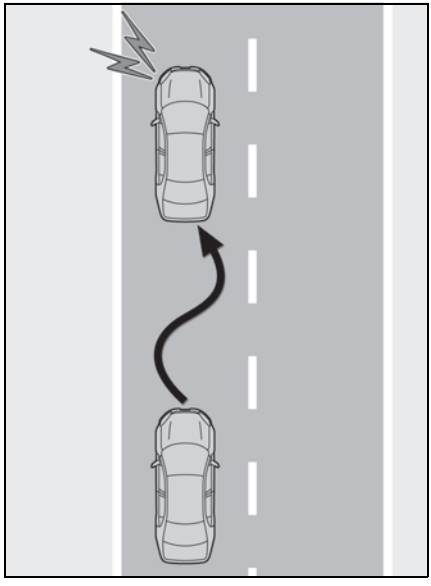
If the system determines that the vehicle may collide with a vehicle in an adjacent lane, the lane departure prevention function will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

*: Boundary between the asphalt and grass, soil, etc., or structures, such as a curb, guardrail, etc.



Break suggestion function

If the vehicle is swaying, a message will be displayed and a buzzer will sound to urge the driver to take a break.



WARNING

Before using the LDA system

- Do not overly rely on the LDA system. The LDA system is not a system which provides automated assistance in driving and it is not a system which reduces the amount of attention necessary for safe driving. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to their surroundings and operating the steering wheel as necessary to ensure safety. Also, the driver is responsible for taking adequate breaks when fatigued, such as when driving for a long time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident.

Operating conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert/prevention function

This function is operable when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (30 mph) or more.

Operation may be possible when the vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more if vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians are detected near the lane.

- The system recognizes a lane or course*. (When recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)
- The lane width is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- The turn signal lever is not being operated.

(Except when a vehicle is detected in the direction that the turn signal lever is operated.)

- The vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or decelerating more than a certain amount.

- The steering wheel is not being turned sufficiently to perform a lane change.
- When the VSC or Active TRC system is not turned off

*: Boundary between the asphalt and grass, soil, etc., or structures, such as a curb, guardrail, etc.

■ Temporary cancellation of functions

When the operating conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function will automatically be restored. (→P.233)

■ Operation of the lane departure alert function/lane departure prevention function

- Depending on the vehicle speed, road conditions, lane departure angle, etc., operation of the lane departure prevention function may not be felt or the function may not operate.
- Depending on the conditions, the warning buzzer may operate even if vibration is selected through a customize setting.
- If a course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function or lane departure prevention function may not operate.
- The lane departure alert function or lane departure prevention function may not operate if the system judges that the vehicle is intentionally being steered to avoid a pedestrian or parked vehicle.
- It may not be possible for the system to judge if there is danger of a collision with a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- Depending on the driver condition, the lane departure alert function or lane departure prevention function changes the timing of operation.
- The steering assist operation of the lane departure prevention function can be overridden by the steering wheel operation of the driver.

*: Boundary between the asphalt and grass, soil, etc., or structures, such as a curb, guardrail, etc.

■ Hands off steering wheel warning operation

In the following situations, a message urging the driver to operate the steering wheel and an icon will be displayed and a buzzer will sound to warn the driver. When using the system, make sure to grip the steering wheel firmly, regardless of whether the warning is operating or not.



- When the system determines that the driver is not securely holding the steering wheel, or the steering wheel is not being operated when the steering assist operation of the lane departure prevention function is operating

The length of time that the warning buzzer operates will become longer as the frequency of the steering assist operating increases. Even if the system judges that the steering wheel has been operated, the warning buzzer will sound for a certain amount of time.

■ Break suggestion function

This function is operable when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is approximately 65 km/h (40 mph) or more.
- The lane width is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.

Depending on the condition of the vehicle and road surface, the break suggestion function may not operate.



Press the meter control switch to turn off the message.

Unless is pressed, the message of the break suggestion function will remain displayed.

Changing LDA settings

- The LDA system can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting. (→P.523)
- The settings of the LDA can be changed on the customize settings. (→P.523)
- When the system determines that the driver is tired, the lane departure warning function will operate at the "Earlier" timing, regardless of the customized setting. Also, this setting will be kept until the engine switch is turned off.

WARNING

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

In the following situations, the system may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Do not overly rely on these functions. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to their surroundings and operating the steering wheel as necessary to ensure safety.

- When the boundary between the asphalt and grass, soil, etc., or structures, such as a curb, guardrail, etc. is not clear or straight
- When the vehicle is struck by a crosswind or the turbulence of other nearby vehicles
- Situations in which the lane may not be detected: →P.214
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213
- Situations in which some or all of the functions of the system cannot operate: →P.215
- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

Displays and system operation

The operating state of the lane departure alert function and steering assist operation of the lane departure prevention function are indicated.

Indicator	Lane display	Steering icon	Situation
 Yellow Illuminated	Not illuminated	Not illuminated	System disabled
Not illuminated	 Gray	Not illuminated	Lane lines are not detected by the system
Not illuminated	 White	Not illuminated	Lane lines are detected by the system
 Yellow Flashing	 Yellow Flashing	Not illuminated	Lane departure alert function is operating for the side which the lane display is flashing
 Green	 Green	 Green	Lane departure prevention function is operating for the side which the lane display is illuminated
 Yellow Flashing	 Yellow Flashing	 Green	Lane departure alert function/lane departure prevention function is operating for the side which the lane display is flashing

RSA (Road Sign Assist)

The RSA system detects specific road signs using the front camera and warns the driver via displays and buzzers.

WARNING

■ **For safe use**

- Driving safely is solely the responsibility of the driver. Pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving.
- Do not rely solely upon the RSA. The RSA assists the driver by providing road sign information, but it is not a replacement for the driver's own vision and awareness. Driving safely is solely the responsibility of the driver. Pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving.

■ **Situations in which the RSA should not be used**

When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213

Display Function

- When the front camera detects a sign, the sign will be displayed on the display.

■ **Operating conditions of sign display**

Signs will be displayed when the following conditions are met:

- The system has detected a sign

In the following situations, a displayed sign may stop being displayed:

- When a new sign has not been detected for a certain distance
- When the system determines that the road being driven on has changed, such as after a left or right turn

■ **Situations in which the display function may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the RSA system may not operate properly and may not detect signs or may display the incorrect sign. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When a sign is dirty, faded, tilted or bent
- When the contrast of an electronic sign is low
- When all or part of a sign is hidden by a tree, utility pole, etc.
- When a sign is detected by the front camera for a short amount of time
- When the driving state (turning, changing lanes, etc.) is judged incorrectly
- When a sign is immediately after a freeway junction or in an adjacent lane just before merging
- When stickers are attached to the rear of a preceding vehicle
- When a sign similar to a system compatible sign is detected as a system compatible sign
- When a speed limit sign for a frontage road is within detection range of the front camera
- When driving around a roundabout
- When a sign intended for trucks, etc. is detected

Notification function

In the following situations, the RSA system will output a warning to notify the driver.

- If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed warning threshold of the

speed limit sign displayed on the display, the sign display will be emphasized and a buzzer will sound.

■ **Operating conditions of the notification functions**

● Excess speed notification function

This function will operate when the following condition is met:

- A speed limit road sign is recognized by the system.

Types of road signs supported

● The following types of road signs can be displayed.

However, non-standard or recently introduced traffic signs may not be displayed.

- Speed limit road signs*



Speed limit

*: No speed limit information (---) is displayed when a speed limit sign is not available.

- Speed limit with supplemental mark*



Time

*: Displayed simultaneously with a speed limit sign.

● Depending on the specifications of the vehicle, signs may be displayed overlapping.



Duplicate display example

Changing RSA settings

● The settings of the RSA can be changed through customize settings. (→P.524)

Dynamic radar cruise control

This dynamic radar cruise control detects the presence of vehicles ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle distance, and operates to maintain a suitable distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control only on highways and expressways.

WARNING

■ **For safe use**

- Driving safely is solely the responsibility of the driver. Do not overly rely on this system, and pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving.
- The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Read the following items carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

Conditions under which the system may not operate correctly: →P.245

- Set the speed appropriately according to the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for confirming the set speed.
- Even if the system is operating correctly, the condition of a preceding vehicle as recognized by the driver and detected by the system may differ. Therefore, it is necessary for the driver to pay attention, assess risks, and ensure safety. Over-reliance on this system to drive the vehicle safely may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Precautions for the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system. Over-reliance on this system may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Details of support provided for the driver's vision

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated preceding vehicle. It is not a system which allows for careless or inattentive driving, and is not a system which assists in poor visibility conditions.

The driver must pay attention to their surroundings, even when the vehicle stops.

- Details of support provided for the driver's judgement

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated preceding vehicle is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger.

- Details of support provided for the driver's operation

WARNING

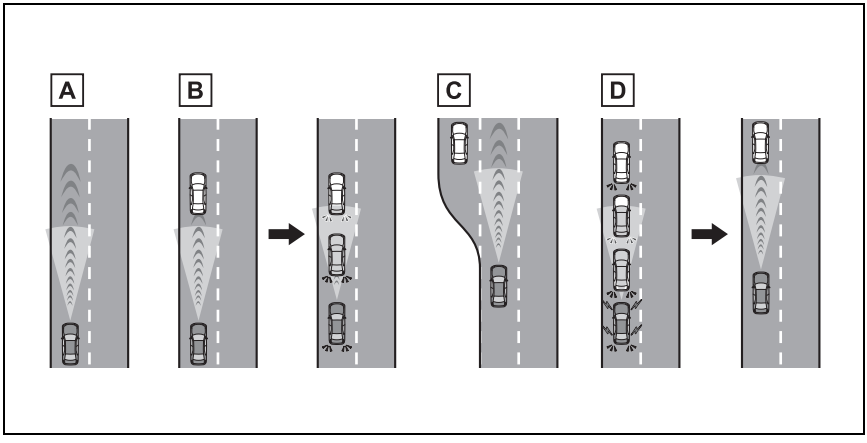
The dynamic radar cruise control does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure safety.

■ **Situations in which the dynamic radar cruise control should not be used**

Do not use the dynamic radar cruise control in the following situations. As the system will not be able to provide appropriate control, using it may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- When driving on a highway or expressway entrance or exit
- When the approach warning sounds frequently
- Situations in which the sensors may not operate properly: →P.213
- Situations in which the lane may not be detected: →P.214

Basic functions



A Constant speed cruising:
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle drives at the speed set by the driver.

If the set vehicle speed is exceeded while driving down a hill, the set vehicle speed display will blink and a buzzer will sound.

B Deceleration and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set vehicle speed is detected

When a vehicle is detected driving ahead of your vehicle, the vehicle automatically decelerates and if a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the brakes are applied (the stop lights will come on at this time). The vehicle is controlled to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver, in accordance with changes in the speed of the preceding vehicle. If vehicle deceleration is not sufficient and the vehicle approaches the vehicle ahead, the approach warning will sound.

C Acceleration
When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set vehicle speed

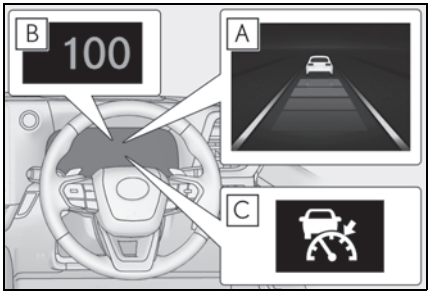
The vehicle accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached and then resumes constant speed cruising.

D Starting off:

If a preceding vehicle stops, the vehicle will also stop (controlled stop). After the preceding vehicle starts off, pressing the “RES” switch or depressing the accelerator pedal will resume follow-up cruising (start off operation). If a start off operation is not performed, the controlled stop will continue.

System components

Meter display

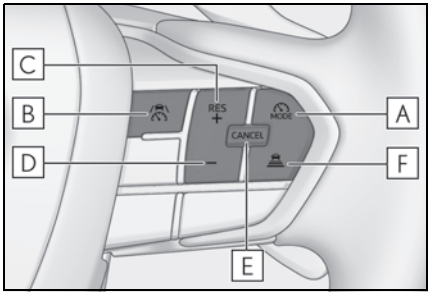


A Multi-information display

B Set vehicle speed

C Indicators

Switches



A Driving assist mode select switch

B Driving assist switch

C "+" switch/"RES" switch

D "-" switch

E Cancel switch

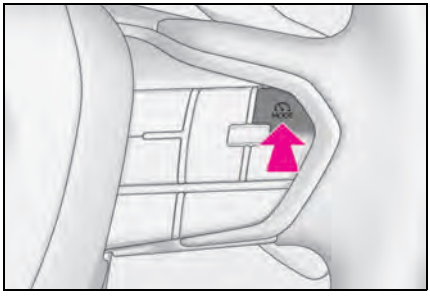
F Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

Using the dynamic radar cruise control

Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the driving assist mode select switch to select dynamic radar cruise control.

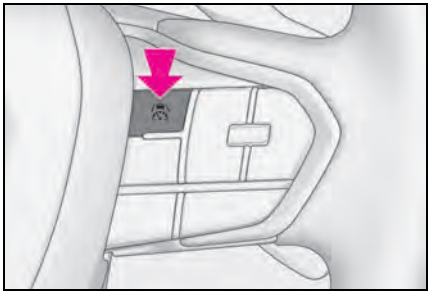
The dynamic radar cruise control indicator will illuminate.



2 Using the accelerator pedal, accelerate or decelerate to the desired vehicle speed (approximately 30 km/h [20 mph] or more), and press the driving assist switch to set the set vehicle speed.

The set vehicle speed will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released will be the set vehicle speed.

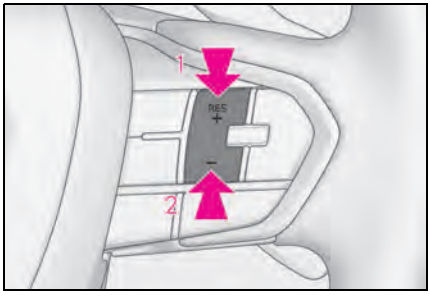


Adjusting the set vehicle speed

- Adjusting the set vehicle speed

using the switches

To change the set vehicle speed, press the "+" switch or "-" switch until the desired speed is displayed.



1 Increase set vehicle speed

2 Decrease set vehicle speed

Short press adjustment: Press the switch

Long press adjustment: Press and hold the switch until the desired set vehicle speed is reached.

The set vehicle speed will increase or decrease as follows:

Short press adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph) or 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the switch is pressed

Long press adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph) or 5 mph (8 km/h) increments continuously while the switch is pressed and held

The set vehicle speed adjustment increment can be changed through a customize setting.

● Increasing the set vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal

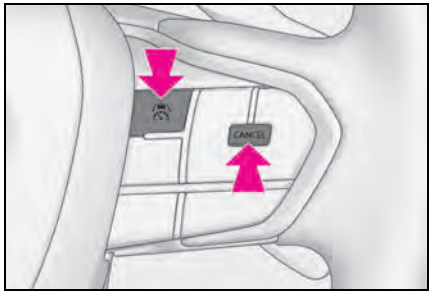
1 Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired vehicle speed.

2 Press the "+" switch.

■ Canceling/resuming control

1 Press the cancel switch or driving assist switch to cancel control.

Control will also be canceled if the brake pedal is depressed.
(If the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal will not cancel control.)



2 Press the "RES" switch to resume control.

■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

Each time the switch is pressed, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting will change as follows:

If a preceding vehicle is detected, the preceding vehicle mark A will be displayed.

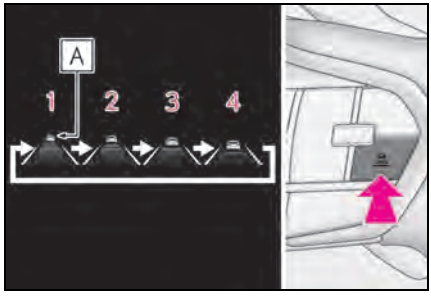


Illustration Number	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance	Approximate Distance (Vehicle Speed: 100 km/h [60 mph])
1	Extra long	Approximately 70 m (230 ft.)
2	Long	Approximately 60 m (200 ft.)
3	Medium	Approximately 45 m (145 ft.)
4	Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

The actual vehicle-to-vehicle distance varies in accordance with the vehicle speed. Also, when the vehicle is stopped by system control, it will be stopped at a certain distance from the preceding vehicle, depending on the situation, regardless of the setting.

■ **Operating conditions**

- The shift lever is in D.
- The desired set speed can be set when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.
  - If the vehicle speed is set while driving at below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph), the set vehicle speed will be approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
  - If the vehicle speed is set while driving at a speed that exceeds the system's upper limit, the set vehicle speed will be the system's upper limit.

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

As with normal driving, acceleration can be performed by depressing the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the vehicle will return to the set vehicle speed. However, while in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease to below the set vehicle speed in order to maintain the distance from the preceding vehicle.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped by system control during follow-up cruising**

- When the "RES" switch is pressed while the vehicle is stopped by system control, if the preceding vehicle starts off within approximately 3 seconds, follow-up cruising will resume.
- If the preceding vehicle starts off within approximately 3 seconds of the vehicle being stopped by system control, follow-up cruising will resume.

■ **Automatic cancellation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

In the following situations, vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode will be canceled automatically:

- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates
  (For example: Pre-Collision System, drive-start control)
- When the parking brake has been operated
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while driving
- When the Pre-Collision System is disabled
- When the vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline
- When any of the following are detected while the vehicle is stopped by system control:
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened
  - The driver's door is opened
  - Approximately 3 minutes have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped

The parking brake may be actived automatically.

- Situations in which some or all of the functions of the system cannot operate: →P.215

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control system warning messages and buzzers**

For safe use: →P.209

■ **Preceding vehicles that the sensor may not detect correctly**

In the following situations, depending on the conditions, if the system cannot provide sufficient deceleration or acceleration is necessary, operate the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.245) may not operate.

- When a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle or changes lanes away from your vehicle extremely slowly or quickly
- When changing lanes
- When a preceding vehicle is driving at a low speed
- When a vehicle is stopped in the same lane as the vehicle
- When a motorcycle is traveling in the same lane as the vehicle

■ **Conditions under which the system may not operate correctly**

In the following situations, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect a vehicle, the system may not operate properly.

- When a preceding vehicle brakes suddenly
- When changing lanes at low speeds, such as in a traffic jam

Approach warning

In situations where the vehicle approaches a preceding vehicle and the system cannot provide sufficient deceleration, such as if a vehicle cuts in front of the vehicle, a warning display will flash and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. Depress the brake pedal to ensure appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

■ **Warnings may not occur when**

In the following situations, the warning may not operate even though the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is short.

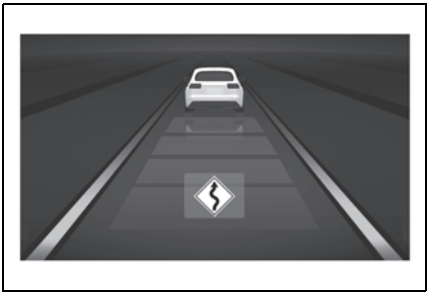
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at the same speed or faster than your vehicle
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely low speed
- Immediately after the vehicle speed has been set
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed

Curve speed reduction function

When a curve is detected, the vehicle speed will begin being reduced. When the curve ends, the vehicle speed reduction will end.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle speed will then return to the set vehicle speed.

In situations where vehicle-to-vehicle distance control needs to operate, such as when a preceding vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, the curve speed reduction function will be canceled.



■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a gentle curve
- When the accelerator pedal is being depressed
- When the vehicle is being driven around an extremely short curve

Driver Monitor support function

While a warning of the driver monitor is being displayed, the vehicle acceleration will be restrained.

When the warning of the driver monitor disappears, the restrained acceleration control will end.

Support for lane change

If your vehicle is being driven at approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) or more and a lane change to the passing lane is performed, when the turn signal lever is operated and the lane is changed, the vehicle will accelerate up to the set speed to assist in overtaking.

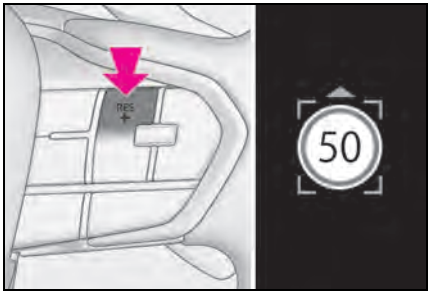
The system's recognition of which lane is the passing lane may be based solely on the location of the steering wheel in the vehicle (left-hand drive/right-hand drive). If the vehicle is driven in a location where the passing lane is on the opposite side of that where the vehicle was originally sold, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated away from the passing lane. (e.g. The vehicle was manufactured to be driven on roads for right-hand drive vehicles [that overtake on the right], but is being used on roads for left-hand drive vehicles [that overtake on the left].
In this case, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated to the right.)

If your vehicle is being driven at approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) or more and the lane is changed to that with a vehicle traveling slower than your vehicle, when the turn signal lever is operated the vehicle will gradually decelerate to assist in changing lanes.

Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist

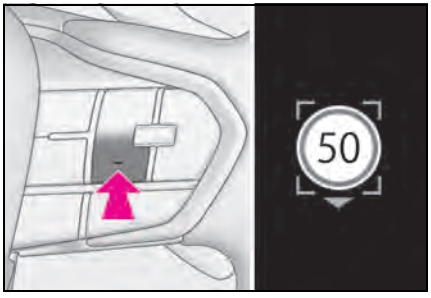
When RSA function is enabled and the dynamic radar cruise control system is operating, if a speed limit sign is detected, the detected speed limit will be displayed with an up/down arrow. The set speed can be increased/reduced to the detected speed limit by pressing and holding the "+" switch or "-" switch.

■ **When the set speed is lower than the detected speed limit**



Press and hold the "+" switch.

When the set speed is higher than the detected speed limit



Press and hold the "-" switch.

The dynamic radar cruise control with road sign assist may not operate properly when

As the dynamic radar cruise control with road sign assist may not operate properly in situations where the RSA may not operate or cannot detect signs correctly (→P.237), when using this function, make sure to confirm the actual speed limit.

In the following situations, the set speed may not change to the detected speed limit by pressing and holding the "+" switch or "-" switch:

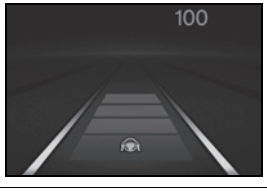
- When speed limit information is not available
- When the detected speed limit is the same as the set speed
- When the detected speed limit is outside of the speed range which the dynamic radar cruise control system can operate

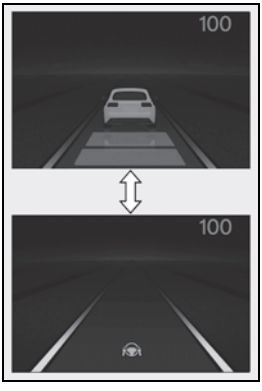
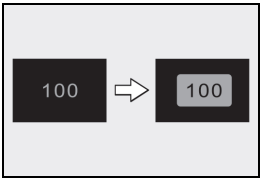
Changing Dynamic radar cruise control settings

The settings of Dynamic radar cruise control can be changed through customize settings. (→P.524)

Display and system operation state

The operating state of Dynamic radar cruise control is indicated.

Indicator	Multi-information display		Situation
White		Vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting: Gray	Dynamic radar cruise control being OFF
Green		Vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting: Blue Set vehicle speed: Green	Constant speed cruising

Indicator	Multi-information display		Situation
Green		Vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting: Blue Set vehicle speed: Green Preceding vehicle: White	Follow-up cruising
Green		Vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting: Orange flashing Set vehicle speed: Green Preceding vehicle: Orange flashing	Approach warning
Green		Vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting: Gray Set vehicle speed: White Preceding vehicle: Gray	Accelerating with the accelerator pedal
Green		Set vehicle speed: Green in reverse display	Set vehicle speed being exceeded
Green		Vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting: Gray Set vehicle speed: White Preceding vehicle: Gray	Vehicle in controlled stop

Cruise control

The vehicle can be driven at a set speed even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Use the cruise control only on highways and expressways.

WARNING

■ **For safe use**

- Driving safely is solely the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is solely responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.
- Set the speed appropriately according to the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for confirming the set speed.

■ **Situations in which cruise control should not be used**

Do not use the cruise control in the following situations. As the system will not be able to provide appropriate control, using it may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

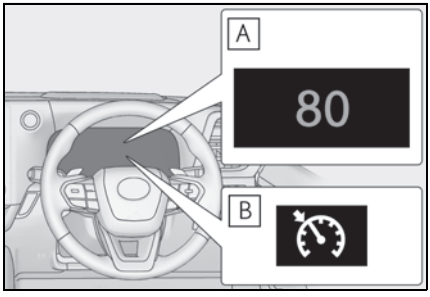
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients

Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

- When it is necessary to disable the system: →P.209

System Components

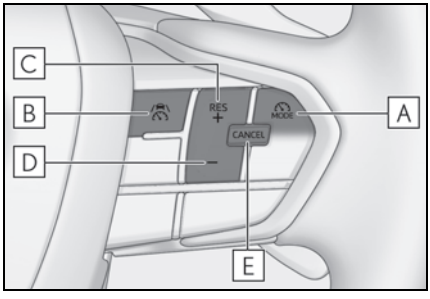
■ Meter display



A Set vehicle speed

B Cruise control indicator

■ Switches



A Driving assist mode select switch

B Driving assist switch

C "+" switch / "RES" switch

D "-" switch

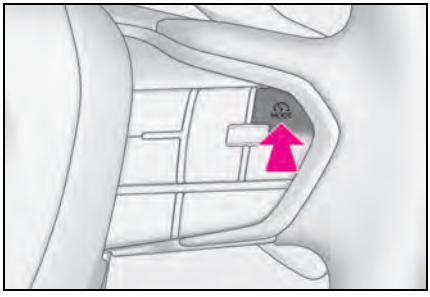
E Cancel switch

Using the cruise control

■ **Setting the vehicle speed**

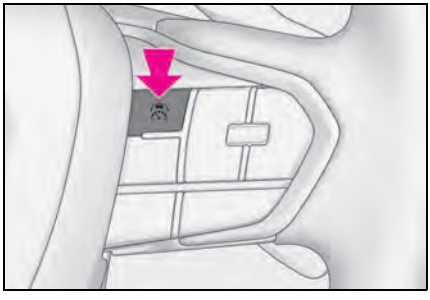
1 Press the driving assist mode select switch to select cruise control.

The cruise control indicator will illuminate.



2 Using the accelerator pedal, accelerate to the desired vehicle speed (approximately 30 km/h [20 mph] or more), and press the driving assist switch to set the set vehicle speed.

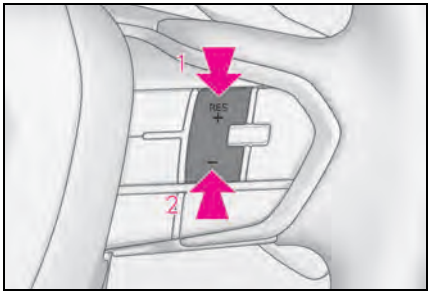
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released will be the set vehicle speed.



■ Adjusting the set vehicle speed

● Adjusting the set vehicle speed using the switches

To change the set vehicle speed, press the "+" or "-" switch until the desired speed is displayed.



1 Increase set vehicle speed

2 Decrease set vehicle speed

The set vehicle speed will increase or decrease as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph) or 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases continuously while the switch is pressed and held

● Increasing the set vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal

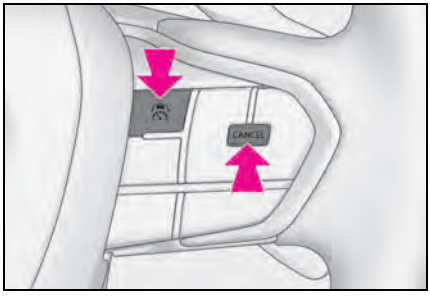
1 Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired vehicle speed.

2 Press the "+" switch.

■ Canceling/resuming control

1 Press the cancel switch or driving assist switch to cancel control.

Control will also be canceled if the brake pedal is depressed.



2 Press the "RES" switch to resume control.

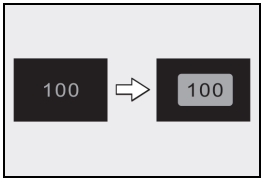
■ **Automatic cancellation of the cruise control**

In the following situations, the cruise control will be canceled automatically:

- When the vehicle speed drops approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) or more below the set vehicle speed
- When the vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph)
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates (For example: PCS, drive-start control)
- When the parking brake has been operated
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened
- Situations in which some or all of the functions of the system cannot operate: →P.215

Display and system operation state

The operating state of cruise control is indicated.

Indicator	Multi-information display		Situation
 White		Blank	Cruise control being OFF
 Green		Set vehicle speed: Green	Constant speed cruising
 Green		Set vehicle speed: Green in reverse display	Set vehicle speed being exceeded

Emergency Driving Stop System

The emergency driving stop system is a system which automatically decelerates and stops the vehicle within its lane if the driver becomes unable to continue driving the vehicle, such as if they have suffered a medical emergency, etc.

During LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) control, if the system does not detect driving operations, such as if the driver is not holding the steering wheel, and determines the driver is not responsive, the vehicle will be decelerated and stopped within its current lane to help avoid a collision or reduce the impact of a collision.

WARNING

■ **For safe use**

- Driving safely is solely the responsibility of the driver. Pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving. The emergency driving stop system is designed to provide support in an emergency where it is difficult for the driver to continue driving, such as if they have had a medical emergency. It is not designed to support driving while drowsy or in poor physical health, or inattentive driving.
- Although the emergency driving stop system is designed to decelerate the vehicle within its lane to help avoid or help reduce the impact of a collision if the system determines that it is difficult for the driver to continue driving, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions. Therefore, it may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance. Also, if the operating conditions are not met, this function will not operate.
- After the emergency driving stop system operates, if driving becomes possible again, immediately begin driving again or, if necessary, park the vehicle on the shoulder of the road and set a warning reflector and flare to warn other drivers of your stopped vehicle.
- After this system operates, passengers should attend to the driver as necessary and take appropriate hazard prevention measures, such as moving to a place where safety can be ensured, such as the shoulder of the road or behind a guardrail.
- This system detects the condition of the driver through the operation of the steering wheel. This system may operate if the driver is aware but intentionally and continuously does not operate the vehicle. Also, the system may not operate if it cannot determine that the driver is not responsive, such as if they are leaning on the steering wheel.
- Situations in which the driver monitor may not operate properly: →P.215

Summary of the system

Operation of this system is separated into 4 control states. Through control state “warning phase 1” and “warning phase 2”, the system determines if the driver is aware and responsive while outputting a warning and controlling

the vehicle speed. If the system determines the driver is not responsive, it will operate in control state "deceleration stop phase" and "stop hold phase" and decelerate and stop the vehicle. It will then operate continuously in "stop hold phase".

■ **Operating conditions**

This system operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- When the LTA is on
- When the vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (30 mph) or more

■ **Operation cancelation conditions**

In the following situations, system operation will be canceled:

- When LTA control has been canceled (the LTA switch has been pressed, etc.)
- When the dynamic radar cruise control has been canceled
- When driver operations are detected (the steering wheel is held, the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, parking brake, emergency flasher switch, or turn signal lever is operated)
- When the driving assist switch is pressed while in the stop and hold phase
- When the engine switch has been turned from ON to off
- Situations in which some or all of the functions of the system cannot operate: →P.215

■ **LTA control when operation is canceled**

When emergency driving stop system operation is canceled, LTA control may also be canceled.

Warning phase 1

If driving operations are not detected after the hands off steering wheel warning operates, a buzzer will sound intermittently and a message will be displayed to warn the driver, and the system will judge if the driver is responsive or not. If driving operations, such as holding the steering wheel, are not performed within a certain amount of time, the system will enter warning phase 2.

Depending on the type of detection of the driver's unresponsiveness, the system may skip warning phase 1 and start the control of warning phase 2.

Warning phase 2

After entering warning phase 2, a buzzer will sound in short intervals and a message will be displayed to warn the driver, and the vehicle will slowly decelerate. If driving operations, such as holding the steering wheel, are not performed within a certain amount of time, the system will determine that the driver is not responsive and enter the deceleration stop phase.

The audio system will be muted until the driver becomes responsive.

When the vehicle is decelerating, the brake lights may illuminate, depending on the road conditions, etc.

After the vehicle has decelerated a certain amount, the emergency flashers (hazard lights) will flash.

Deceleration stop phase

After the driver is judged as being not responsive, a buzzer will sound continuously and a message will be displayed

to warn the driver, and the vehicle will slowly decelerate and stop. While the vehicle is decelerating, the emergency flashers (hazard lights) will flash to warn other drivers of the emergency.

Stop hold phase

After the vehicle is stopped, the parking brake will be applied automatically. After entering the stop and hold phase, the buzzer will continue sounding continuously, the emergency flashers (hazard lights) will flash to warn other drivers of the emergency, and the doors will unlock.

■ Restricted functions after the operation is canceled

After shifting to the deceleration stop phase, the following functions will not be available until the engine is re-started even though the emergency driving stop system is canceled:

- LTA

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)

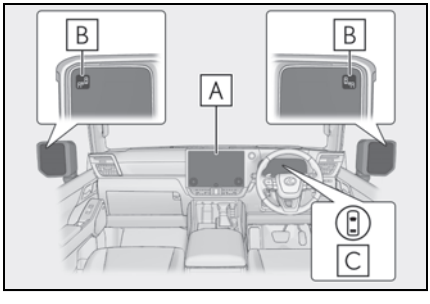
The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the position above the position above the rear bumper on the left and right side to assist the driver in confirming safety when changing lanes.

⚠ WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.
- The Blind Spot Monitor is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury. As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

System components



A Center Display

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator (→P.66) on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash and a buzzer will sound.

C Driving assist information indicator

Illuminates when the Blind Spot Monitor is turned off. At this time, a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

Buzzer

If the volume setting of the audio system is high or the surrounding area is loud, it may be difficult to hear the buzzer.

Customization

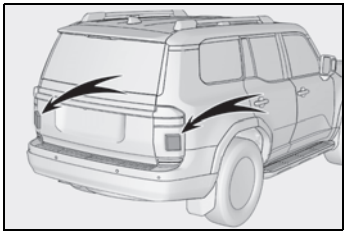
Some functions can be customized. (→P.516)

WARNING

To ensure the system can operate properly

Blind Spot Monitor sensors installed on the inner side of the position above the rear bumper on the left and right side respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can operate correctly.

- Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the position above the rear bumper clean at all times.
  If a sensor or its surrounding area on the position above the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P.257) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus Dealer.



- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers), aluminum tape, etc. to a sensor or its surrounding area on the position above the rear bumper.
- Do not paint the surrounding area of a sensor on the position above the rear bumper.
- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the position above the rear bumper to a strong impact.
  If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
  In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
  - If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.

WARNING

- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the position above the rear bumper.
- If a sensor or the position above the rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- The sensors are likely to be affected by paint on the position above the rear bumper. If the position above the rear bumper is not repaired correctly, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate with a warning message displayed. If any paint repair is needed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off

The Blind Spot Monitor can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting. (→P.516)

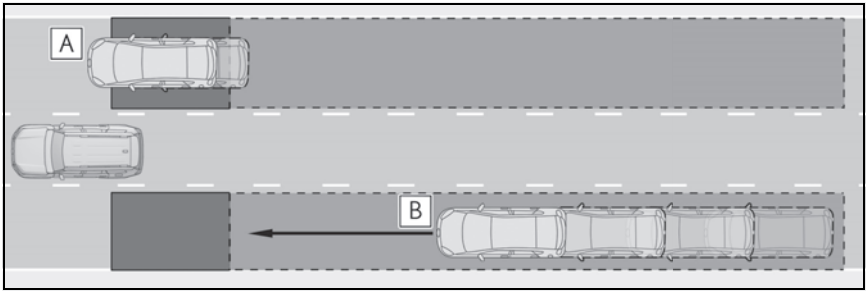
When the Blind Spot Monitor is off, the driving assist information indicator (→P.66) will illuminate and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Each time the engine switch is turned to ON, the Blind Spot Monitor is enabled.

Blind Spot Monitor operation

■ Objects that can be detected while driving

The Blind Spot Monitor uses rear side radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.

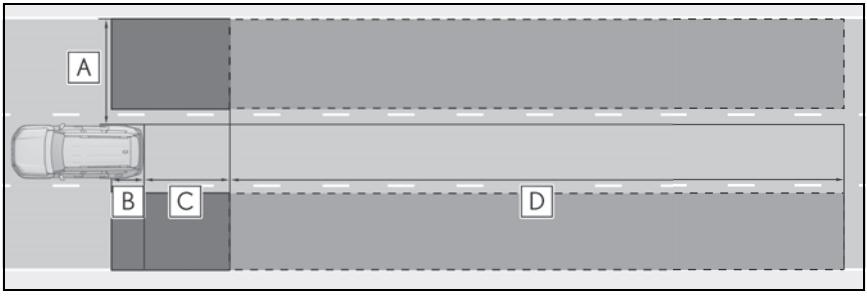


A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

■ Detection range while driving

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*1

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper*2

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 70 m (230 ft.) from the rear bumper*3

*1: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle cannot be detected.

*2: While the vehicle is to being overtaken, up to approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) forward of the rear bumper will be detected.

*3: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

■ The Blind Spot Monitor linked function

The LDA (Lane Departure Alert) has a function that uses information of detected vehicles driving in an adjacent lane. For details about the function and its operating conditions, P.232.

■ The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when

The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The Blind Spot Monitor is on.
- The shift position is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

■ The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle when

The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in an adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ Situations in which the Blind Spot Monitor cannot detect vehicles

The Blind Spot Monitor cannot detect the following vehicles and other objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians,

etc.*

- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ Conditions in which a buzzer may not sound

In situations such as the following, while the turn signal lever is being operated, the indicator will flash but a buzzer may not sound.

- When a second vehicle is detected while the turn signal lever is being held
- When overtaking a vehicle in the adjacent lane at a much higher speed than it*

*: Depending on the situations, a buzzer may sound.

■ Conditions under which the system may not function correctly

- The Blind Spot Monitor may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the position above the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
  - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
  - When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
  - As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
  - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
  - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
  - When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
  - When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle
  - When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - Immediately after the Blind Spot Monitor is turned on
  - When towing with the vehicle
- Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
  - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
  - When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
  - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
  - When the tires are slipping or spinning
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
  - When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle

- When towing with the vehicle

Safe Exit Assist

The safe exit assist (with door opening control) is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the position above the rear bumper to help occupants judge if an approaching vehicle or bicycle may collide with a door when exiting or cancel opening of a door, to help reduce the possibility of a collision.

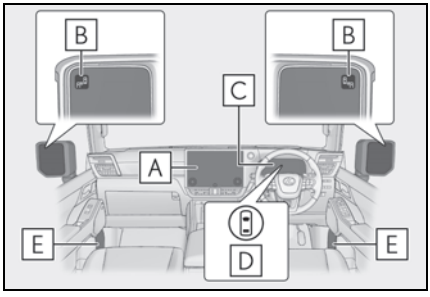
WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.
- The safe exit assist is a supplementary system that, when the vehicle is stopped, informs occupants of the existence of approaching vehicles and bicycles. As this system alone cannot be used to judge safety, over-reliance on this system may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

In certain situations, this system may not function to its fullest extent. Therefore it is necessary for the occupants to visually check for safety directly and using the mirrors.

System components



A Center Display

Turning the safe exit assist on/off.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle or bicycle which may collide with a door (other than the back door) when opened is detected, the outside rear view mirror indicator (→P.66) on the detected side will illuminate. If the door on the detected side is opened, the outside rear view mirror indicator will blink.

C Multi-information display

If collision with a door is likely and the door is opened, the door will be displayed on the multi-information display. Also, if a door is opened when an outside rear view mirror indicator is illuminated, a buzzer will sound as a warning.

D Driving assist information indicator

Illuminates when the safe exit assist is turned off. At this time, a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

E Speakers

When the outside rear view mirror indicator blinks, the driver is informed through voice guidance that the system has operated. After the notification through voice guidance is made, no more voice guidance notifications will be made again until the door is fully closed.

■ Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Buzzer

If the volume setting of the audio system is high or the surrounding area is loud, it may be difficult to hear the buzzer.

■ Voice notifications

In the following situations, voice notifications will not be output:

- When it is estimated that no occupants are on board*
- After opening a door and entering the vehicle, until the engine is started
- When 3 minutes or more have elapsed since the engine was stopped
- When the language setting of the Center Display has been set to a language that does not support voice notifications
- When all of the doors have been locked from outside the vehicle
- When a door remains open for 1 minute or more after the engine is stopped
- When the ACC mode (→P.516) has been enabled through a customize setting on the Center Display and the engine has been stopped
- When the parking assist volume setting on the Center Display has been set to off

*: For each seating position, judgment is made based on the opening and closing of a door, before driving for ingress and after driving for egress.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.516)

WARNING

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

→P.255

Turning the safe exit assist system ON/OFF

The safe exit assist system can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting. (→P.516)

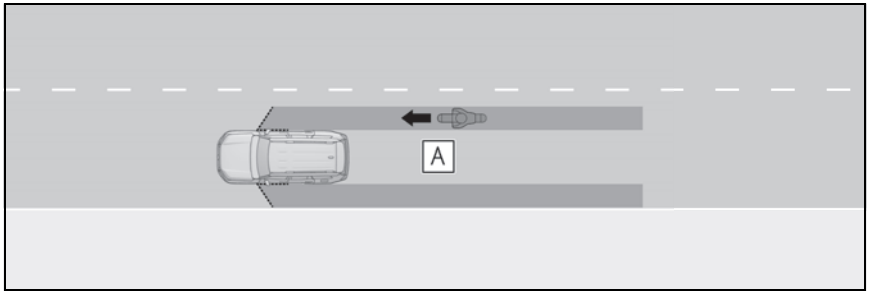
When the safe exit assist is off, the driving assist information indicator will illuminate and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Each time the engine switch is turned to ON, the safe exit assist is enabled.

Safe exit assist operation

■ Objects that can be detected by the safe exit assist

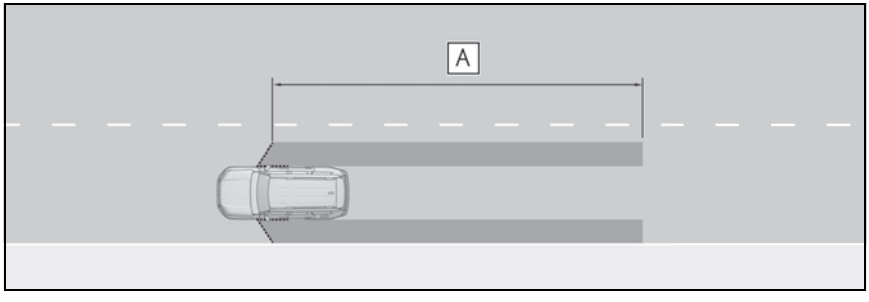
When the safe exit assist detects the following vehicles or bicycles behind your vehicle using a rear side radar sensor, the occupants of the vehicle are informed through an outside rear view mirror indicator, buzzer, multi-information display, and voice notification.



A Vehicle or bicycle which has a high possibility of colliding with a door (other than the back door) when opened

■ The safe exit assist detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



A Approximately 45 m (145 ft.) rearward from the front door*

*: The faster a vehicle or bicycle is approaching, the distance at which an outside rear view

mirror indicator will illuminate or blink will become further.

■ **The safe exit assist is operational when**

The safe exit assist is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- When the engine switch is ON, less than 3 minutes have elapsed since the engine was off, or less than 3 minutes have elapsed since a door was opened and someone has entered the vehicle (the time which operation is possible may be extended if a door is opened and closed)
- Safe exit assist is on
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The shift position is in a position other than R.

■ **The safe exit assist will detect a vehicle when**

The safe exit assist will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- When the vehicle is stopped and a vehicle or bicycle, which is traveling parallel to the vehicle, is approaching within the area that a door opens (other than the back door)

■ **Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle**

- Safe exit assist does not detect the following objects, vehicles, and bicycles:
  - Vehicles or bicycles which are approaching slowly*
  - Vehicles or bicycles which are determined to have a low possibility of colliding with a door (other than the back door) when opened*
  - Vehicles or bicycles which are approaching from directly behind*
  - Vehicles or bicycles which are approaching from the front*
  - Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles, and other stationary objects*
  - Pedestrians, animals, etc.*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

- In situations such as the following, safe exit assist will not operate:
  - When 3 minutes or more have elapsed since the engine off (the time which operation is possible may be extended if a door is opened and closed)
  - When your vehicle is not completely stopped

■ **Conditions under which the system may not function correctly**

- The safe exit assist may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the position above the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When a vehicle or bicycle approaches from behind a nearby parked vehicle
  - When an approaching vehicle or bicycle suddenly changes direction
  - Immediately after a vehicle or bicycle starts moving
  - When the back door is open
  - When a bicycle carrier, ramp, or other accessory is installed to the back of the vehicle
  - When a parked vehicle, wall, sign, person or other stationary object is behind the vehicle
  - When the vehicle is stopped at an angle to the road
  - When a vehicle is traveling near an approaching vehicle or bicycle
  - When an approaching vehicle or bicycle is traveling along a stationary object, such a wall or sign
  - When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching at high speed
  - When towing with the vehicle
  - When stopped on a steep slope
  - When stopped on a curve or at the exit of a curve
- Instances of the safe exit assist unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

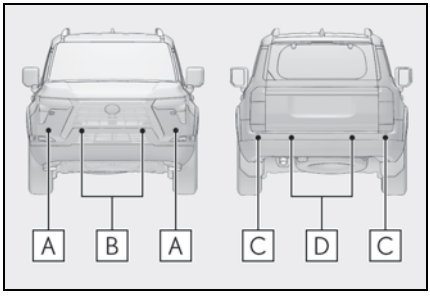
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When a vehicle or bicycle approaches your vehicle from directly behind in an offset position
- When the vehicle is stopped at an angle to the road
- When a vehicle or bicycle approaches from behind a parked vehicle at an angle
- When a parked vehicle, wall, sign, person or other stationary object is behind the vehicle
- When an approaching vehicle or bicycle suddenly changes direction
- When an approaching vehicle or bicycle is traveling along a stationary object, such a wall or sign
- When the back door is open
- When a bicycle carrier, ramp, or other accessory is installed to the back of the vehicle
- When a vehicle or bicycle is approaching at high speed
- When towing with the vehicle
- When stopped on a steep slope
- When stopped on a curve or at the exit of a curve
- When a vehicle or bicycle approaches from behind a vehicle stopped in an adjacent lane

Lexus parking assist-sensor

The Lexus parking assist-sensor function detects the approximate distance from the vehicle and an object such as a wall using ultrasonic sensors and informs the driver with the Center Display distance display and buzzer.

System components

Type of sensors



A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

C Rear corner sensors

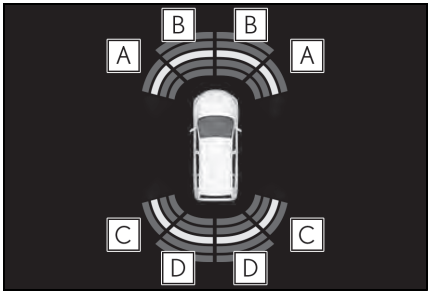
D Rear center sensors

Display

When the sensors detect an object, such as a wall, a graphic is shown on the Center Display depending on the position and distance to the object.

Vehicles without Center Display or rear camera: When detecting a stationary object, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection indicator illuminates. (→P.66)

▶ Center Display



A Front corner sensor detection

B Front center sensor detection

C Rear corner sensor detection

D Rear center sensor detection

Turning the Lexus parking assist-sensor function ON/OFF

The Lexus parking assist-sensor function can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting. (→P.516)

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor function is disabled, the Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (→P.66) illuminates on the multi-information display.

If the system switches to OFF (disabled) and the Lexus parking assist-sensor is stopped, the Lexus parking assist-sensor will not be re-enabled until ON (enabled) is selected again from the customize setting (→P.516). (It remains off even if the engine switch is turned to ON again after the engine switch has been turned off.)

Vehicles without the Center Display or rear camera: However, the system will automatically turn on (enabled) and the Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator will turn off if the shift position is changed to R.
When the shift position is R, the Lexus parking assist-sensor cannot be turned on or off.
The setting of Lexus parking assist-sensor itself will not change.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

There is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

Make sure to observe the following precautions. The system may not operate properly and may lead to an unexpected accident. When these precautions cannot be observed, turn the system off.

- Do not damage the sensors, and always keep them clean.
- Do not attach a sticker or install an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna near a radar sensor.
- Do not subject the surrounding area of the sensor to a strong impact. If subjected to an impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. If the front or position above the rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not modify, disassemble or paint the sensors.

WARNING

- Do not attach a license plate cover.
- Keep your tires properly inflated.
- Do not install a suspension other than a genuine suspension.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.
- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

■ The system can be operated when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The Lexus parking assist-sensor is on.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- A shift position other than P is selected.
- Vehicles without the Center Display or rear camera: The system will automatically turn on (enabled) and the Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator will turn off if the shift position is changed to R.
  The setting of Lexus parking assist-sensor itself will not change.

■ Sensor detection information

- The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.
- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an object.
- Objects may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor.
- There will be a short delay between object detection and display. Even at low speeds, there is a possibility that the object will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
- It might be difficult to hear the buzzer due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
- It may be difficult to hear the sound of this system due to the buzzers of other systems.
- If the meter malfunctions, the buzzer may not sound.

■ Objects which the system may not be properly detected

The shape of the object may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following objects:

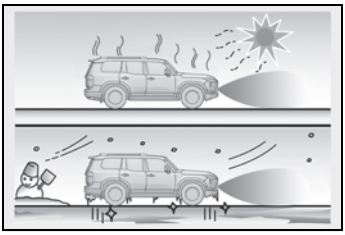
- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low objects
- Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect objects. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.) In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the sensor display may be displayed abnormally, or objects, such as a wall, may not be detected.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.

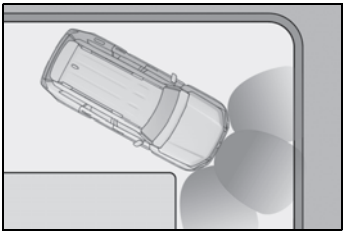


- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- If objects draw too close to the sensor.
- When a pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves (ex. skirts with gathers or frills).
- When objects that are not perpendicular to the ground, not perpendicular to the vehicle traveling direction, uneven, or waving are in the detection range.
- When strong winds are blowing.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When an object that cannot be detected is between the vehicle and a detected object.
- If an object such as a vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle or pedestrian cuts in front of the vehicle or runs out from the side of the vehicle.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact.
- When equipment such as a towing eye-let, transport hook, bumper protector, bumper trim, bicycle carrier or snow-removal device (snow plow) is installed near the sensor.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- When tire chains, compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.
- When towing with the vehicle.

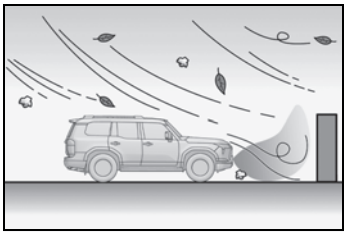
■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

In some situations, such as the following, the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

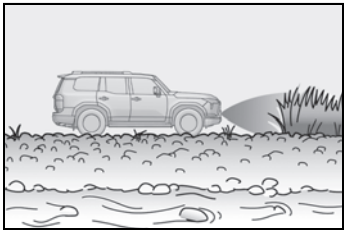
- When driving on a narrow road.



- When driving toward a banner, flag, low-hanging branch or boom barrier (such as those used at railroad crossings, toll gates and parking lots).
- When there is a rut or hole in the surface of the road.
- When driving on a metal cover (grating), such as those used for drainage ditches.
- When driving up or down a steep slope.
- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road.
- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When strong winds are blowing.



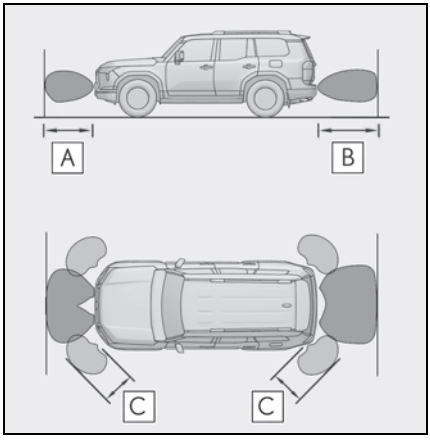
- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- Driving close to columns (H-shaped steel beams, etc.) in multi-story parking garages, construction sites, etc.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.



- When tire chains, compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

Sensor detection display, object distance

■ Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object, etc.

■ The distance and buzzer

Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
Front center sensor: Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)* Rear center sensor: Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)*	Slow
Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)*	Medium
Approximately 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)*	Fast
Approximately less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)	Continuous

Lexus parking assist-sensor buzzer

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches a static object. When the vehicle comes within the approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.) of the object, the buzzer will sound continuously.
- When 2 or more sensors simultaneously detect a static object, the buzzer sounds for the nearest object.
- After a buzzer begins sounding, if the distance between the vehicle and the detected a static object does not become shorter, the buzzer will be muted automatically. (automatic buzzer mute function)

■ Adjusting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD can all be changed at once from the customize settings. (→P.516)

■ Muting a buzzer

When the temporary mute switch is displayed on the Center display, this switch can be pressed to temporarily mute the buzzer.

Select the switch to mute a buzzer of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD all together.

- Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations:
  - When the shift position is changed.
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
  - When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
  - When the operating function is disabled manually.
  - When the engine switch is turned off.

RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function

The RCTA function uses the BSM rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the position above the position above the rear bumper. This function is intended to assist the driver in checking areas that are not easily visible when backing up.

WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The RCTA function is only a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

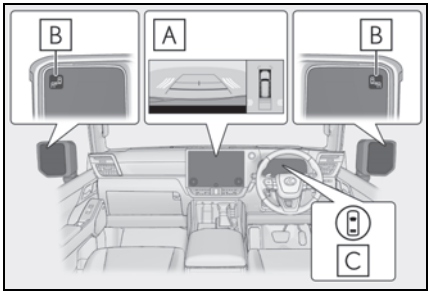
As the RCTA function may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

Over reliance on this function may lead to an accident resulting death or serious injury.

■ **To ensure the system can operate properly**

→P.255

System components



A Center Display

Turning the RCTA function on/off in Center Display.

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.270) for the detected side will be displayed on the Center Display. This illustration* shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

*: Depending on the vehicle grade and equipped options, the actual screen may be different from this illustration.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

If a vehicle is detected as approaching from the left or right behind the vehicle, both outside rear view mirror indicators (→P.66) will blink and a buzzer will sound.

C Driving assist information indicator

Illuminates when the RCTA is turned off. At this time, a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Turning the RCTA function on/off

The RCTA can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting. (→P.516)

When the RCTA function is off, the driving assist information indicator (→P.66) will illuminate and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Each time the engine switch is turned to ON, the RCTA function is enabled.

■ **Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility**

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ **Hearing the RCTA buzzer**

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

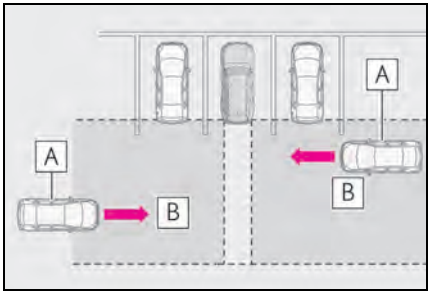
■ **Rear side radar sensors**

→P.255

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses rear side radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



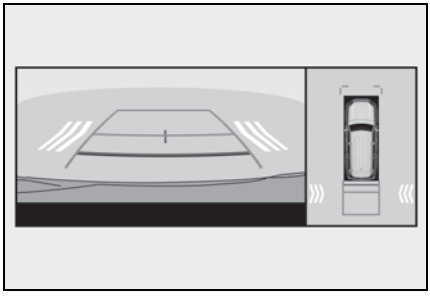
A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

■ RCTA icon display

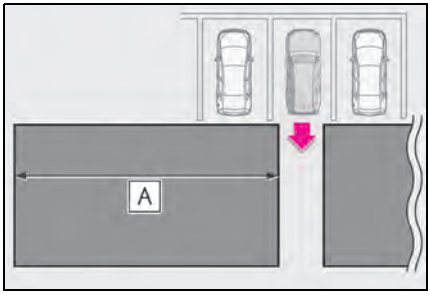
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the Center Display.

- Example: Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle



■ RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle speed	A Approximate alert distance
56 km/h (34 mph) (fast)	30 m (98 ft.)
8 km/h (5 mph) (slow)	4 m (13 ft.)

■ The RCTA function is operational when

The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift position is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 56 km/h (34 mph).

■ Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume of the RCTA, Lexus parking assist-sensor, and RCD can be adjusted all together through a customize setting. (→P.516)

■ Muting a buzzer temporarily

When an object is detected, the temporary mute switch is displayed on the Center Display.

Select the switch to mute the buzzer of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD, all together.

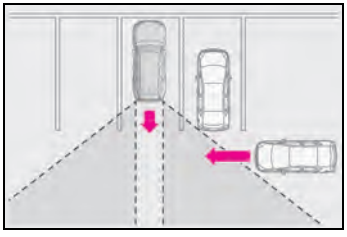
Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift position is changed.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
- When the operating function is disabled manually.
- When the engine switch is turned off.

■ Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- The distance between the sensor and approaching vehicle gets too close

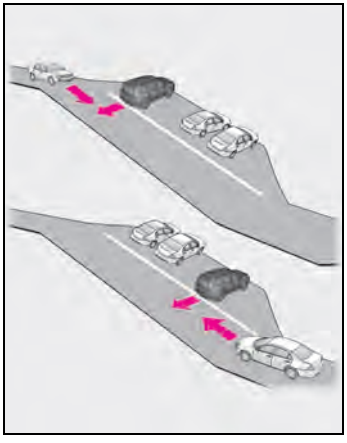
*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

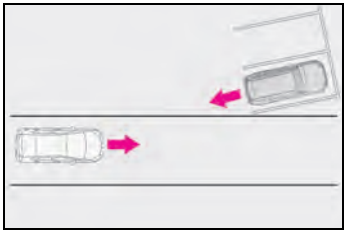
The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the position above the position above the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog

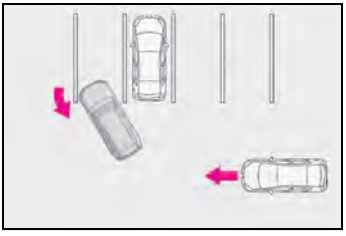
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



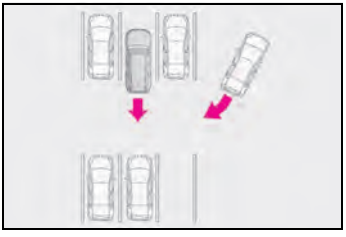
- When backing out of a sharp angle parking spot



- Immediately after the RCTA function is turned on
- Immediately after the engine is started with the RCTA function on
- When the sensors cannot detect a vehicle due to obstructions
- When towing with the vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When turning while backing up



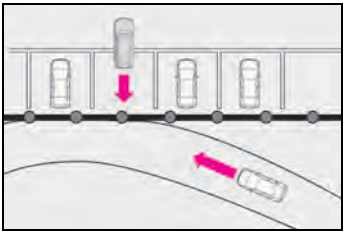
- When a vehicle turns into the detection area



■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

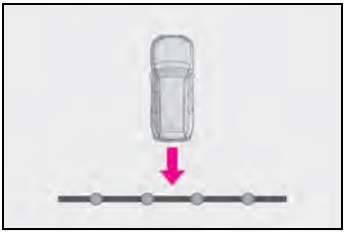
Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street

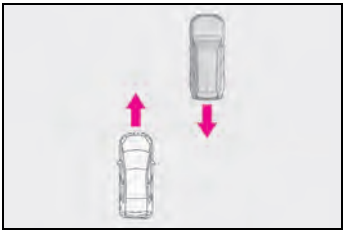


- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may

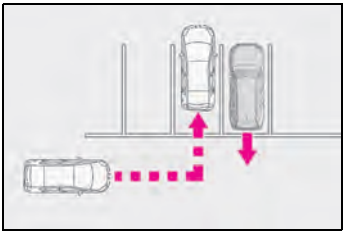
reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short



- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle



- When a detected vehicle turns while approaching the vehicle



- When there are spinning objects near your vehicle such as the fan of an air conditioning unit
- When water is splashed or sprayed toward the position above the position above the rear bumper, such as from a sprinkler
- Moving objects (flags, exhaust fumes, large rain droplets or snowflakes, rain water on the road surface, etc.)
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc., that enters the detection area is short
- Gratings and gutters
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When towing with the vehicle

RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function

When the vehicle is backing up, the rear camera detection function can detect pedestrians in the detection area behind the vehicle. If a pedestrian is detected, a buzzer will sound and an icon will be displayed on the Center Display to inform the driver of the pedestrian.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The recognition and control capabilities for this system are limited.

The driver should always drive safely by always being responsible without over relying on the system and have a understanding of the surrounding situations.

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

Observe the following, otherwise there is the danger that could lead to an accident.

- Always clean the camera without damaging it.
- Do not install market electronic parts (such as Illuminated license plate, fog lamps, etc.) in the camera vicinity.
- Do not subject the camera vicinity to strong impacts. If the vicinity is subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble, remodel or paint the camera.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the camera.
- Do not install market protection parts (bumper trim, etc.) to the position above the rear bumper.
- Maintain suitable tire air pressure.
- Make sure the back door is completely closed.

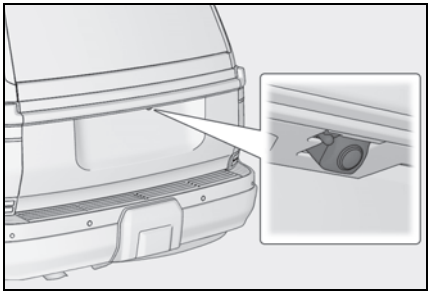
■ RCD function is turned off

In the following situations the system turns off. The RCD function may not operate properly and thus there is the danger that an accident may occur.

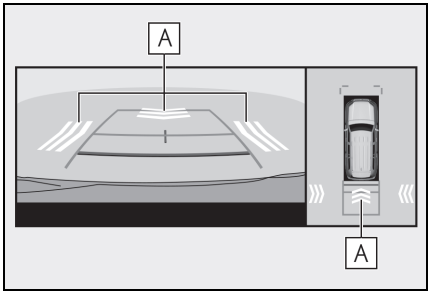
- The contents mentioned above are not observed.
- Suspensions other than the genuine parts are installed.

System component

Location of the rear camera



RCD display



A Pedestrian detection icon

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected behind the vehicle.

Turning the RCD function on/off

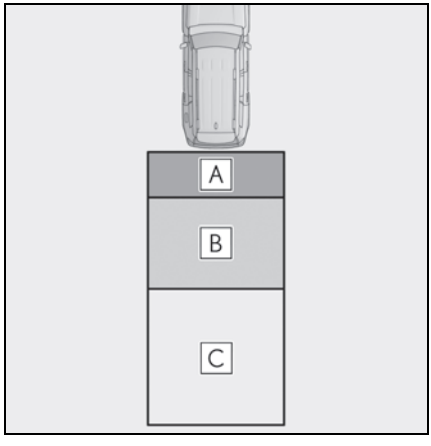
The RCD function can be enabled/disabled through a customize setting.

When the RCD function is disabled, the driving assist information indicator (→P.66) illuminates, and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Each time the engine switch is turned off then changed to ON, the RCD function will be enabled automatically.

When a pedestrian is detected

If a pedestrian is in the area behind the vehicle or if the rear camera detected that a pedestrian is approaching the vehicle from behind, the system urges caution from the driver by sounding the buzzer and displaying the detection of a pedestrian on the Center Display as follows:



A If a pedestrian is detected in area A

Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly

Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks

B If a pedestrian is detected in area B

Buzzer (When the vehicle is stationary): Sounds 3 times

Buzzer (When the vehicle is backing up, when a pedestrian approaches the rear of the vehicle): Sounds repeatedly

Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks

C If the system determines that your vehicle may collide with a pedestrian in area C

Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly

Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks

The rear camera detection function is operational when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- RCD function is on.
- The shift position is in R.

Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD can all be changed at once from the customize settings. (→P.516)

Muting a buzzer temporarily

When an object is detected, the temporary mute switch is displayed on the Center Display.

Select the switch to mute a buzzer of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD all together.

Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations:

- When the shift position is changed.

● When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.

● When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.

● When the operating function is disabled manually.

● When the engine switch is turned off.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

● Some pedestrians, such as the following, may not be detected by the rear camera detection function, preventing the function from operating properly:

- Pedestrians who are bending forward or squatting
- Pedestrians who are lying down
- Pedestrians who are running
- Pedestrians who suddenly appear from the shadow of the vehicle or a building
- Pedestrians who are riding moving objects such as a bicycle or skateboard
- Pedestrians wearing oversized clothing such as a rain coat, long skirt, etc., making their silhouette obscure
- Pedestrians whose body is partially hidden by an object, such as a cart or umbrella
- Pedestrians which are obscured by darkness, such as at night

● In some situations, such as the following, pedestrians may not be detected by the rear camera detection function, preventing the function from operating properly:

- When backing up in inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)
- The lens is dirty (by dirt or snow-melting agent, etc.) or scratched
- When a very bright light, such as the sun, or the headlights of another vehicle, shines directly into the rear camera
- When backing up in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a garage or underground parking lot
- When backing up in a dim environment such as during dusk or in an underground parking lot
- When the camera position and direction are deviated
- When a towing hook is attached
- When water droplets are flowing on the camera lens
- When the vehicle height is extremely changed (nose up, nose down, etc.)
- When tire chains or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used
- When the suspension has been lowered or tires that have a different size than the genuine tires are installed
- When an aftermarket electronic part (backlit license plate, fog light, etc.) is installed near the rear camera
- If a bumper protector, such as an additional trim strip, is installed to the position above the rear bumper
- When towing with the vehicle

■ **Situations in which the system may operate unexpectedly**

● Even though there are no pedestrians in the detection area, some objects, such as the following, may be detected, possibly causing the rear camera detection function to operate.

- Three dimensional objects, such as a pole, traffic cone, fence, or parked vehicle
- Moving objects, such as a car or motorcycle
- Objects moving toward your vehicle when backing up, such as flags or puddles (or airborne matter, such as smoke, steam, rain, or snow)
- Cobblestone or gravel roads, tram rails, road repairs, white lines, pedestrian crossings or fallen leaves on the road
- Metal covers (gratings), such as those used for drainage ditches
- Objects reflected in a puddle or on a wet road surface
- Shadows on the road

● In some situations, such as the following, the rear camera detection function may operate even though there are no pedestrians in the detection area.

- When backing up toward the roadside or a bump on the road
- When backing up toward an incline/decline
- When the vehicle height is extremely changed (nose up, nose down, etc.)
- When an aftermarket electronic part

(backlit license plate, fog light, etc.) is installed near the rear camera
- If a bumper protector, such as an additional trim strip, is installed to the position above the rear bumper
- If the orientation of the rear camera has been changed due to a collision or other impact, or removal and installation
- If a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When water is flowing over the rear camera lens
- The lens is dirty (by dirt or snow-melting agent, etc.)
- If there is a flashing light in the detection area, such as the emergency flashers of another vehicle
- When tire chains or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used
- When towing with the vehicle

● Situations in which the rear camera detection function may be difficult to notice
- The buzzer may be difficult to hear if the surrounding area is noisy or the audio system volume is high.
- If the temperature in the cabin is extremely high or low, the Center Display may not operate correctly.

PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

The PKSB (Parking Support Brake) is a system that issues warnings and automatically performs braking to help reduce collision damage with operation targets that were detected when traveling at a low speed such as when parking.

PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system

The system has detected the following as operation targets. (The operation targets vary depending on the function.)

- Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle):→P.281
- Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle):→P.284
- Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle):→P.285

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

Do not overly rely on the system, as doing so may lead to an accident.

Always drive while checking the safety of the surroundings of the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, weather, etc., the system may not operate.

The detection capabilities of sensors and radars are limited. Always drive while checking the safety of the surroundings of the vehicle.

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive carefully, taking care to observe your surroundings. The Parking Support Brake system is designed to provide support to lessen the severity of collisions. However, it may not operate in some situations.
- The Parking Support Brake system is not designed to stop the vehicle completely. Additionally, even if the system has stopped the vehicle, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal immediately as brake control will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds.
- It is extremely dangerous to check the system operations by intentionally driving the vehicle into the direction of a wall, etc. Never attempt such actions.

■ When to disable the Parking Support Brake

In the following situations, disable the Parking Support Brake as the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- When inspecting the vehicle using a chassis roller, chassis dynamo or free roller
- When loading the vehicle onto a boat, truck or other transport vessel
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When equipment such as a towing hook, transport hook, bumper protector, bumper trim, bicycle carrier or snow-removal device (snow plow) is installed near the sensor
- When using automatic car washing devices
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used
- When towing with the vehicle

■ Precautions for the suspension

Do not modify the suspension of the vehicle. If the height or tilt of the vehicle is changed, the sensors may not be able to detect detectable objects and the system may not operate correctly, possibly leading to an accident.

Enabling/Disabling the Parking Support Brake

The Parking Support Brake function can be enabled/disabled by pressing the PKSB switch.

When the PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

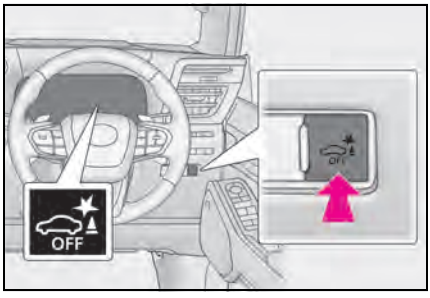
is disabled, the driving assist information indicator (→P.66) illuminates, and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

If disabled using this method, the system will not be re-enabled by turning the engine switch off and then to ON. (It remains off even if the engine switch is turned to ON again after the engine switch has been turned off.)

However, the system will automatically turn on (enabled) and the driving assist information indicator will turn off if the shift position is changed to R.

The setting of Parking Support Brake itself will not change.

When the shift position is R, the Parking Support Brake cannot be turned on or off.



If the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

The Parking Support Brake function automatically turns off.

Display and buzzer for engine output restriction control and brake control

If the engine output restriction control or brake control operates, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the Center Display and multi-information display, to alert the driver.

Depending on the situation, output restriction control operates to either limit acceleration or restrict output as much as possible.

- Engine output restriction control is operating (acceleration restriction)

Acceleration greater than a certain amount is restricted by the system.

Center Display: No warning displayed

Multi-information display: "Object Detected Acceleration Reduced"

Driving assist information indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Does not sound

- Engine output restriction control is operating (output restricted as much as possible)

The system has determined that stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary.

Center Display: "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

Driving assist information indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Brake control is operating

The system determined that emergency braking is necessary.

Center Display: "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

Driving assist information indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Vehicle stopped by system operation

The vehicle has been stopped by brake control operation.

Center Display: “Switch to Brake”

Multi-information display: “Accelerator Pedal is Pressed Press Brake Pedal” (If the accelerator pedal is not depressed, “Press Brake Pedal” will be displayed.)

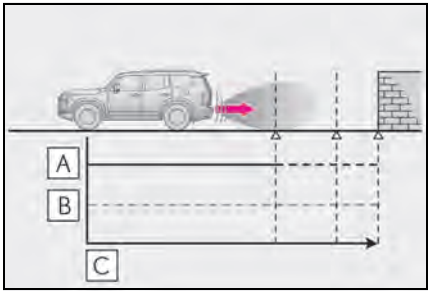
Driving assist information indicator: Illuminated

Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly

System overview

If the Parking Support Brake determines that a collision with a detected object or pedestrian is possible, the engine output will be restricted to restrain any increase in the vehicle speed. (Engine output restriction control: See figure 2 below.)
Additionally, if the accelerator pedal continues to be depressed, the brakes will be applied automatically to reduce the vehicle speed. (Brake control: See figure 3.)

- Figure 1: When the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) is not operating

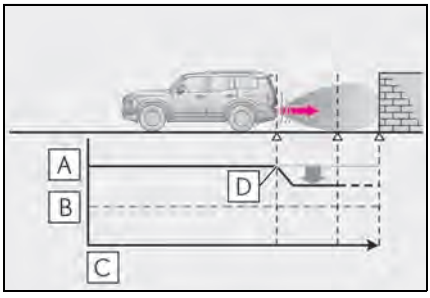


A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

- Figure 2: When engine output restriction control operates



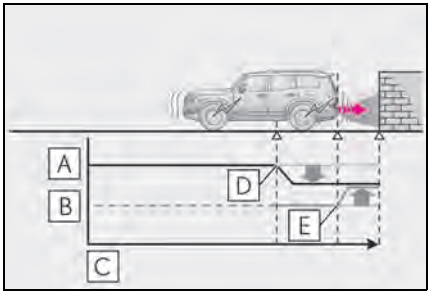
A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

D Engine output restriction control begins operating (System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high)

- Figure 3: When engine output restriction control and brake control operates



A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

D Engine output restriction control begins operating (System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high)

E Brake control begins operating (System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is extremely high)

■ If the Parking Support Brake has operated

If the vehicle is stopped due to operation of the Parking Support Brake, the Parking Support Brake will be disabled and the driving assist information indicator will illuminate. In addition, even when the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) operates, the brake control is canceled after approximately 2 seconds to start off. Furthermore, the brake control also can be canceled by depressing the brake pedal. Depressing the accelerator pedal again after that allows the vehicle to start off.

■ Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake

To re-enable the Parking Support Brake when it is disabled due to operation of the PKSB (Parking Support Brake), either enable the system again, or turn the engine switch off and then back to ON.

Additionally, if any of the following conditions are met, the system will be re-enabled automatically and the driving assist information indicator will turn off (→P.66):

- The P shift position is selected
- Drive with no operation targets in the traveling direction of the vehicle
- Change the traveling direction of the vehicle

■ Buzzer

Regardless of whether the Lexus parking assist sensor is enabled or not (→P.264), if the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system is enabled (→P.278), the buzzer will sound to notify the driver of the approximate distance to the object when the brake control and the engine output restriction control are operated.

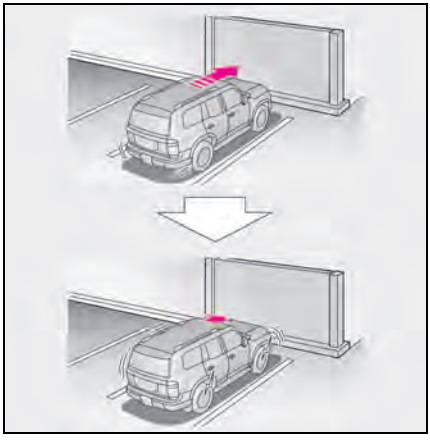
Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle)

If the sensors detect a static object, such as a wall, in the traveling direction of the vehicle and the system determines that a collision may occur due to the vehicle suddenly moving forward due to an accidental accelerator pedal operation, the vehicle moving the unintended direction due to the wrong shift position being selected, or while parking or traveling at low speeds, the system will operate to lessen the impact with the detected static object and reduce the resulting damage.

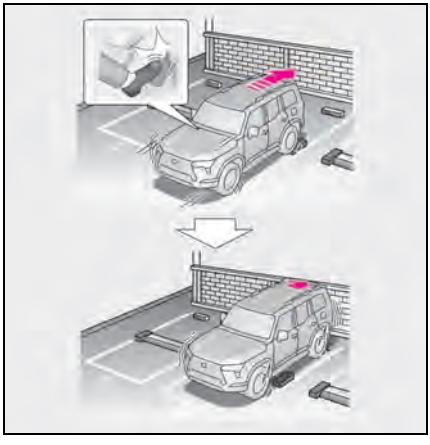
Examples of function operation (static objects front and rear of the vehicle)

This function will operate in situations such as the following if an object is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

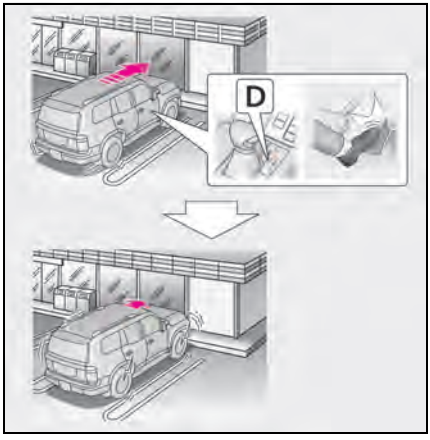
■ When traveling at a low speed and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late



■ When the accelerator pedal is depressed excessively



■ When the vehicle moves forward due to the incorrect shift position being selected



Types of sensors

→P.263

WARNING

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

→P.264

■ If the Parking Support Brake function operates unnecessarily, such as at a railroad crossing

→P.281

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

→P.265

■ The Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle) will operate when

The function will operate when the driving assist information indicator is not illuminated (→P.65, 66) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
• The Parking Support Brake is enabled.

- The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- There is a static object in the traveling direction of the vehicle and approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an immediate brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

■ The Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle) will stop operating when

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The system determines that the collision has become avoidable with normal brake operation.
- The static object is no longer approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- The static object is no longer approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ Detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle)

The detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle) differs from the detection range of the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.267). Therefore, even if the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an object and provides a warning, the Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle) may not start operating.

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

→P.265

■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

→P.266

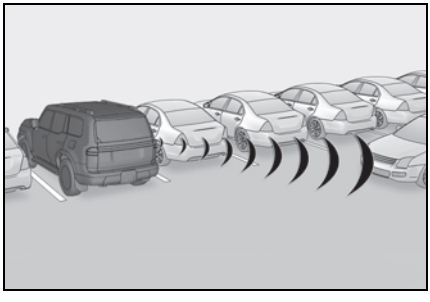
Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle)

If a rear radar sensor detects a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, this function will perform brake control to reduce the likelihood of an impact with the approaching vehicle.

Examples of the function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if a vehicle is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ **When reversing, a vehicle is approaching and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late**



Types of sensors

→P.255

WARNING

■ **To ensure the system can operate properly**

→P.255

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle) will operate when**

The function will operate when the driving assist information indicator is not illuminated (→P.65, 66) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- Vehicles are approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle at a traveling speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or more.
- The shift position is in R.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger than normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating.
- The Parking Support Brake determined that an emergency brake operation was necessary to avoid a collision with a vehicle approaching from the rear.

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle) will stop operating when**

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The collision becomes avoidable with normal brake operation.
- A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake

control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

→P.271

■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

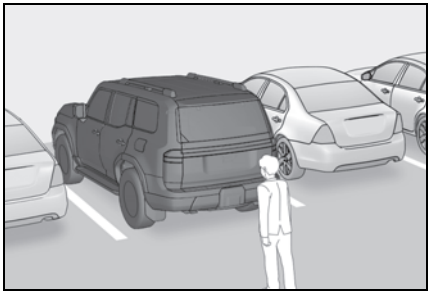
→P.272

Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle)

If the rear camera sensor detects a pedestrian behind the vehicle while backing up and the system determines that the possibility of colliding with the detected pedestrian is high, a buzzer will sound. If the system determines that the possibility of colliding with the detected pedestrian is extremely high, the brakes will be applied automatically to help reduce the impact of the collision.

Examples of system operation

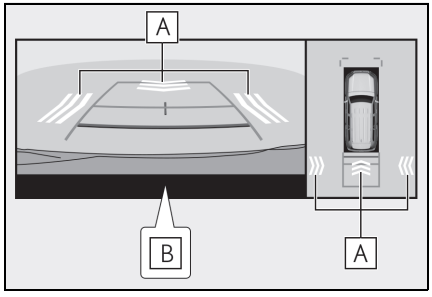
The system operates when an approaching pedestrian is detected behind the vehicle while backing up, and when the brake pedal is not depressed or is depressed late.



Screen display of pedestrians rear of the vehicle

Displays a message to urge the driver to take evasive action when a pedes-

trian is detected in the detection area behind the vehicle.



A Pedestrian detection icon

B "BRAKE!"

WARNING

■ If the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) operates unnecessarily

Depress the brake pedal immediately after the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) operates. (Operation of the function is canceled by depressing the brake pedal.)

■ Correct use of the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle)

→P.274

■ The Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) will operate when

The function will operate when the driving assist information indicator is not illuminated (→P.65, 66) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- The shift position is in R.
- When a pedestrian is to the rear of the vehicle
- The PKSB (Parking Support Brake) determines that a stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an emergency brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with a pedestrian.

■ The Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) will stop operating when

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The collision becomes avoidable with normal brake operation.
- The pedestrian is no longer detected behind your vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.

■ Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle)

→P.281

■ Detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle)

The detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) differs from the detection area of the RCD function (→P.275). Therefore, even if the RCD function detects a pedestrian and provides an alert, the Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) may not start operating.

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

→P.276

■ Situations in which the system may operate unexpectedly

→P.276

Multi-terrain Monitor*

*: If equipped

The Multi-terrain Monitor helps the driver to check the vehicle surroundings. It assists in determining the conditions around the driver in a variety of situations, such as when judging conditions during off-road driving or checking for obstacles when parking.

- The screen illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the screen.

WARNING

■ When using the Multi-terrain Monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never rely solely on the Multi-terrain Monitor. As with unequipped vehicles, drive carefully while directly confirming the safety of your surroundings and the area to the rear of the vehicle. Take particular care to avoid parked cars and other obstacles.
- Due to the characteristics of the camera lens, the actual position and distance of people and other obstacles will differ from those shown on the Multi-terrain Monitor screen. Directly confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving.
- Always make sure to visually check behind you and your surroundings while you are driving.

WARNING

- Never drive while looking only at the screen as the image on the screen is different from actual conditions. If you are driving while looking only at the screen, you may hit a person or an object, resulting in an accident. When driving, be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors.
- The position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change due to factors such as number of passengers, load capacity, and road gradient. Always make sure to visually check behind you and your surroundings while you are driving.
- In low temperatures, the screen may darken or the images may become faint.
  Images of moving objects in particular may distort or disappear from the screen. Therefore, make sure to drive carefully while directly visually confirming the safety of your surroundings.
- If you replace your tires, the position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may be incorrect.

NOTICE

■ Multi-terrain Monitor

When the camera malfunctions, the screen may be displayed as follows:

- When the shift position is in any position other than "R", the camera image continue to be displayed
- When the shift position is in "R", part or all of the screen may appear black
- When the shift position is in "R", the screen may not change to the camera image
- The guide lines are not displayed on the camera image, and attention symbols and caution notices are displayed

Multi-terrain Monitor screens

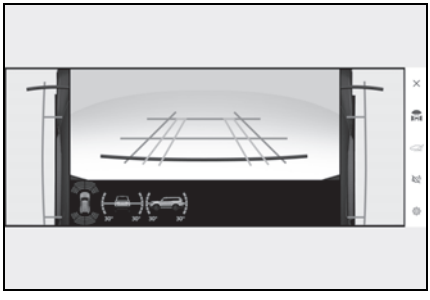
The following screens can be selected according to driving conditions.

- Screens that can be selected vary depending on conditions such as shift position and vehicle speed. (→P.292)
- Depending on the displayed screen, the display can be switched from normal to full screen display.

■ Screens when the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in on.

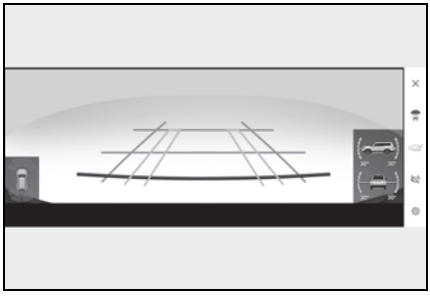
- When checking the area to the front and sides of the vehicle

▶ Front view & dual side views



→P.297

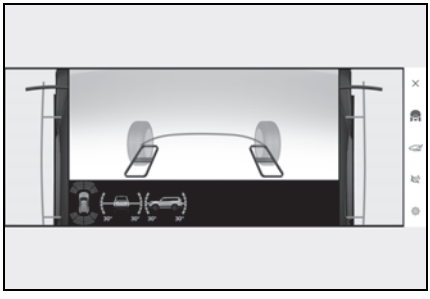
▶ Front view (magnified)



→P.297

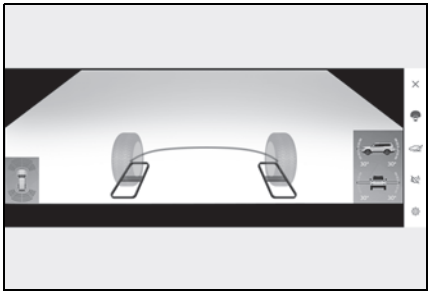
- When checking the condition of the road surface under the vehicle

▶ Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views



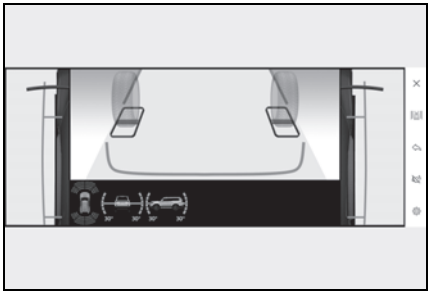
→P.300

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (magnified)



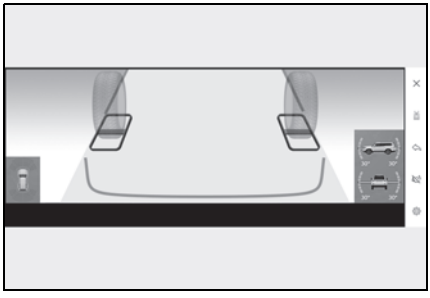
→P.300

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views



→P.303

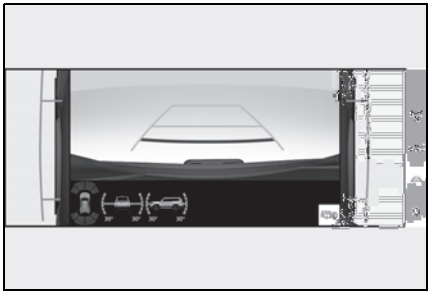
▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) (magnified)



→P.303

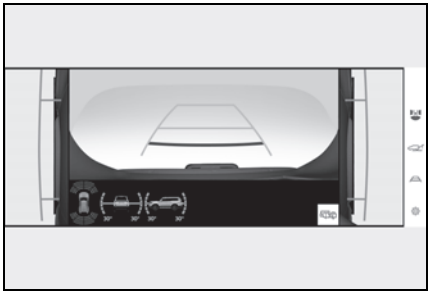
- When checking the area to the rear of the vehicle

▶ Rear view & dual side views



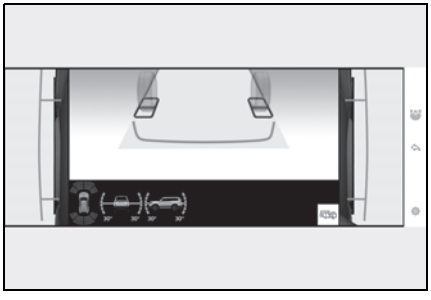
→P.306

▶ Wide rear view & dual side views



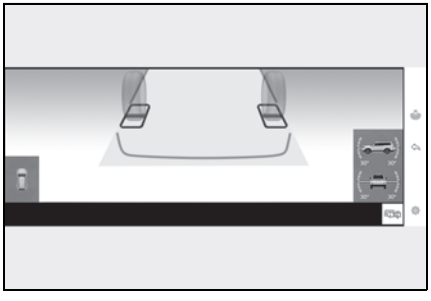
→P.306

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views



→P.310

▶ Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) (magnified)

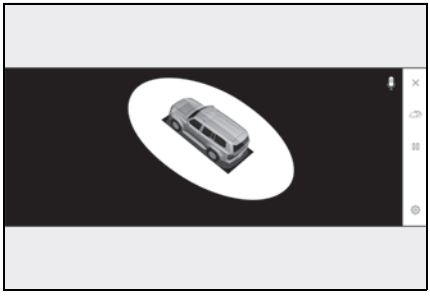


→P.310

■ **Screens when the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in off.**

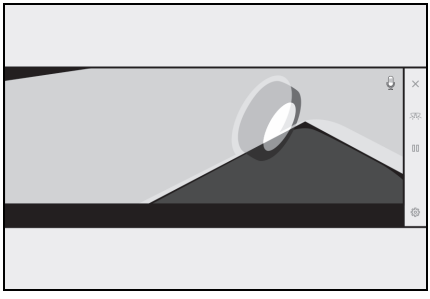
● When checking the area to the around of the vehicle

▶ Moving view



→P.313

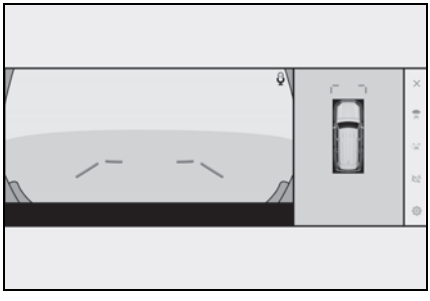
▶ See-through view



→P.313

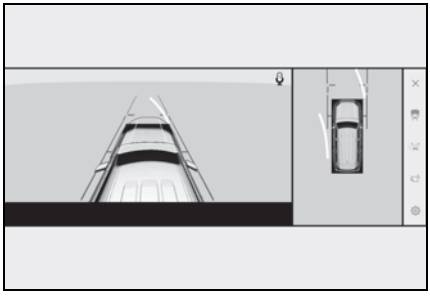
● When checking the area to the front of the vehicle

▶ Wide front view & panoramic view



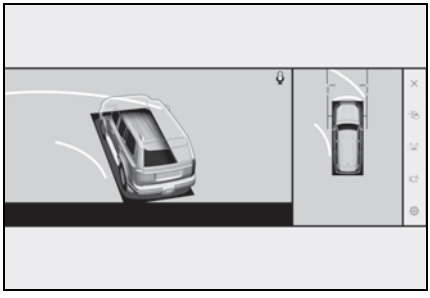
→P.315

▶ Side Clearance View & panoramic view



→P.315

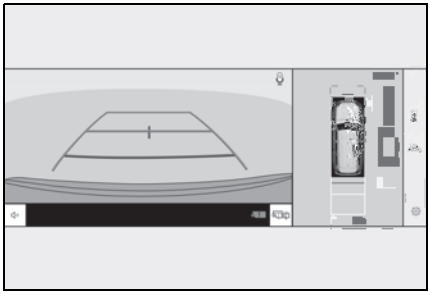
▶ Cornering View & panoramic view



→P.315

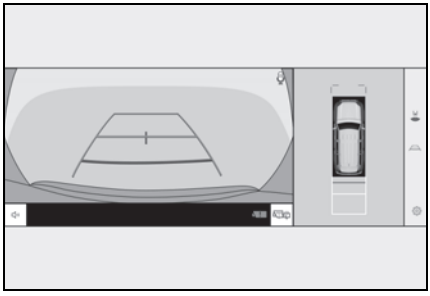
- When checking the area to the rear of the vehicle

▶ Rear view & panoramic view



→P.323

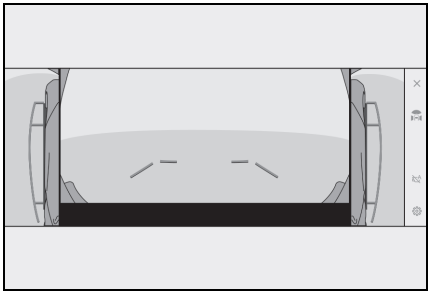
▶ Wide rear view & panoramic view



→P.323

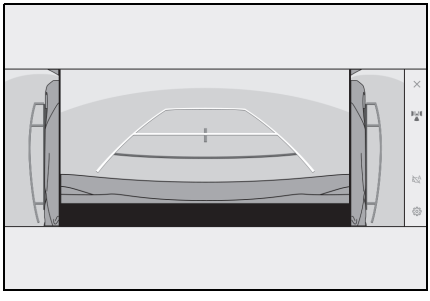
- When folding the outside rear view mirrors

▶ Side view & Wide front view



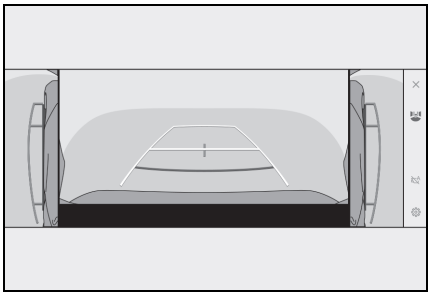
→P.332

▶ Side view & Rear view



→P.332

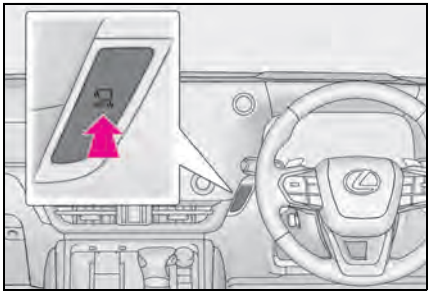
▶ Side view & Wide rear view



→P.332

VIEW switch

The VIEW switch is located as shown in the illustration.



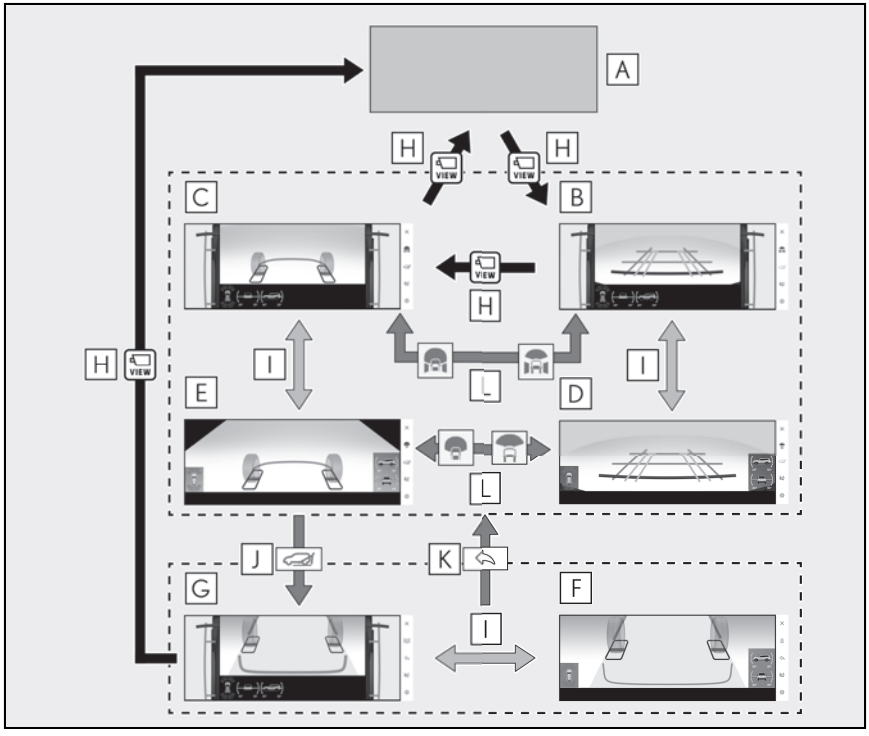
How to switch the screen

When you press the VIEW switch while the engine switch is in ON, the monitor displays operates.

The monitor displays various views of the position of the vehicle. (The following is an example)

Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in on

■ When the shift lever is in the P, D or N position



A Audio screen, etc.

B Front view & dual side views

C Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views

D Front view (magnified)

E Under vehicle terrain view (magnified)

F Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) (magnified)

G Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views

H Press the VIEW switch

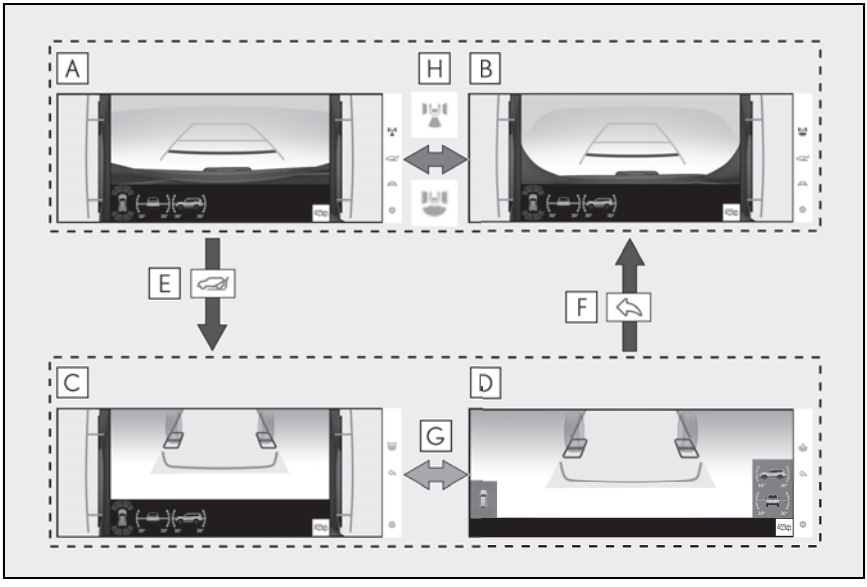
I Select the Multi-terrain Monitor screen

J Select the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) button

K Select the return button

L Select the display mode button

■ When the shift lever is in the R position



A Rear view & dual side views

B Wide rear view & dual side views

C Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views

D Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) (magnified)

E Select the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) button

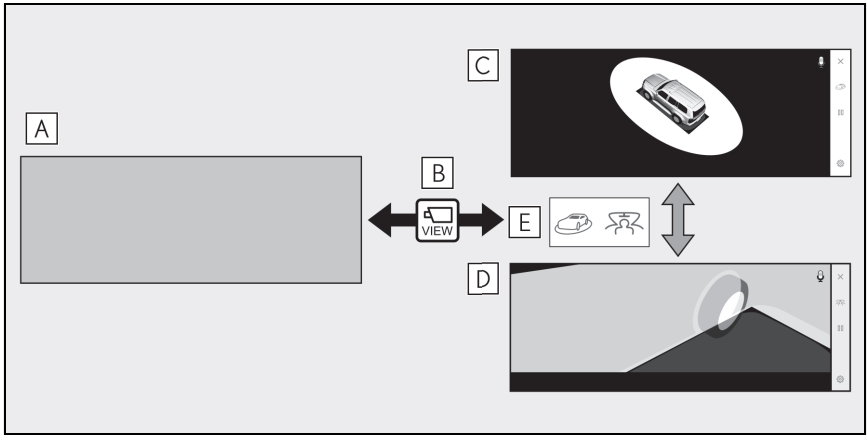
F Select the return button

G Select the Multi-terrain Monitor screen

H Select the display mode button

Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4 and Multi-terrain Select is in off

■ When the shift lever is in the P position



A Navigation screen, audio screen, etc.

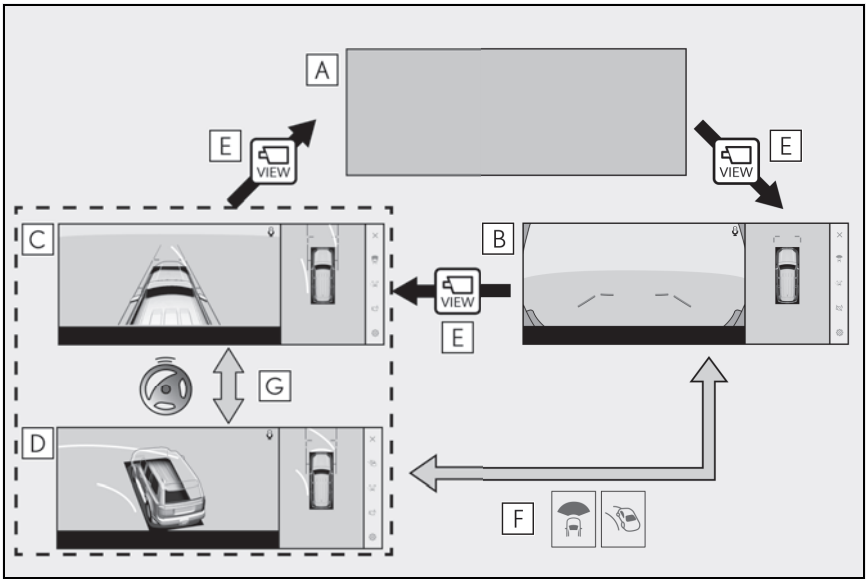
B Pressing the VIEW switch

C Moving view

D See-through view

E Touch the display mode switching button

■ When the shift lever is in the D or N position



A Navigation screen, audio screen, etc.

B Wide front view & panoramic view

C Side clearance view & panoramic view

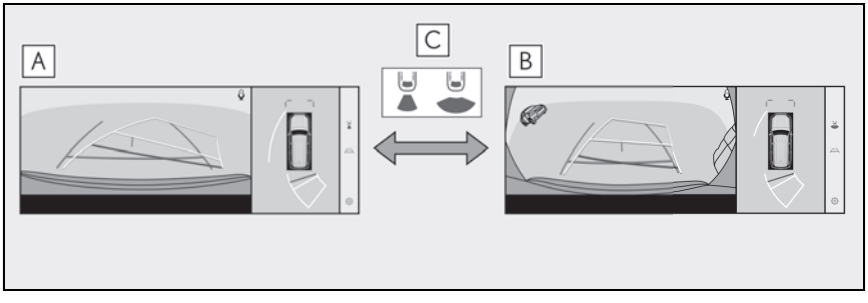
D Cornering view & panoramic view

E Pressing the VIEW switch

F Touch the display mode switching button

G When the steering wheel is turned by 180 degrees or more from the center (straight-line) position

■ When the shift lever is in the R position



A Rear view & panoramic view

B Wide rear view & panoramic view

C Select the display mode button

■ Multi-terrain Monitor screen display

- The amount of time that the Multi-terrain Monitor screen is displayed changes as follows according to the vehicle speed at the time the VIEW switch was pressed.
- The Multi-terrain Monitor screen is displayed if the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or less when the VIEW switch is pressed.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 20 km/h (12 mph), the Multi-terrain Monitor display is canceled.
- The guide lines mode and other display settings can be saved by registering the user profile.

Screen display and functions

When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or H4 and Multi-terrain Select is on, the various screens display information to support several different driving situations, such as when checking for obstacles when moving forward or in reverse, or when judging road surface conditions during off-road driving.

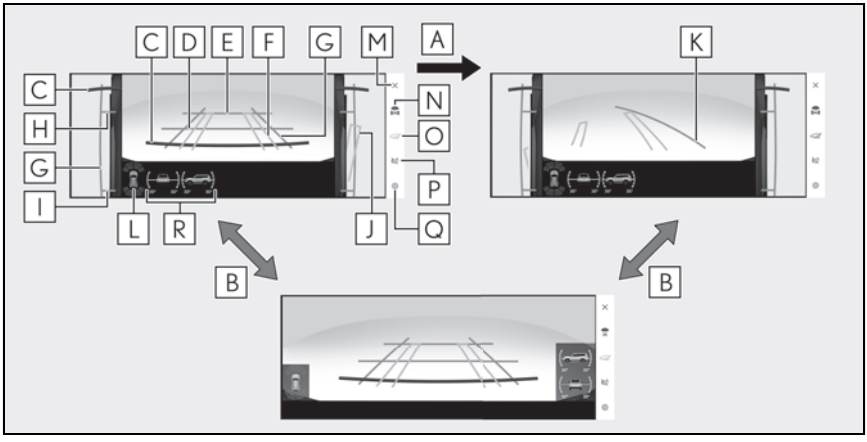
Front view & dual side views

Front view & dual side views can be used to check the area around the front of the vehicle.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P, D or N position.

- In addition to an image of the front of the vehicle, guide lines are displayed in a composite view to provide reference for when deciding a direction to move forward in.
- If the front view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)
- If the steering wheel is turned 270° or more, guide lines and other features to support turning are automatically displayed.

Screen display



A If the steering wheel is turned 270° or more

B Selecting the display

C 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) distance guide line (red)

D 1 m (3 ft.) distance guide line (blue)

E 2 m (6 ft.) distance guide line (blue)

Items C to E indicate the estimated distance from the front end of the vehicle.

F Front tire course line (yellow)

Indicates the estimated course of the front tires according to steering wheel position.

G Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

H Front tire contact line (blue)

I Rear tire contact line (blue)

Items H and I indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

J Rear tire course line (yellow)

Indicates the estimated course of the rear tires.

K Forward movement guide line (blue)

Indicates the estimated tire course of the tightest possible turn.

L Lexus parking assist-sensor/slip display

Indicates tire spinning by changing color and flashing the tire displayed. If the Lexus park-

ing assist-sensor detects a static object when the system is enabled, the indicator is displayed on the screen. (→P.299)

M Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

N Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

O Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection button

Switch the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views (→P.303)

P Automatic display mode selection button

→P.300

Q Setting button

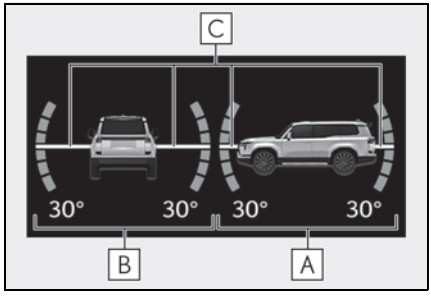
Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

R Tilt meter

Displays the vehicle's estimated degree of incline. (→P.299)

■ **Tilt meter**

Tilt meter displays the vehicle inclination to the front, rear, left and right within a range of 0° to approximately 30°.



A Degree markers of incline to the front and rear

Indicates the vehicle inclination in degrees in the front and rear directions.

B Degree markers of incline to the left and right

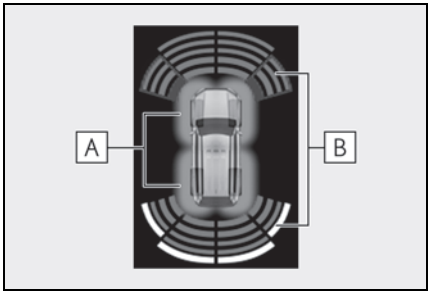
Indicates the vehicle inclination in degrees in the left and right directions.

C Pointer

Indicates the degree of the vehicle inclination in comparison to a parallel line.

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor/slip display**

Indicates the tire that is spinning when tire spinning is detected.



A Tire icon

The tire that is spinning flashes in orange.

B Lexus parking assist-sensor pop-up

display

Displayed if an obstacle is detected while the Lexus parking assist-sensor is enabled.

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed.

In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- Touching the automatic display button turns on auto display mode.
- Turning on auto display mode automatically displays the views in the following situations:
- When the shift lever is in "D" or "N"
- The vehicle decelerates to less than 10 km/h (6 mph) (the shift lever is in any position other than "R")

■ Front view & dual side views display

The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in P, D or N.

■ Tilt meter display

- The display indicates the incline of the vehicle in degrees shown by the movement of the pointer and the rotation of the vehicle image.
- The color of the degree markers of incline to the front, rear, left and right changes according to the current incline of the vehicle.
- After the engine switch is turned to ON, the degree of incline is not displayed until such information is determined
- The degree of incline showed on the tilt meter is only an approximate indication, and may differ from the degree of incline measured using other equipment.
- When the degree of incline is larger than 30°, the pointer will be displayed beyond 30°.
- If the system malfunctions, the vehicle image and pointer are not displayed. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Slip display

- If the system malfunctions, the tire icon is not displayed. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views

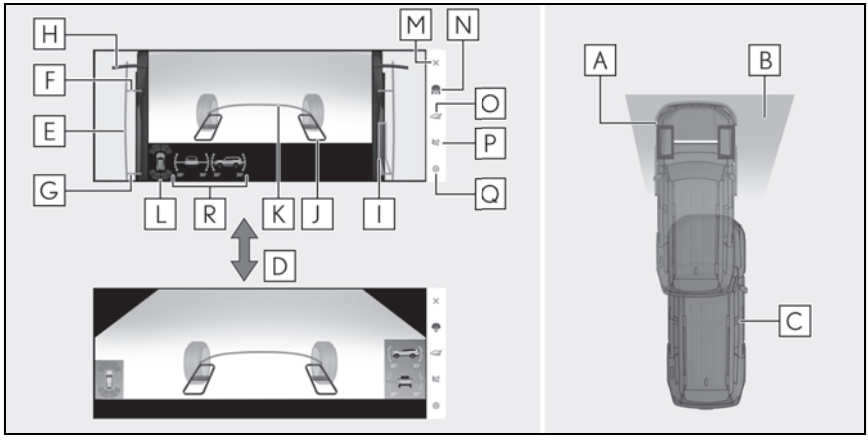
Lines indicating current vehicle and tire position are displayed in a composite view on an image taken behind the current vehicle position and assists the driver to check conditions underneath the vehicle or determine the position of the front tires.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P, D or N position.

- It is necessary to drive a certain distance or more for the image to be displayed.
- If the under vehicle terrain view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display

again returns the screen to the normal display)

Screen display



A Current vehicle position

B Image displayed in the under vehicle terrain view (image taken behind the current vehicle position)

C Vehicle position at the time the image was taken (behind the current vehicle position)

D Selecting the display

E Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

F Front tire contact line (blue)

G Rear tire contact line (blue)

Items F and G indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

H 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) distance guide line (red, black)

Indicate the estimated distance from the front end of the vehicle.

I Rear tire course line (yellow)

Indicates the estimated course of the rear tires.

J Tire position indicator lines (black, white)

Indicates the estimated position of the front tires.

K Vehicle position indicator lines (blue)

Indicates the estimated position of the vehicle.

L Lexus parking assist-sensor/slip display

Indicates tire spinning by changing color and flashing the tire displayed. If the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects a static object when the system is enabled, the indicator is displayed on the screen. (→P.299)

M Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

N Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time touch the button.

O Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection button

Switch the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views (→P.303)

P Automatic display mode selection button

→P.302

Q Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

R Tilt meter

Displays the vehicle's estimated degree of incline. (→P.299)

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed.

In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- Touching the automatic display button turns on auto display mode.
- Turning on auto display mode automatically displays the views in the following situations:
  - When the shift lever is in "D" or "N"
  - The vehicle decelerates to less than 10 km/h (6 mph) (the shift lever is in any position other than "R")

Under vehicle terrain view & dual side views

- The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in P, D or N.
- In the following situations, under vehicle terrain view will disappear.
  - When the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned almost all the way to one side
  - After the engine starts or the system returns to normal, a fixed distance or more has not yet been driven
  - When the tires are slipping or spinning
  - ABS is activated
  - When there is a malfunction in the system
- If the outside rear view mirrors are folded while the under vehicle terrain view is

being displayed, a separate screen is displayed.

- If the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned to a certain steering angle or greater, a part of the screen may disappear. However, this is not a malfunction.
- In the following situations, the system may not operate normally.
  - The road is covered with snow
  - When there are shadows due to light sources such as sunlight or illumination
  - When driving on slippery roads or tires are spinning
  - Dirt or foreign matter is adhering to the camera lens
  - There is water in front of the vehicle (a river, puddle, sea water, etc.)
  - Optional equipment has been installed
  - When the camera is covered or there is an object in the image capture range
  - Tires have been replaced
  - When the back door is open
  - When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
  - On roads that are not flat, such as slopes
- As vision that was captured in the past is being displayed, the screen and the actual situation may differ in the following cases:
  - An obstacle appears or moves after vision is captured.
  - Sand or snow crumbles and moves after vision is captured.
  - Mud or puddles are in the display range.
  - When the vehicle slips.

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, whether tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped, etc. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

■ Under vehicle terrain view display

The image displayed is one that was previously taken at a point behind the current vehicle position. In cases such as when objects move after the image is taken, the image displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state. In addition, when driving in the dark such as at night, there are cases when obstacles cannot be confirmed from the image.

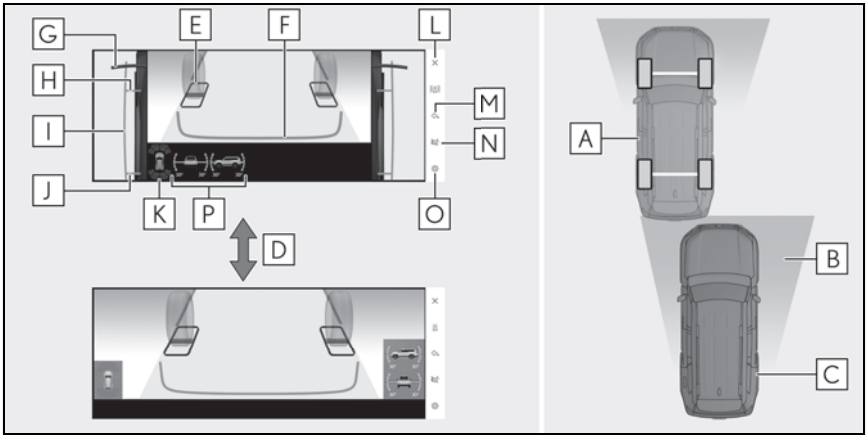
Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) & dual side views

Lines indicating current vehicle and tire position are displayed in a composite view on an image taken behind the current vehicle position and assists the driver to check conditions underneath the vehicle or determine the position of the rear tires.

To display the screen, press the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in the P, D or N position, select the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection switch.

- It is necessary to drive a certain distance or more for the image to be displayed.
- If the under vehicle terrain view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)

Screen display



A Current vehicle position

B Image displayed in the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) (image taken behind the current vehicle position)

C Vehicle position at the time the image was taken (behind the current vehicle position)

D Selecting the display

E Tire position indicator lines (black, white)

Indicates the estimated position of the rear tires.

F Vehicle position indicator lines (blue)

Indicates the estimated position of the vehicle.

G 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) distance guide line (red, black)

Indicate the estimated distance from the front end of the vehicle.

H Front tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

I Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

J Rear tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

K Lexus parking assist-sensor/slip display

Indicates tire spinning by changing color and flashing the tire displayed. If the Lexus park-

ing assist-sensor detects a static object when the system is enabled, the indicator is displayed on the screen. (→P.299)

L Display off button

Changes the screen back to the previously displayed screen, such as the audio screen.

M Return button

Return to the previous screen

N Automatic display mode selection button

→P.305

O Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

P Tilt meter

Displays the vehicle's estimated degree of incline. (→P.299)

Automatic display mode

In addition to screen switching by operating the VIEW switch, automatic display mode is available. In this mode, the screen is switched automatically in response to vehicle speed. In automatic display mode, the monitor will automatically display images in the following situations:

- Touching the automatic display button turns on auto display mode.
- Turning on auto display mode automatically displays the views in the following situations:

• When the shift lever is in "D" or "N"

• The vehicle decelerates to less than 10 km/h (6 mph) (the shift lever is in any position other than "R")

Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel)

- The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in P, D or N.
- In the following situations, the display of the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) ends and the screen automatically returns to the most recently used camera screen. In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.

• When vehicle speed reaches or exceeds approximately 5 km/h (3 mph)

• When the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned almost all the way to one side

• When the tires are slipping or spinning

• ABS is activated

• When there is a malfunction in the system

• When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle

- If the outside rear view mirrors are folded while the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) is being displayed, a separate screen is displayed.
- If the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned to a certain steering angle or greater, a part of the screen may disappear. However, this is not a malfunction.
- In the following situations, the system may not operate normally or may not be able to switch to the under vehicle terrain view

(rear wheel). In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.
- The road is covered with snow
- When there are shadows due to light sources such as sunlight or illumination
- When driving on slippery roads or tires are spinning
- Dirt or foreign matter is adhering to the camera lens
- There is water in front of the vehicle (a river, puddle, sea water, etc.)
- Optional equipment has been installed
- When the camera is covered or there is an object in the image capture range
- Tires have been replaced
- When the back door is open
- When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
- On roads that are not flat, such as slopes

● As vision that was captured in the past is being displayed, the screen and the actual situation may differ in the following cases:
- An obstacle appears or moves after vision is captured.
- Sand or snow crumbles and moves after vision is captured.
- Mud or puddles are in the display range.
- When the vehicle slips.

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, whether tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped, etc. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

■ Under vehicle terrain view (rear wheel) display

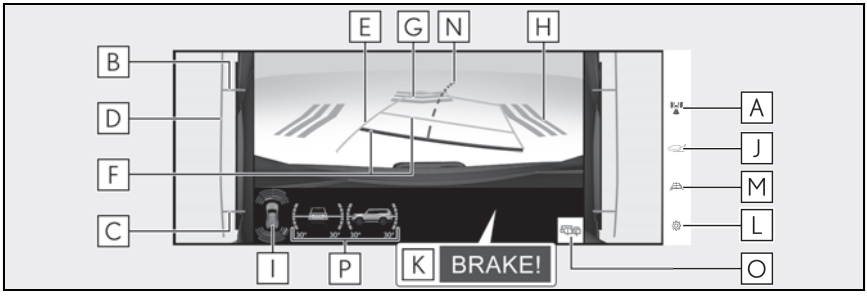
The image displayed is one that was previously taken at a point behind the current vehicle position. In cases such as when objects move after the image is taken, the image displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state. In addition, when driving in the dark such as at night, there are cases when obstacles cannot be confirmed from the image.

Rear view & dual side views/wide rear view & dual side views

The rear view & dual side views and the wide rear view & dual side views screen provide support when checking the areas of behind the vehicle and around the vehicle while backing up, for example while parking.

The screens will be displayed when the shift lever is in the R position.

Screen display



A Display mode switching button

Each time the display mode switching button is selected, the mode will change between the rear view & dual side views mode and the wide rear view & dual side views mode.

B Front tire contact line (blue)

C Rear tire contact line (blue)

Items **B** and **C** indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

D Vehicle width extension guide line (blue)

Indicates the estimated vehicle width including the outside rear view mirrors.

E Projected course lines (yellow)

Indicate the estimated course of the vehicle according to steering operations.

F Distance guide line

Shows the distance behind the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned.

- The guide lines move in conjunction with the estimated course lines.
- The guide lines display points approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and approximately 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center of the edge of the bumper.

G Rear Camera Detection

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected.

H Rear Cross Traffic Alert/Rear Camera Detection

The indicator is displayed on the screen in the following situations.

- When the rear radar detects an approaching vehicle or obstacle from the rear
- When the rear camera detects a pedestrian to the rear

I Lexus parking assist-sensor/slip display

Indicates tire spinning by changing color and flashing the tire displayed. If the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects a static object when the system is enabled, the indicator is displayed on the screen. (→P.299)

J Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection button

Switch the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views (→P.310)

K Parking Support Brake

When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with detected target objects is high, a warning message is displayed.

L Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

M Guide line switching button

Each time the guide line switching button is selected, the mode will change between the estimated course line mode and the vehicle center estimated course line mode.

N Vehicle center estimated course line

Shows a vehicle center estimated course when the steering wheel is turned.

O Rear camera washer switch

Press shortly:

The rear camera washer operates for a certain period of time.

Press and hold:

The rear camera washer operates while the rear camera washer switch remains pressed.

P Tilt meter

Displays the vehicle's estimated degree of incline. (→P.299)

■ **Rear view & dual side views/wide rear view & dual side views**

- The monitor is canceled when the shift lever is shifted into any position other than the R position.
- For details about the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263), Rear Cross Traffic Alert function (→P.269) and Parking Support Brake function. (→P.277)
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor and the position of obstacles displayed in the camera image do not match.

■ **Guide lines**

If the back door is not closed, guide lines will not be displayed. If the guide lines do not display even when the back door is closed, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor display

When a sensor indicator on the Lexus parking assist-sensor display illuminates in red or a buzzer sounds continuously, be sure to check the area around the vehicle immediately and do not proceed any further until safety has been ensured, otherwise an unexpected accident may occur.

■ Rear view & dual side views/wide rear view & dual side views display

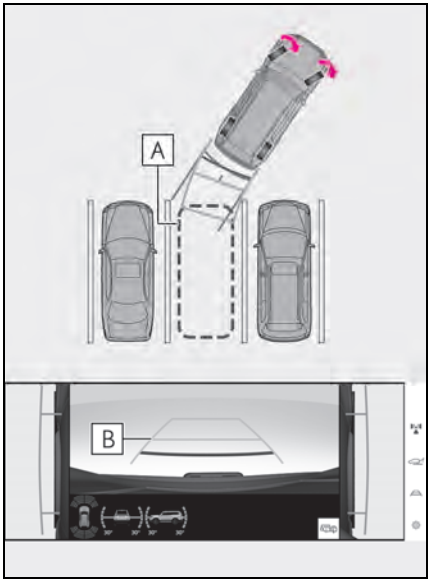
As the Lexus parking assist-sensor display and Rear Cross Traffic Alert display are displayed over the camera view, it may be difficult to see the Lexus parking assist-sensor display and Rear Cross Traffic Alert display depending on the color and brightness of the surrounding area.

Parking

When parking in a space which is in the reverse direction to the space described in the procedure below, the steering directions will be reversed.

1 Shift the shift lever to the R position.

2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space, and back up slowly.

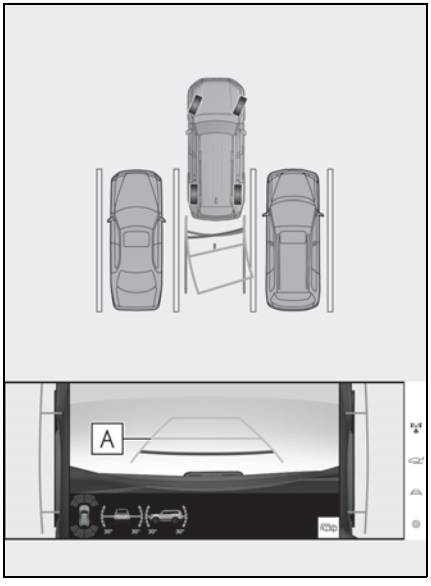


A Parking space

B Estimated course lines

3 When the rear position of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width guide lines are within

the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.



A Estimated course lines

4 Once the estimated course lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place, and finish parking.

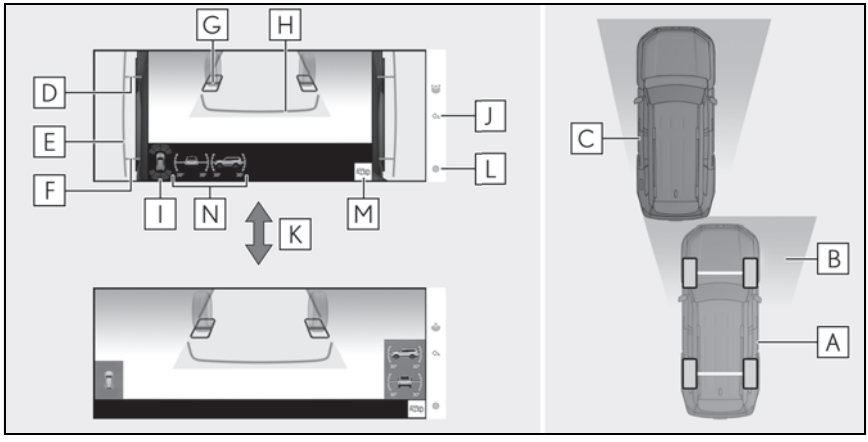
Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) & dual side views

Lines indicating current vehicle and tire position are displayed in a composite view on an image taken in front of the current vehicle position and assists the driver to check conditions underneath the vehicle or determine the position of the rear tires.

To display the screen, when the shift lever is in the R position, select the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection switch.

- It is necessary to drive a certain distance or more for the image to be displayed.
- If the under vehicle terrain view display is selected while the screen is displayed, the screen switches from normal to magnified display. (Selecting the display again returns the screen to the normal display)

Screen display



A Current vehicle position

B Image displayed in the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) (image taken in front of the current vehicle position)

C Vehicle position at the time the image was taken (in front of the current vehicle position)

D Front tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

E Vehicle width lines (blue)

Indicate the width of the vehicle including the outside rear view mirrors.

F Rear tire contact line (blue)

Indicate estimated tire positions on the image.

G Tire position indicator lines (black, white)

Indicates the estimated position of the rear tires.

H Vehicle position indicator lines (blue)

Indicates the estimated position of the vehicle.

I Lexus parking assist-sensor/slip display

Indicates tire spinning by changing color and flashing the tire displayed. If the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects a static object when the system is enabled, the indicator is displayed on the screen. (→P.299)

J Return switch

Return to the previous screen

K Selecting the display

L Setting button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

M Rear camera washer switch

Press shortly:

The rear camera washer operates for a certain period of time.

Press and hold:

The rear camera washer operates while the rear camera washer switch remains pressed.

N Tilt meter

Displays the vehicle's estimated degree of incline. (→P.299)

■ **Under vehicle terrain view (rear side)**

- The screen can be displayed when the shift lever is in R.
- While the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) is displayed, if the vehicle speed reaches or exceeds approximately 5 km/h (3 mph), the screen automatically returns to the previous display.
- In the following situations, the display of the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) ends and the screen automatically returns to the most recently used camera screen. In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.
  - When the tires are slipping or spinning
  - ABS is activated
  - When there is a malfunction in the system
  - Rear Cross Traffic Alert, Rear Camera Detection or Parking Support Brake is activated
  - When the back door is open
- If the outside rear view mirrors are folded while the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) is being displayed, a separate screen is displayed.
- If the vehicle is driven with the steering wheel turned to a certain steering angle or greater, a part of the screen may disappear. However, this is not a malfunction.
- In the following situations, the system may not operate normally or may not be able to switch to the under vehicle terrain view (rear side). In addition, the under vehicle terrain view (rear side) selection switch cannot be operated until the next screen can be displayed.
  - The road is covered with snow
  - When there are shadows due to light sources such as sunlight or illumination
  - When driving on slippery roads or tires are spinning
  - Dirt or foreign matter is adhering to the camera lens
  - There is water in front of the vehicle (a river, puddle, sea water, etc.)
  - Optional equipment has been installed
  - When the camera is covered or there is an object in the image capture range
  - Tires have been replaced
  - When the back door is open
  - When the steering wheel is operated at or more than a specified steering angle
  - On roads that are not flat, such as slopes

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, whether tires or suspension parts other than those specified are equipped, etc.
Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

■ Under vehicle terrain view (rear side) display

- The image displayed is one that was previously taken at a point in front of the current vehicle position. In cases such as when objects move after the image is taken, the image displayed on the screen may differ from the actual state. In addition, when driving in the dark such as at night, there are cases when obstacles cannot be confirmed from the image.
- The area covered by the camera is limited. When driving, be sure to check the vehicle's surroundings with your own eyes and the vehicle's mirrors.

Screen display and functions

When the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4 and Multi-terrain Select is off, the various screens display information to support several different driving situations, such as when checking for obstacles when moving forward

Display mode when the shift lever is in "P"

This is a mode that displays images combined from the cameras to enable you to check obstacles around the vehicle. Images are displayed as if seen from the driver's seat and on an angle from above the vehicle.

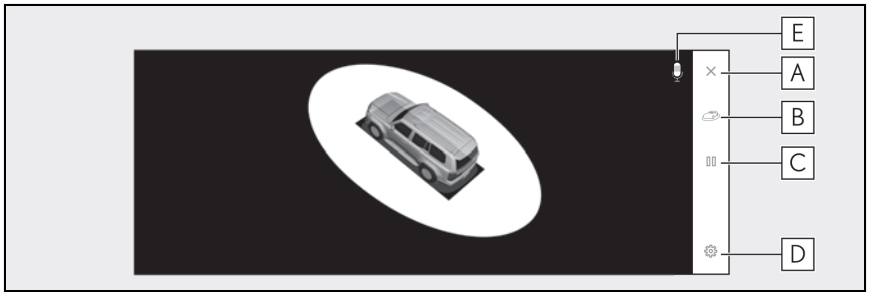
Screen display

1 Shift the shift lever to "P".

2 Press the VIEW switch.

- The mode changes every time the display mode switching button is touched.
- Pressing the VIEW switch again returns the display to the previous screen, such as the navigation screen.

▶ Moving view



A Screen off button

Turns off the camera screen and returns the previous screen, such as the audio screen.

B Display mode switching button

Switches between see-through view and moving view.

C Rotation pause/resume button

Pauses and resumes the rotation of the display.

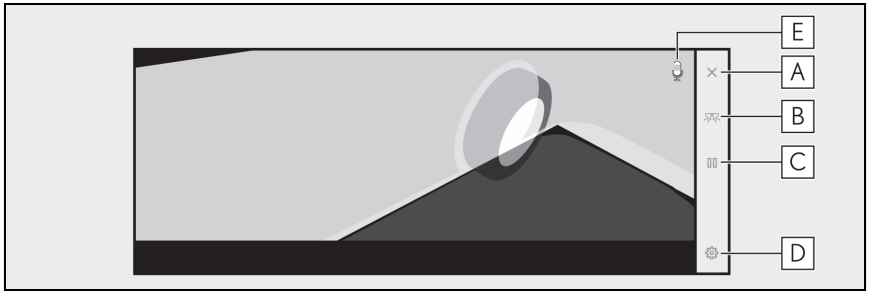
D Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

E Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

▶ See-through view



A Screen off button

Turns off the camera screen and returns the previous screen, such as the audio screen.

B Display mode switching button

Switches between see-through view and moving view.

C Rotation pause/resume button

Pauses and resumes the rotation of the display.

D Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

E Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

- When the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263) is turned on, you can display see-through view or moving view.
- You can also pause and resume the rotation of the see-through view and moving view screen by touching any point on the screen.

Display mode when the shift lever is in "D" or "N"

You can check for nearby pedestrians, bicycles, and vehicles at intersections with poor visibility and T-junctions by displaying vision of your surroundings on the screen. This mode also provides support to check both sides of the vehicle for safety, avoid collisions on narrow roads, and pulling over to the side of the road.

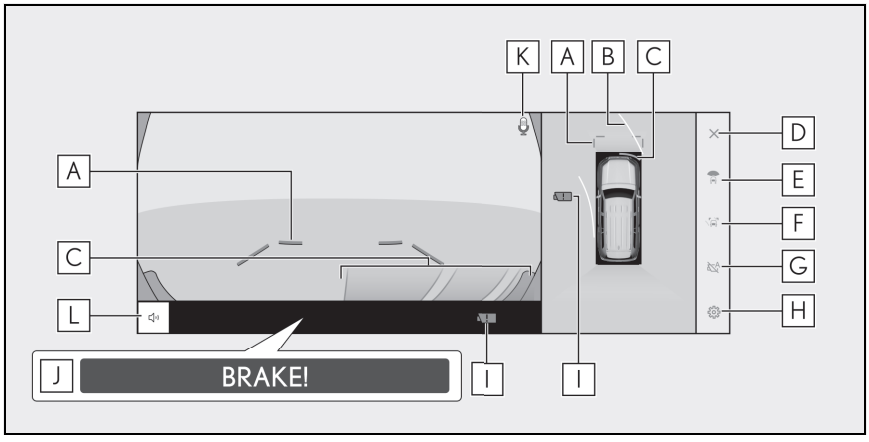
Screen display

1 Shift the shift lever to "D" or "N".

2 Press the VIEW switch.

- The mode changes every time you press the VIEW switch.
- If the cornering view mode is on and you turn the steering wheel more than 180 degrees from the straight position, the display will change from side clearance view & panoramic view to cornering view & panoramic view.

▶ Wide front view & panoramic view



A Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) in front of the vehicle.

B Forward estimated course lines

Displays course lines that are linked to operation of the steering wheel. (Yellow)

These lines are displayed when the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees from the straight position.

C Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

D Screen off button

Turns off the camera screen and returns the previous screen, such as the navigation.

E Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time you touch the button.

F Guide line switching button

Switches guide line mode every time you touch the button. (→P.320)

G Automatic display button

Turns the auto display mode on or off. When the shift lever is in "D" or "N", wide front view & panoramic view or side clearance view/cornering view & panoramic view will be automatically displayed in accordance with the vehicle speed. (→P.320)

H Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

I Camera dirt detection icon

This icon is displayed when dirt is detected on the camera.

J PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

If an obstacle that you may collide with is detected, a message is displayed on the screen.

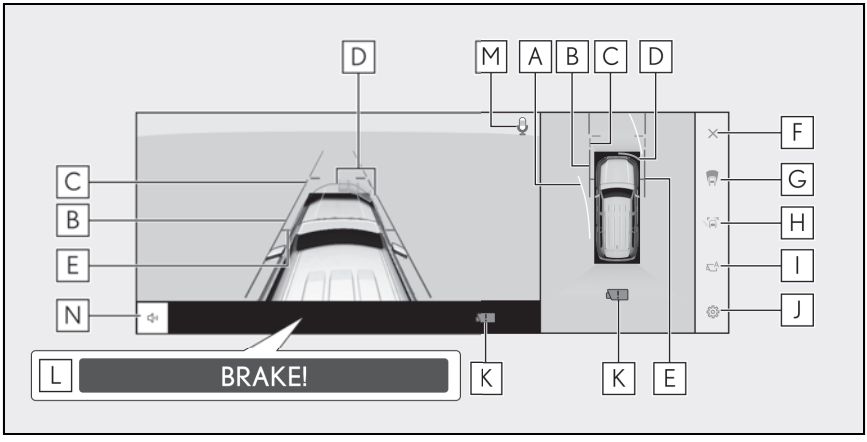
K Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

L Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

▶ Side clearance view & panoramic view



A Forward estimated course lines

Displays course lines that are linked to operation of the steering wheel. (Yellow)

These lines are displayed when the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees from the straight position.

B Vehicle width guide lines

Shows guide lines of the vehicle's width including the outside rear view mirrors.

C Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) in front of the vehicle.

D Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

E Front tire guide lines

Displays the position of the front tires.

F Screen off button

Turns off the camera screen and returns the previous screen, such as the navigation.

G Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time you touch the button.

H Guide line switching button

Switches guide line mode every time you touch the button. (→P.320)

I Automatic display button

Turns the auto display mode on or off. When the shift lever is in "D" or "N", wide front view & panoramic view or side clearance view/cornering view & panoramic view will be automatically displayed in accordance with the vehicle speed. (→P.320)

J Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

K Camera dirt detection icon

This icon is displayed when dirt is detected on the camera.

L PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

If an obstacle that you may collide with is detected, a message is displayed on the screen.

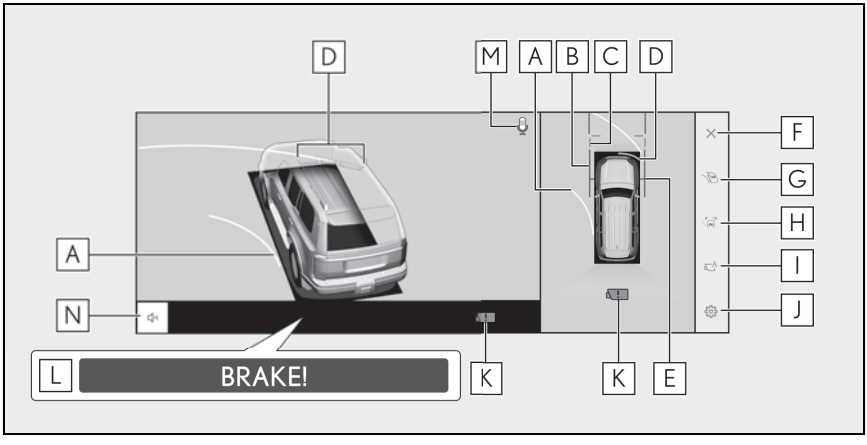
M Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

N Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

▶ Cornering view & panoramic view



A Forward estimated course lines

Displays course lines that are linked to operation of the steering wheel. (Yellow)

These lines are displayed when the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees from the straight position.

B Vehicle width guide lines

Shows guide lines of the vehicle's width including the outside rear view mirrors.

C Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) in front of the vehicle.

D Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

E Front tire guide lines

Displays the position of the front tires.

F Screen off button

Turns off the camera screen and returns the previous screen, such as the navigation.

G Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time you touch the button.

H Guide line switching button

Switches guide line mode every time you touch the button. (→P.320)

I Automatic display button

Turns the auto display mode on or off. When the shift lever is in "D" or "N", wide front view & panoramic view or side clearance view/cornering view & panoramic view will be automatically displayed in accordance with the vehicle speed. (→P.320)

J Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

K Camera dirt detection icon

This icon is displayed when dirt is detected on the camera.

L PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

If an obstacle that you may collide with is detected, a message is displayed on the screen.

M Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

N Lexus parking assist-sensor mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor sound.

■ Side Clearance View & panoramic view screen/Cornering View & panoramic view display

- When the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263) is turned on, you can display side clearance view & panoramic view/cornering view.
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor may not match the position of the obstacle displayed in the camera image.

WARNING

■ Guide line

The position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change due to factors such as number of passengers, load weight, and road gradient. Always make sure to visually check behind you and your surroundings while you are driving.

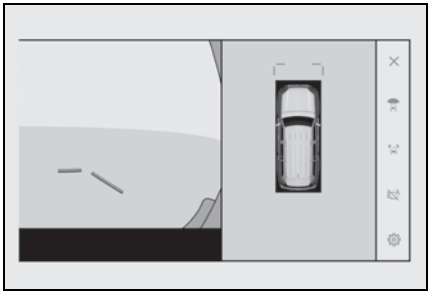
■ Lexus parking assist-sensor display

The Lexus parking assist-sensor display is superimposed on the camera image, so it may be difficult to see depending on the brightness of the surroundings and colors.

Changing the guide line display mode

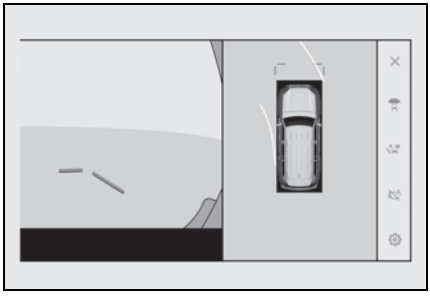
The guide line display mode changes every time the guide line display mode button is touched.

▶ Distance guide lines mode



Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) in front of the vehicle. (blue)

▶ Estimated course lines mode



Displays course lines that are linked to operation of the steering wheel. (Yellow) These lines are displayed when the steering wheel is turned more than 90 degrees from the straight position.

Auto display mode

Although you can display wide front view & panoramic view and side clearance view & panoramic view/cornering view by pressing the VIEW switch, you can also set auto display mode to display the views automatically in

accordance with the vehicle speed.

- Touching the automatic display button turns on auto display mode.
- Turning on auto display mode automatically displays the views in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is in "D" or "N"
- The vehicle decelerates to less than 10 km/h (6mph) (the shift lever is in any position other than "R")

Cornering view auto display

You can set the cornering view auto display mode to automatically display cornering view & panoramic view in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.

- Turning on cornering view auto display mode automatically displays cornering view in the following situations:

- When the shift position is in "D" or "N"
- The vehicle decelerates to less than 12 km/h (7 mph)
- When the steering wheel is turned by 180 degrees or more from the center (straight-line) position

■ **Cornering view auto display**

You can change cornering view auto mode in the custom settings.

Lexus parking assist-sensor linked display

Depending on the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection state, wide front view & panoramic view/Side clearance view/Cornering view & panoramic view will be displayed.

- The views are displayed automatically when the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an obstacle (when the shift position is in "D" or "N").
- The display returns to the previous screen automatically when the Lexus parking assist-sensor stops detecting an obstacle.

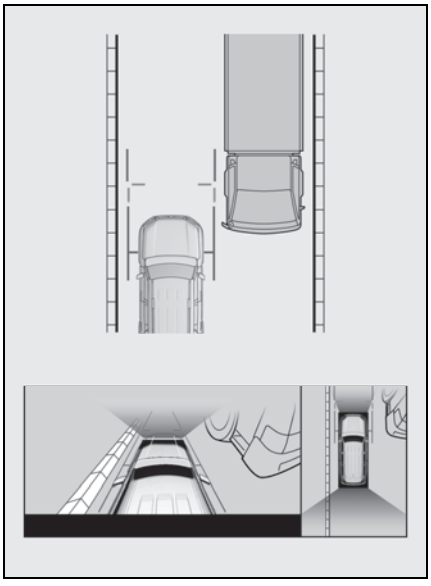
■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor linked display**

- You can also return to the previous screen by pressing the VIEW switch displayed on the screen.
- If the panoramic view monitor screen is canceled when an obstacle is detected, the panoramic view monitor screen can be displayed again by touching the Lexus parking assist-sensor mark shown on the multimedia system screen.

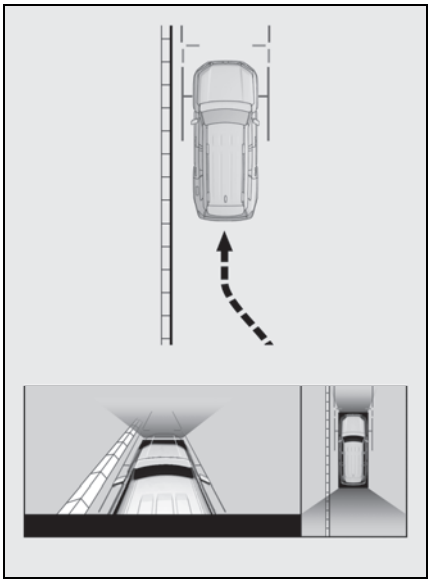
Using the vehicle width guide lines

■ **Side Clearance View & panoramic view**

- Check the positional relationship between the vehicle width guide lines and an obstacle.
- Turn the steering wheel and drive forward so that the vehicle width guide lines do not overlap the actual obstacle.



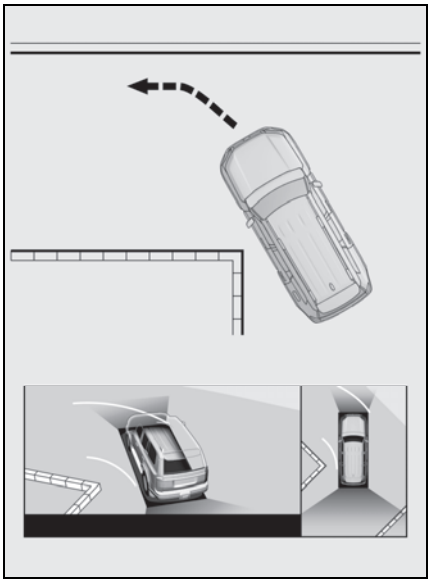
- Check the positional relationship between the vehicle width guide lines and an object such as curbs on the shoulder of a road.
- Pull the vehicle over so that the vehicle width guide lines do not overlap the obstacle as shown in the figure.
- By driving with the vehicle width guide lines parallel to the object, you can park alongside the object.



Using the forward estimated course lines

■ Cornering View & panoramic view

- Check the positional relationship between the forward estimated course lines and an obstacle.
- Turn the steering wheel and drive forward so that the forward estimated course lines do not overlap the actual obstacle.



Display mode when the shift lever is in “R”

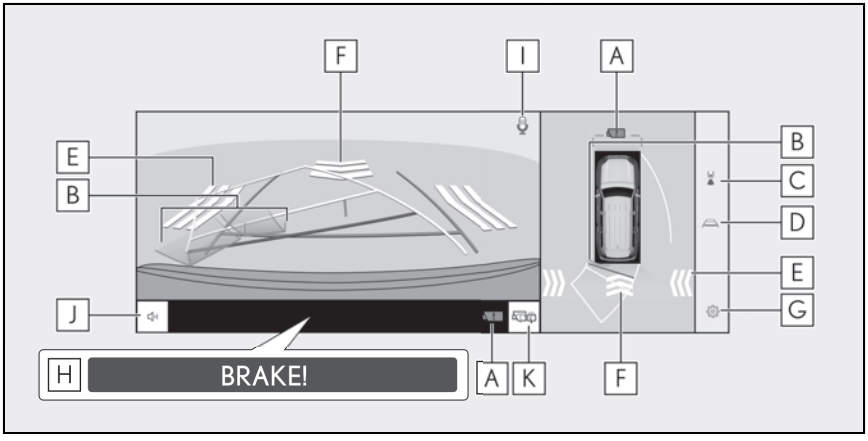
To check for safety when parking the vehicle, an image is displayed from above the vehicle and from the rear camera.

Screen display

1 Shift the shift lever to “R”.

The mode changes every time you touch the display mode switching button.

▶ Rear view & panoramic view



A Camera dirt detection icon

This icon is displayed when dirt is detected on the camera.

B Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

C Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time you touch the button.

D Guide line switching button

Switches guide line mode every time you touch the button. (→P.327)

E RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)/RCD (Rear Camera Detection)

The indicator is displayed on the screen in the following situations.

- When the rear radar detects an approaching vehicle or obstacle from the rear.
- When the rear camera detects a pedestrian to the rear

F RCD (Rear Camera Detection)

If the rear camera detects a pedestrian behind the vehicle, an indicator is displayed on the screen.

G Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

H PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

If an obstacle that you may collide with is detected, a message is displayed on the screen.

I Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

J Lexus parking assist-sensor/RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)/RCD (Rear Camera Detection) mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) and RCD (Rear Camera Detection) buzzer sound.

K Rear camera washer switch

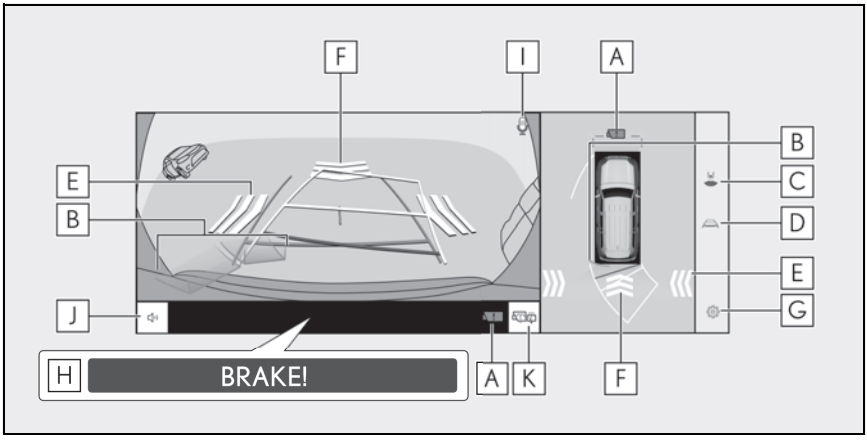
Press shortly:

The rear camera washer operates for a certain period of time.

Press and hold:

The rear camera washer operates while the rear camera washer switch remains pressed.

▶ Wide rear view & panoramic view



A Camera dirt detection icon

This icon is displayed when dirt is detected on the camera.

B Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

C Display mode switching button

Switches display mode every time you touch the button.

D Guide line switching button

Switches guide line mode every time you touch the button. (→P.327)

E RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)/RCD (Rear Camera Detection)

The indicator is displayed on the screen in the following situations.

- When the rear radar detects an approaching vehicle or obstacle from the rear
- When the rear camera detects a pedestrian to the rear

F RCD (Rear Camera Detection)

If the rear camera detects a pedestrian behind the vehicle, an indicator is displayed on the screen.

G Customize settings button

Changes settings, such as the automatically display cornering view, the vehicle body color, the Lexus parking assist-sensor detection distance. (→P.336)

H PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

If an obstacle that you may collide with is detected, a message is displayed on the screen.

I Voice recognition icon

This icon is displayed when the voice control system is in operation.

J Lexus parking assist-sensor/RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)/RCD (Rear Camera Detection) mute button

This button temporarily mutes the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) and RCD (Rear Camera Detection) buzzer sound.

K Rear camera washer switch

Press shortly:

The rear camera washer operates for a certain period of time.

Press and hold:

The rear camera washer operates while the rear camera washer switch remains pressed.

■ **Rear view & panoramic view/wide rear view & panoramic view display**

- Pressing the VIEW switch when the shift lever is in "R" enables you to change to panoramic view & wide front view.
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263) may not match the position of the obstacle displayed in the camera image.

WARNING

■ **Guide line**

- The position of the guide lines displayed on the screen may change due to factors such as number of passengers, load weight, and road gradient. Always make sure to visually check behind you and your surroundings while you are driving.

■ **Lexus parking assist, RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) and RCD (Rear Camera Detection) display**

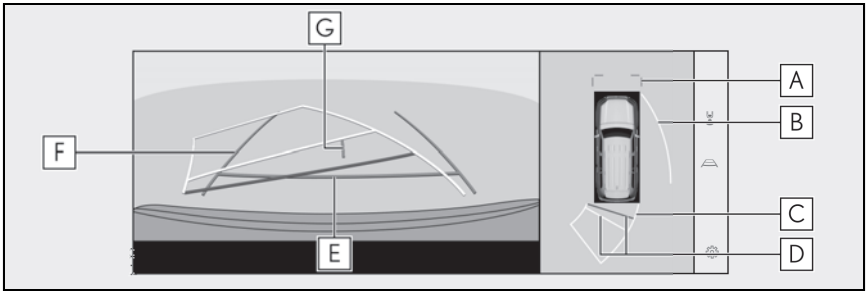
The Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) and RCD (Rear Camera Detection) displays are overlapped and displayed on the camera image, so it may be difficult to see depending on the brightness of the surroundings and colors.

Changing the guide line display mode

The guide line display mode changes every time you touch the guide line switching button.

▶ Estimated course lines mode

This mode displays estimated course lines that move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.



A Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) (blue) in front of the vehicle.

B Side estimated course lines

Displays course lines (yellow) that are linked to operation of the steering wheel.

C Reverse estimated course lines

Displays course lines (yellow) that are linked to operation of the steering wheel.

D Rear distance guide lines

Displays the distance behind the vehicle.
- The distance guide line is linked to the estimated course lines.
- Displays about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center end of the position above the rear bumper.

E Rear distance guide line

Displays about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (blue) from the end of the position above the rear bumper.

F Vehicle width guide lines

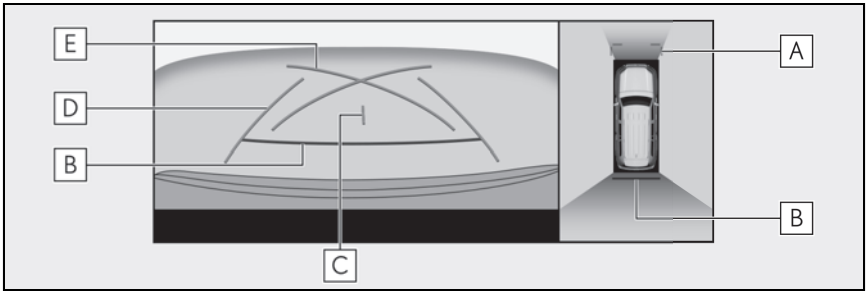
Displays course lines when the vehicle is being reversed in a straight line.
- The lines are wider than the actual width of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is straight, the guide lines will overlap with the estimated course lines.

G Vehicle center guide line

Displays the center of the vehicle width guide lines.

▶ Parking assist guide lines mode

This mode displays the steering wheel return points (parking assist guide lines). This mode is recommended for those who have a sense of the vehicle and can park the vehicle without the aid of the estimated course lines.



A Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) (blue) in front of the vehicle.

B Rear distance guide lines

Displays the distance behind the vehicle.

- Displays about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) from the center of the end of the position above the rear bumper.

C Vehicle center guide line

Displays the center of the vehicle width guide lines.

D Vehicle width guide lines

Displays course lines when the vehicle is being reversed in a straight line.

- The lines are wider than the actual width of the vehicle.

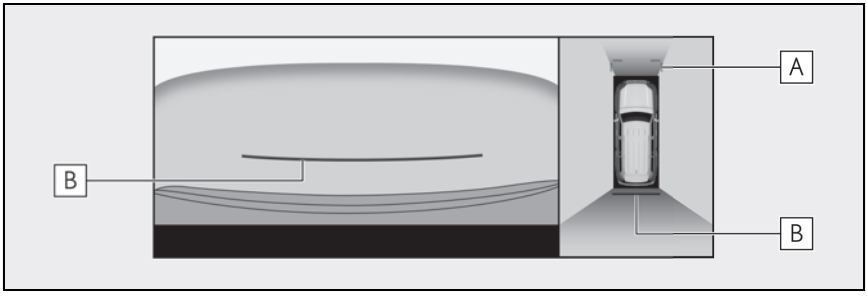
E Parking assist guide lines

Displays the course lines of the smallest turn possible behind the vehicle.

- Use the position of operating the steering wheel when parking as a guide.

▶ Distance guide lines mode

This mode only displays the distance guide lines. It is recommended for those who do not need the guide lines.



A Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) (blue) in front of the vehicle.

B Rear distance guide lines

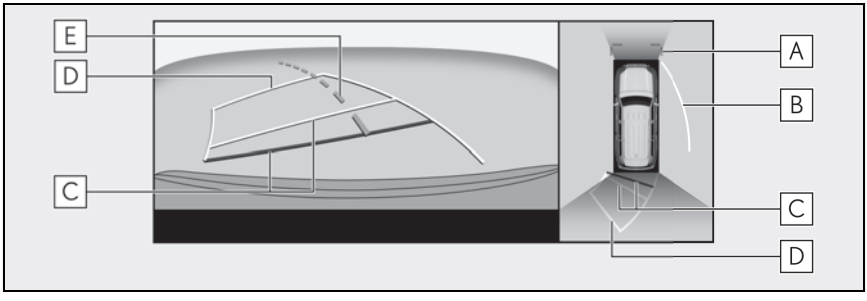
Displays the distance behind the vehicle.

- Displays about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) from the center end of the position above the rear bumper.

▶ Estimated course center line mode

This mode displays estimated course lines and a vehicle center guide line that move in accordance with the operation of the steering wheel.

Use this mode when approaching a signpost or pole with the center of the position above the rear bumper.



A Front distance guide lines

Displays about 1 m (3 ft.) (blue) in front of the vehicle.

B Side estimated course lines

Displays course lines (yellow) that are linked to operation of the steering wheel.

C Rear distance guide lines

Displays the distance behind the vehicle.

- The distance guide line is linked to the estimated course lines.
- Displays about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) (red) and 1 m (3 ft.) (yellow) from the center end of the posi-

tion above the rear bumper.

D Reverse estimated course lines

Displays course lines (yellow) that are linked to operation of the steering wheel.

E Estimated course center line

Displays the vehicle center guide line (green) that is linked to operation of the steering wheel.

■ Guide line display mode

The guide lines will not be displayed if the back door is not closed. If the back door is closed but the guide lines are still not displayed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

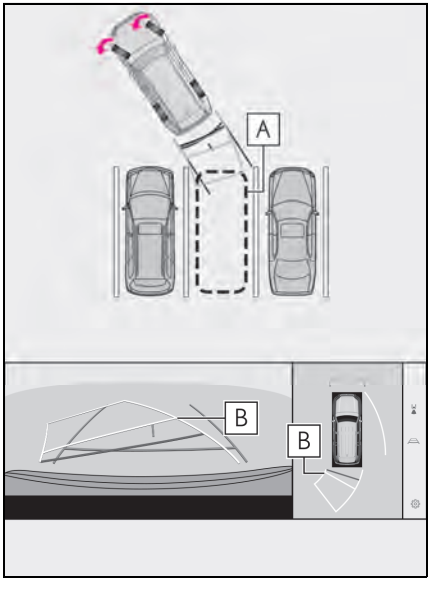
■ Guide line display mode

The rear vehicle width guide lines are wider than the actual width of the vehicle. Always make sure to visually check behind you and your surroundings when you are reversing.

Parking using the estimated course lines mode

1 Shift the shift lever to "R".

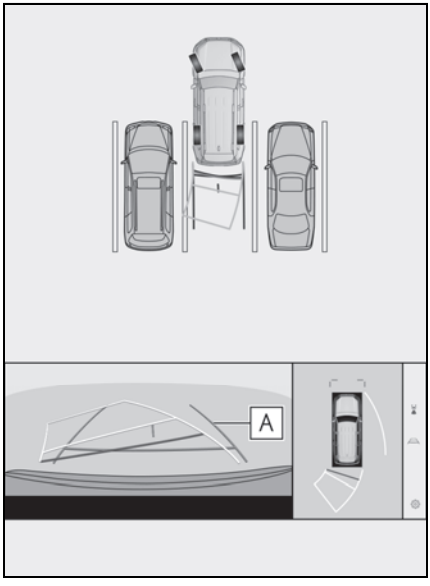
2 Turn the steering wheel so that the estimated course lines are within the parking space and then reverse slowly.



A Parking space

B Estimated course lines

3 When the rear of the vehicle has entered the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width guide lines are within the left and right dividing lines of the parking space.



A Vehicle width guide lines

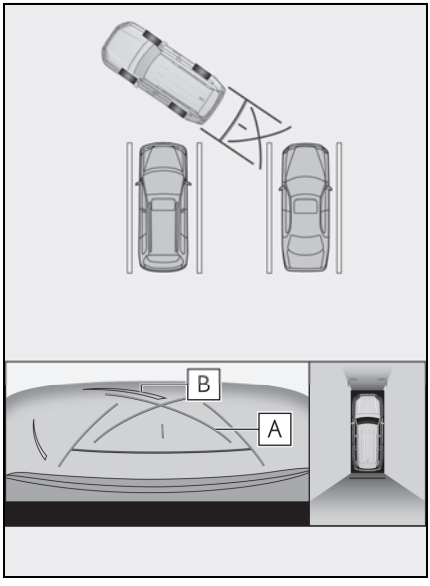
4 Once the vehicle width guide lines and the parking space lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and reverse slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place to finish parking.

Parking using the parking assist guide lines mode

1 Shift the shift lever to "R".

2 Reverse until the parking assist guide lines align with the left-hand dividing line of the parking space.



A Parking assist guide lines

B Parking space dividing lines

3 Turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, and reverse slowly.

4 Once the vehicle is parallel with the parking space, straighten the steering wheel and reverse slowly until the vehicle has completely entered the parking space.

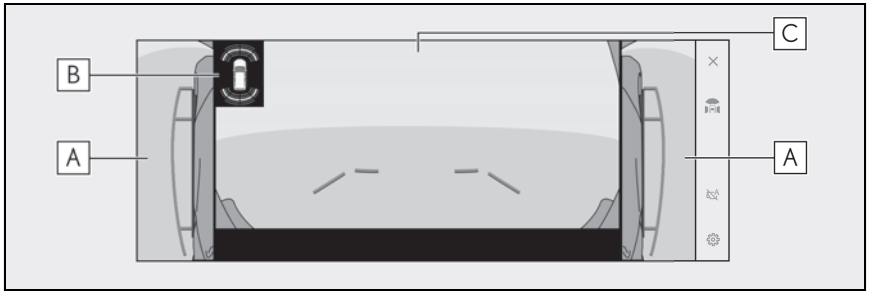
5 Stop the vehicle in an appropriate place to finish parking.

The screen when the outside rear view mirrors are folded

When the outside rear view mirrors are folded, an image from the side cameras rather than panoramic view will be displayed. This can assist you in confirming that the vicinity of the vehicle is safe when you are parking in a narrow place.

Screen display

▶ Side view & Wide front view



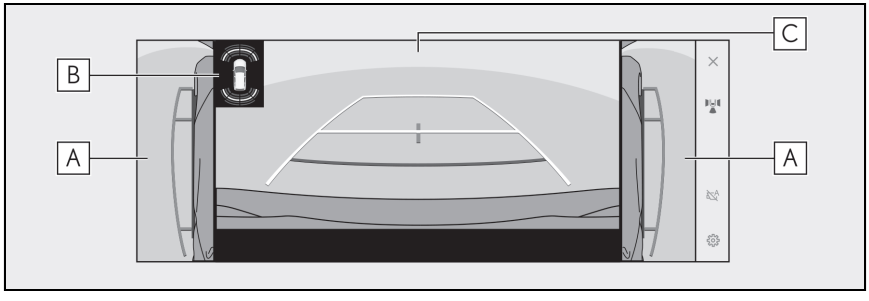
A Side views

B Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

C Wide front view

▶ Side view & Rear view



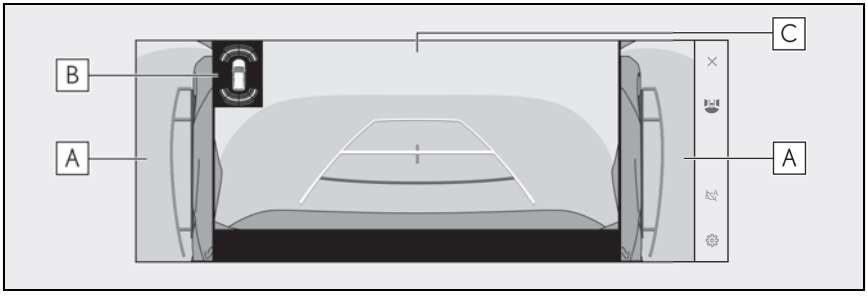
A Side views

B Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

C Rear view

▶ Side view & Wide rear view



A Side views

B Lexus parking assist-sensor

Displays an indicator on the screen and sounds a buzzer when an object is detected by a sensor.

C Wide rear view

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor display**

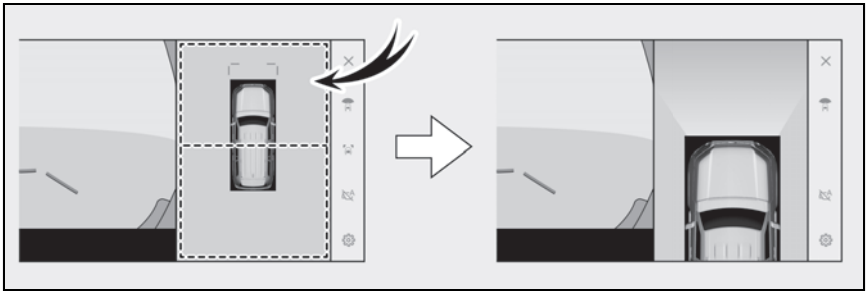
- When the VIEW switch is pressed while the side view and wide front view is being displayed, the previous screen will be displayed.
- The display position of the Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263) may not match the position of the obstacle displayed in the camera image.

Zooming in on the screen

Zooming in on the screen can be done if the image on the screen is too small and hard to see.

Touch the area that you want to zoom in on the panoramic view.

Screen display



- The selected area is zoomed in on.
- You can zoom in on either the area in front of the vehicle or the area behind it in panoramic view.
- To cancel the zoom, touch the screen again.

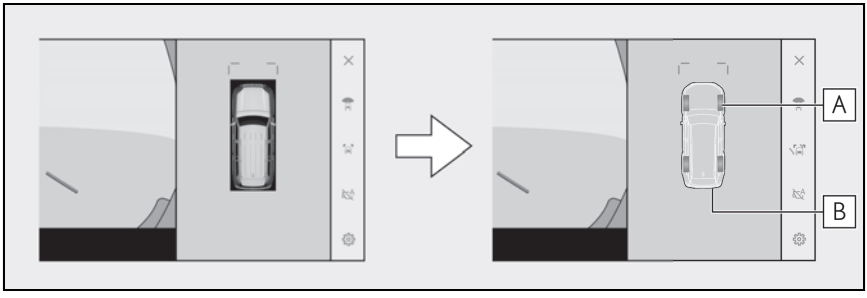
Zooming in on the screen

- The zoom feature is enabled when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle speed is below 12 km/h (7 mph).
  - The Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263) is turned on
- In any of the following situations, the zoom feature will be canceled automatically:
  - The vehicle speed is above 12 km/h (7 mph).
  - The Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned off
- The guide lines will not be displayed when the panoramic view is zoomed.

Displaying transparent underfloor vision

A composite of camera vision captured in the past from the current vehicle position to assist understanding of the situation under the vehicle, tire positions, and so on can be displayed. The vision is displayed in panoramic view, side clearance view, or cornering view.

Screen display



A Tire tracks

Displays the tire position guides linked to the steering wheel.

B Vehicle guide lines

Displays the exterior of the vehicle.

Transparent underfloor vision

- Transparent underfloor vision is displayed when the setting on the customized setting screen is turned on and the vehicle is moving forward or backward.
- Transparent underfloor vision is not displayed in the following cases:
  - The vehicle speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph).
  - The vehicle stops and a certain amount of time passes.
  - If the vehicle does not move a certain distance after it is started.
  - The side mirrors are folded.
  - ABS is operating.
  - The system is not functioning correctly.
- The system may not function correctly in the following situations:
  - Snow covered roads.
  - There are shadows from lights and so forth.
  - There is dirt or a foreign object on the camera lens.
  - Water (river, sea, etc.).
  - Optional equipment has been installed.
  - There is an obstacle in front of the camera.
  - The tires were replaced.
  - The back door is open and the camera is not in the correct position.
  - The road surface is slippery or the wheels slip.
  - The vehicle is on a hill or other steep roads.
- As vision that was captured in the past is being displayed, the screen and the actual situation may differ in the following cases:
  - An obstacle appears or moves after vision is captured.
  - Sand or snow crumbles and moves after vision is captured.
  - Mud or puddles are in the display range.
  - When the vehicle slips.
- Part or all of the transparent underfloor vision may appear black in the following cases:
  - The vehicle starts moving with no captured vision.

- The steering wheel is turned more than a certain angle.
- The vehicle stops and a certain amount of time passes.

WARNING

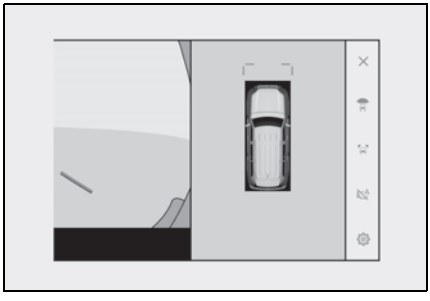
■ Transparent underfloor vision

- The tire and vehicle guide lines may not align correctly with the actual vehicle position due to the number of passengers, vehicle load, road gradient, road surface conditions, brightness of the surroundings, optional equipment, tire replacements, and other reasons. Always make sure to check your surroundings while you are driving.
- Displayed vision is vision that was captured in the past. Therefore, if obstacles and other objects move after being captured, the transparent underfloor vision and the actual situation may not always match.

Changing the Multi-terrain Monitor settings

Settings related to Multi-terrain Monitor such as the cornering view auto display and vehicle body color can be changed.

1 Touch the .



2 Select the desired item.

● Cornering view

Automatically display the cornering view.

● View Under Vehicle

Turn the transparent underfloor vision display setting on or off. Setting it to on and moving the vehicle forward or backwards displays a composite of camera vision captured in the past from the current vehicle position to assist understanding of the situation under the vehicle, front tire positions, and so on. The vision is displayed in panoramic view, side clearance view, or cornering view.

● Lexus Park Assist 3D Display

Show or hide the Lexus parking assist-sensor 3D display.

● Lexus Park Assist Distance

Change the distance that the Lexus parking assist-sensor starts detecting obstacles.

● Vehicle Body Color

Change the vehicle body color displayed on the screen.

■ Suspension of the settings display

For safety purposes, you cannot display the custom settings screen while the vehicle is moving.

When using the Multi-terrain Monitor

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in an unexpected accident. Also, when driving, make sure to directly confirm the

safety of your surroundings and the area to the rear of the vehicle.

WARNING

■ Conditions under which the Multi-terrain Monitor should not be used

Do not use the Multi-terrain Monitor in the following situations. The system may not operate properly, resulting in an unexpected accident.

- On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow
- When using tire chains or emergency tires
- When the front door(s) or back door are not closed completely
- On roads that are not flat, such as hills
- If the tires of a size other than specified by Lexus are installed
- If the suspension has been modified
- If a non-Lexus product is installed on the area displayed on the screen

■ Guide lines

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, cargo weight, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, etc. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

NOTICE

■ Panoramic view

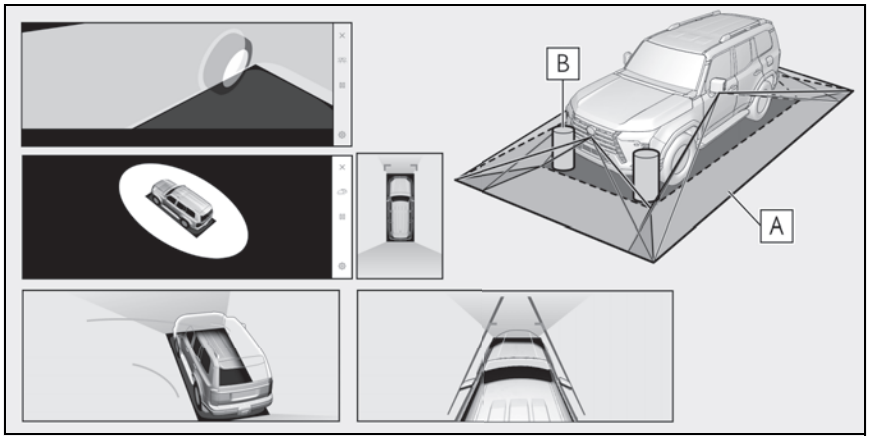
- See-through view, moving view, panoramic view, side clearance view, and cornering view produce an image that is a composite of images captured by the front camera, rear camera, and side cameras. As there is a limit to the displayable range and content, make sure you fully understand the features of the panoramic view monitor before you use it.
- The four corners of the see-through view, moving view, panoramic view, side clearance view, and cornering view have a video composition processing region centered on borders of the cameras, and image clarity may decline. However this is not a fault.
- Depending on lighting conditions near each camera, bright and dark patches may appear on the see-through view, moving view, panoramic view, side clearance view, and cornering view.
- See-through view, moving view, panoramic view, side clearance view, and cornering view does not extend higher than the installation position and image capture range of each camera.
- There are blind spots around the vehicle and as such there are regions not displayed on the panoramic view monitor.
- Three-dimensional objects displayed in wide front view, rear view, wide rear view or side view may not be displayed in see-through view, moving view, panoramic view, side clearance view, and cornering view.

NOTICE

- People and other three-dimensional obstacles may appear differently when displayed on the panoramic view monitor. (These differences include cases in which displayed objects appear to have fallen over, disappear near image processing regions, appear from video composition processing areas, or when the actual distance to an object differs from the displayed position.)
- When the back door, which is equipped with the rear camera, or front doors, which are equipped with side mirrors that have the built-in side cameras, are open, images will not be displayed properly on the panoramic view monitor.
- The vehicle icon displayed in see-through view, moving view, panoramic view, side clearance view, and cornering view is a computer generated image, so the color, shape and size will differ from the actual vehicle. Therefore, nearby three-dimensional objects may appear to be touching the vehicle, and actual distances to three-dimensional objects may differ from those displayed.

Area displayed on the screen

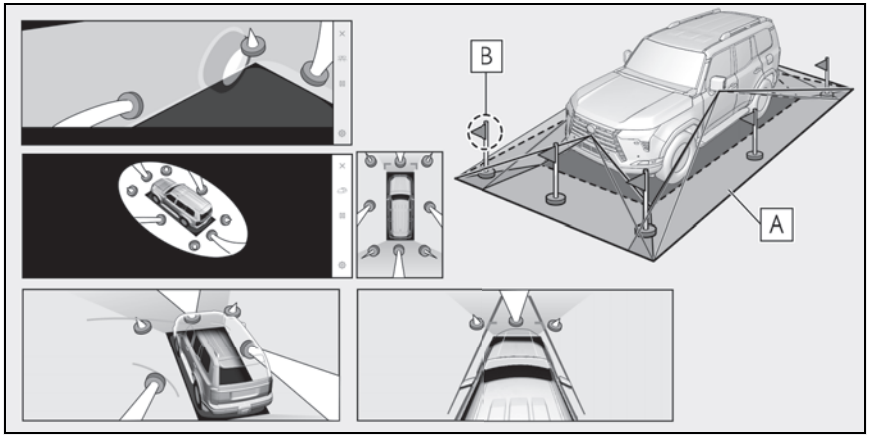
There are blind spots around the vehicle and as such there are regions not displayed on the screen. Even if nothing around the vehicle is displayed on the screen, there may actually be obstacles on the road, which you may collide with. Always make sure to visually check your surroundings.



A Area displayed on the screen

B Objects not displayed on the screen

Objects in the black areas do not appear on the screen.



A Area displayed on the screen

B Parts of objects not displayed on the screen

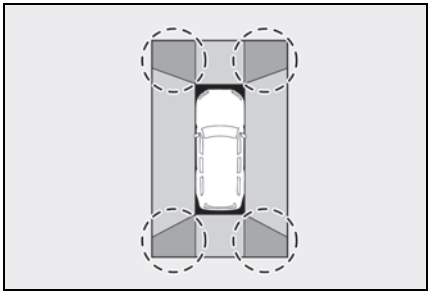
Parts higher than the road do not appear on the screen.

■ **Area displayed on screen**

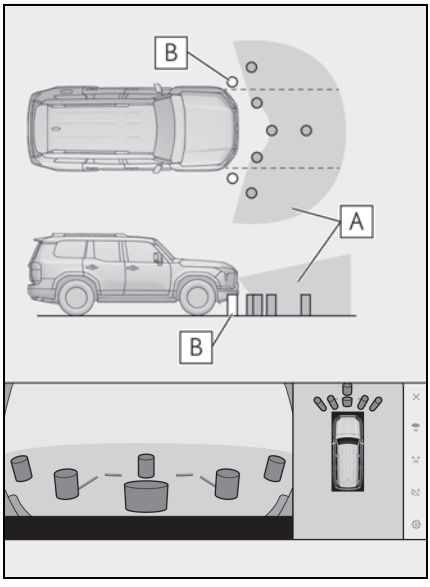
- The black parts around the vehicle icon are not displayed by the camera. Visually check those areas.
- As the images are obtained from four cameras are processed and displayed on the standard of a flat road surface, see-through view, moving view, panoramic view (including zoomed display), side clearance view, and cornering view may be displayed as follows:
  - Objects may look collapsed; thinner or bigger than usual.
  - An object with a higher position than the

road surface may look further away than it actually is or may not appear at all.
- Tall objects may appear protruding from the non-displayed areas of the image.

- Variations in the brightness of the image may appear for every camera due to lighting conditions.
- The displayed image may be misaligned due to inclination of the vehicle body or change in vehicle height caused by the number of passengers, vehicle load, and quantity of fuel.
- If the doors are not completely closed, the image and the guide lines may not be displayed correctly.
- The positional relationship of the road surface and objects with the vehicle icon displayed on see-through view, moving view, panoramic view (including zoomed display), side clearance view, and cornering view may differ to the actual positions.
- Light from a back-lit license plate may appear on the screen.
- Images indicated by ◌ in the figure are a composite, and hence some areas may be difficult to see.



■ Wide front view



A Area displayed on the screen

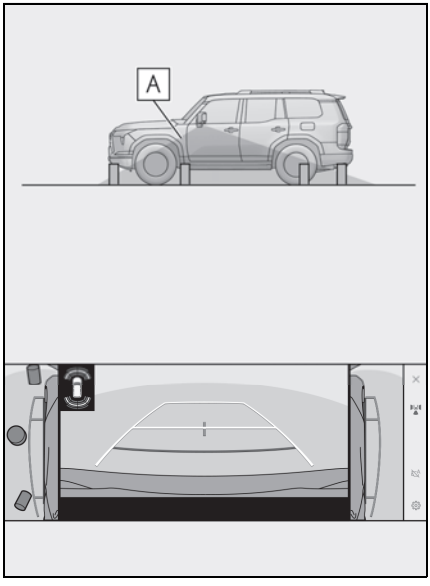
B Objects not displayed on the screen

Areas close to both corners of the bumpers will not appear on the screen.

■ Display range

- The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be displayed on the screen.
- The depth perception of the image displayed on the screen differs to the actual distance.
- The wide front view camera uses a special lens, so the depth perception of the image displayed on the screen differs to the actual distance.

▶ Side view & Rear view (when the side mirrors are folded)

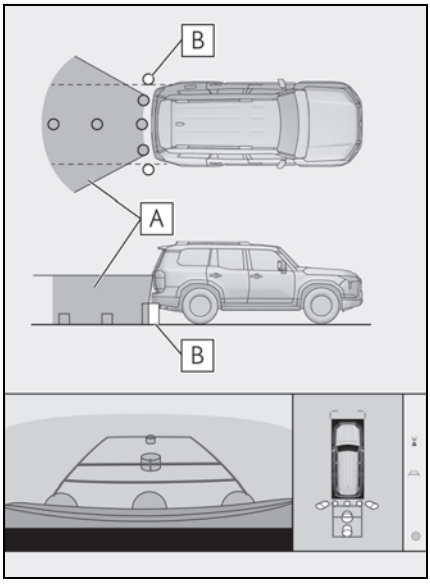


A Area displayed on the screen

■ Display range

- The range that is displayed on the screen may differ due to the state of the vehicle and road surface.
- The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects that are close to the bumper on the passenger's side or under the bumper cannot be displayed on the screen.
- The depth perception of the image displayed on the screen differs to the actual distance.
- The cameras on side view & rear view use a special lens, so the depth perception of the image displayed on the screen differs to the actual distance.

▶ Rear view

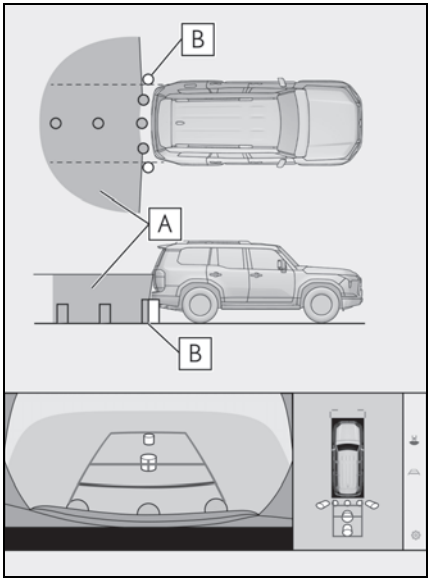


A Area displayed on the screen

B Objects not displayed on the screen

Areas close to both corners of the bumpers will not appear on the screen.

▶ Wide rear view



A Area displayed on the screen

B Objects not displayed on the screen

Areas close to both corners of the bumpers will not appear on the screen.

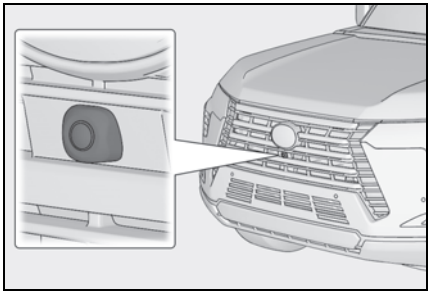
■ Display range

- The range that is displayed on the screen may differ due to the state of the vehicle and road surface.
- The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be displayed on the screen.
- The depth perception of the image displayed on the screen differs to the actual distance.
- The rear view and wide rear view cameras use a special lens, so the depth perception of the image displayed on the screen differs to the actual distance.
- Objects that are higher than the rear camera may not appear in the monitor.
- Light from a back-lit license plate may appear on the screen.

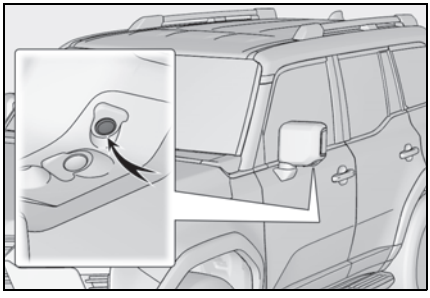
Camera position

The Multi-terrain Monitor cameras are in the locations shown in the figures.

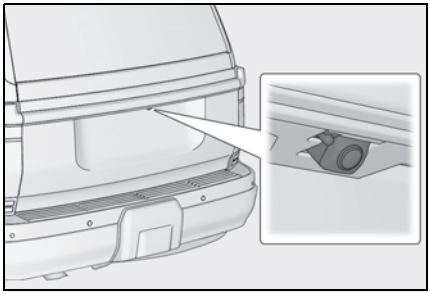
■ Front camera



■ Side cameras



■ Rear camera



Cleaning the camera

If dirt or foreign matter, such as water

droplets, snow, or mud, has stuck to the camera, you will not be able to see the image clearly. If that happens, splash the camera with a large amount of water and then wipe the camera lens clean with a soft, damp cloth.

Rear camera: Dirt on the camera lens can be cleaned by operating the dedicated camera cleaning washer. (if equipped) (→P.205)

NOTICE

■ How to use the cameras

● The Multi-terrain Monitor may stop functioning correctly. Take note of the following items:

- Do not hit or apply a forceful impact on the camera. Doing so may change the position and mounting angle of the camera.
- The camera is designed to be waterproof. Do not detach, disassemble, or modify it.
- When washing the camera lens, splash the camera with a large amount of water and then wipe the camera lens clean with a soft, damp cloth. Rubbing the camera lens forcibly may scratch the camera lens and you may no longer be able to see images clearly.
- The camera cover is made of resin. Do not allow an organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner, or glass coating to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off immediately.
- Do not pour hot water on the vehicle in cold weather or apply other rapid changes of temperature.
- If you wash the vehicle with a high pressure car washer, do not point the hose directly at the camera or camera area. Applying strong water pressure may result in the camera malfunctioning.

● If the camera is hit, it may cause a camera malfunction. If this happens, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Cleaning the rear camera with washer fluid

Dirt on the rear camera lens can be cleaned by operating the dedicated camera cleaning washer.

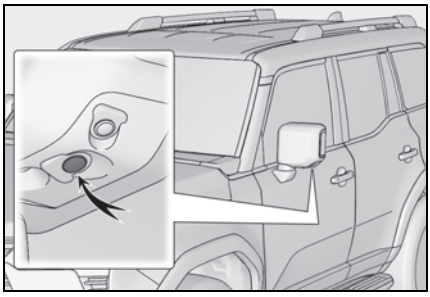
- When cleaning the camera, it may be difficult to see the image due to the washer fluid. When backing up, be sure to visually check all around the vehicle both directly and using the mirrors before proceeding.
- If washer fluid remains on the camera lens surface after cleaning, the image may be difficult to see at night due to the height or inclination of the headlights of the vehicle behind.
- Some dirts may not be removed completely after cleaning. In this case, rinse the camera lens with a large quantity of water and then wipe it clean with a soft cloth dampened with water.
- Washer fluid is sprayed onto the camera lens surface. Therefore, the ice, snow, etc. adhering around the camera cannot be removed.

NOTICE

- If there is a sufficient amount of washer fluid but it does not spray out, check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.
- When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.
- When a nozzle becomes blocked, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle would be damaged.
- Some foreign matters may not be removed completely after cleaning. In this case, rinse the rear camera lens with a large quantity of water and then wipe it clean with a soft cloth dampened with water. Do not strongly rub the rear camera lens, as it may be scratched and will not be able to transmit a clear image.
- Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear camera lens surface. Therefore, the ice, snow, etc. adhering around the rear camera such as the garnish cannot be removed.
- Use fluids that are appropriate to the outside temperatures, in order to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.
- When washing the vehicle, do not let water from the high-pressure washer directly hit the nozzle. Due to the shock from the high pressure water, it is possible that the device may not operate normally. Also, the water may enter the nozzle injection opening and freeze. It causes the washer fluid not to spray properly.
- Do not subject the nozzle to sudden change of temperature such as by pouring hot water into the nozzle under the cold weather.
- The washer fluid will need to be replaced more often when the rear camera cleaner system is frequently used. Because the washer reservoir is shared with the windshield washer.
- Do not strike or hit the nozzle or subject it to a strong impact, as the nozzle installation position and angle may be changed.
- When the vehicle got strong vibration, it may be difficult to see the image due to the washer fluid drop from the nozzle.
- The display screen and placement position of the washer switch may differ depending on the type of screen and system.
- When the washer switch is pressed and held, washer fluid is sprayed while the switch is pressed.
- When activate rear camera washer, it also activate rear windows shield washer simultaneously.
- When cleaning the rear camera, it may be difficult to see the image due to the washer fluid. In this case, directly check the surroundings of the vehicle.
- If washer fluid remains on the rear camera lens surface after cleaning. Then the image may be difficult to see at night due to the height or inclination of the headlights of the vehicle behind.

Parking assist lights

The parking assist lights of the Multi-terrain Monitor system are installed in the locations shown in the figure.



NOTICE

■ Parking assist lights

● Make sure to observe the following precautions, otherwise the Multi-terrain Monitor system may not operate correctly:

- Do not apply excessive force to a light or subject it to a strong impact. Doing so may cause the position or installation angle of the light to deviate.
- Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the lights as they have a waterproof construction.
- When cleaning the lights, wash them with a large amount of water, and then wipe them with a soft wet cloth.
- Do not apply organic solvents, waxes, oil removing solvents, glass coatings, etc. to the covers of the lights, as they are made of resin. If such is applied, remove it immediately.
- Do not expose the lights to sudden temperature changes, such as applying hot water to them when it is cold.
- When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure washer, do not spray water directly on the lights or their surrounding area. High-pressure water can damage the lights and cause them to not operate correctly.

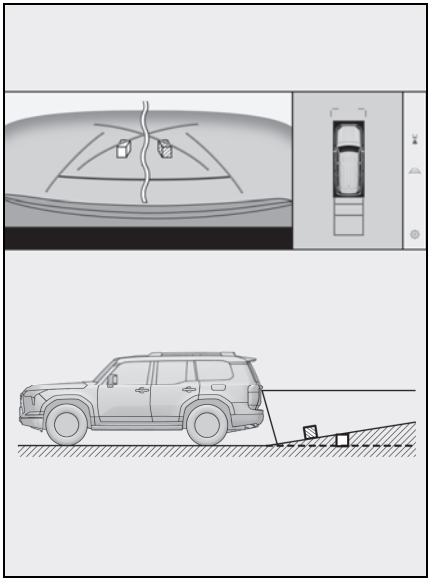
● If a light has been subjected to a strong impact, it may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Difference between the screen and the actual road

The composite images on the Multi-terrain Monitor and guide lines give a distance guide for flat road surfaces. Therefore, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance and course on the road.

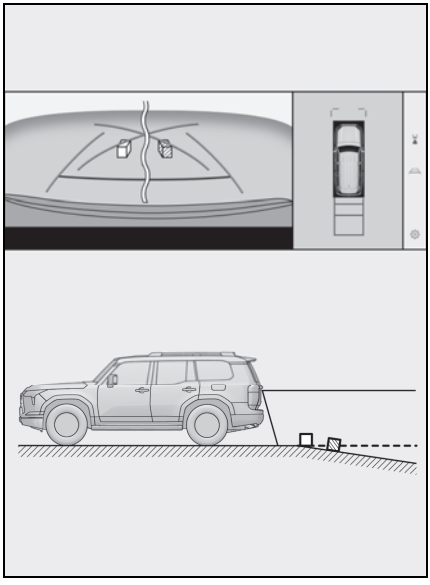
When the ground behind the vehicle slopes up sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be closer to the vehicle than the actual distance. Thus, objects on up-slopes will appear to be farther away than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guidelines and the actual distance and course on the road.



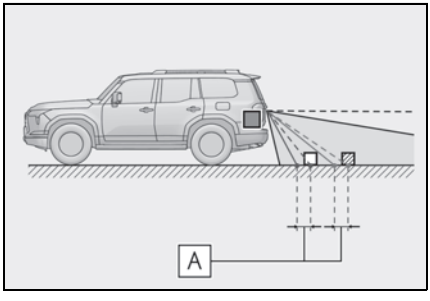
When the ground behind the vehicle slopes down sharply

The distance guide lines will appear to be farther from the vehicle than the actual distance. Because of this, objects will appear to be closer than they actually are. In the same way, there will be a margin of error between the guide lines and the actual distance/course on the road.



When any part of the vehicle sags

When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the guide lines on the screen and the actual distance and course on the road.

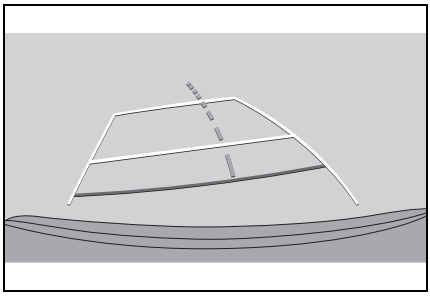


A Margin of error

Estimated course center line

As the guide lines are shown midair

near the position above the rear bumper, there are times that they may look like they are off-center.



Differences between the screen and actual 3D objects

Since the guide lines displayed on the screen are for a flat road surface, it is not possible to determine the position of three-dimensional objects. When approaching a three-dimensional object that extends outward (such as the flatbed of a truck), take note of the following cautions.

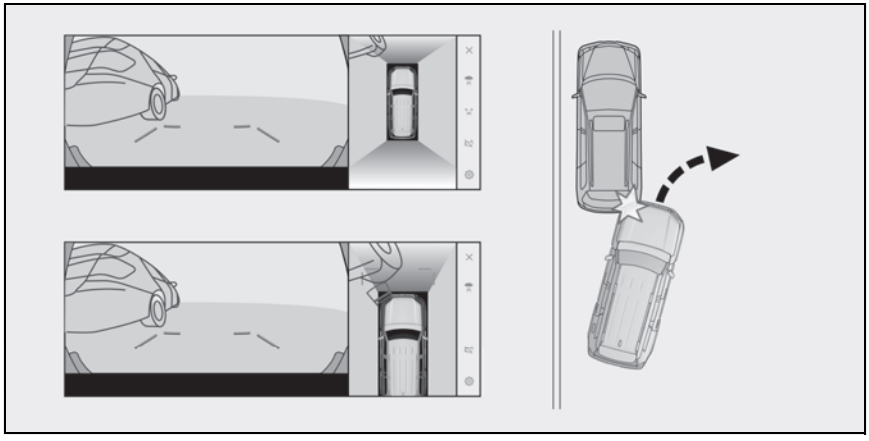
WARNING

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor pop-up display

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor display is red, make sure to visually check before moving the vehicle any further. There is the danger that you may collide with another vehicle or have some other unforeseen accident.

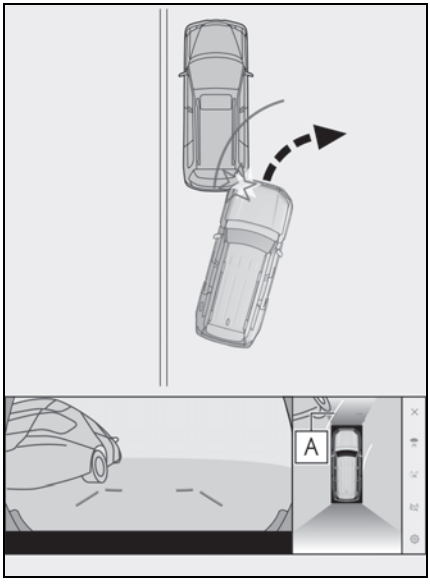
Displaying panoramic view (including zoom display)

On the screen, it appears that there is a gap between the vehicle's bumper and another object or vehicle, and it does not look as if the vehicle will collide with the object or vehicle. However, the vehicle is over the course lines, so the vehicle may collide with the object or vehicle. Make sure to visually check your surroundings.



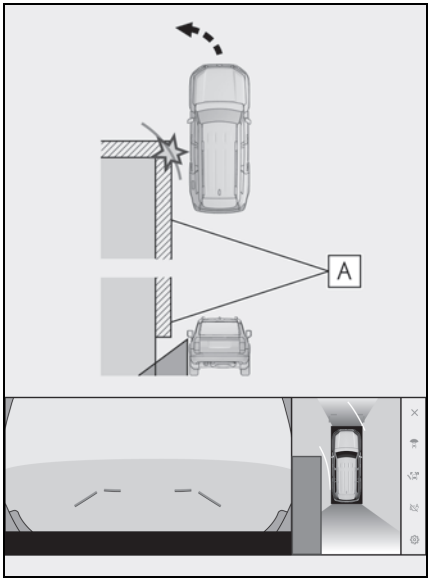
Estimated course lines

- On the screen, it appears that the vehicle's bumper is outside of the estimated course lines, and it does not look as if the vehicle will collide with the object or vehicle. However, the vehicle is over the course lines, so the vehicle may collide with the object or vehicle. Make sure to visually check your surroundings.



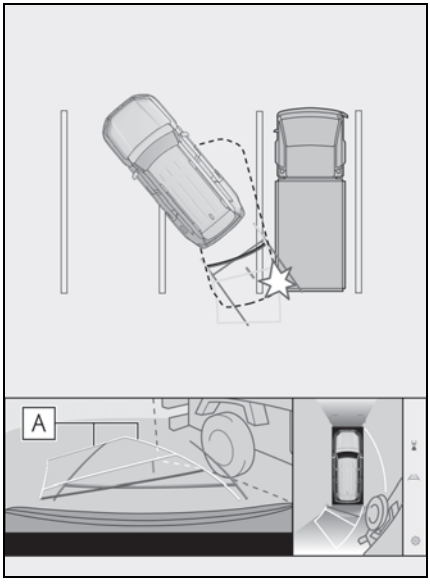
A Estimated course lines

- Three-dimensional objects in high positions (such as the overhang of a wall or loading platform of a truck) may not appear on the screen. Make sure to visually check your surroundings.



A Overhang of a wall

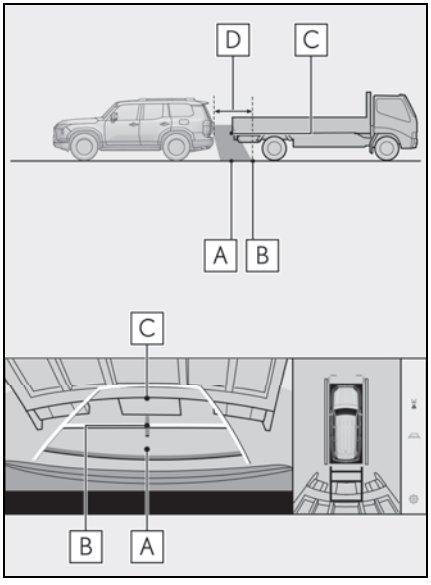
- On the screen, a truck flatbed may appear to be outside of the estimated course lines and the vehicle does not look as if it will collide with the truck. However, the flatbed may actually cross over the estimated course lines and if you reverse as guided by the estimated course lines, the vehicle may hit the truck. Make sure to visually check your surroundings.



A Estimated course lines

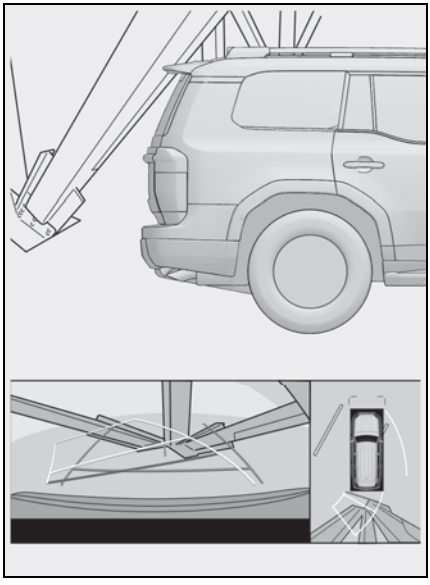
Distance guide lines

On the screen, the distance guide lines shows that a truck is parking at point B . However, in reality if you reverse to point A , you will collide with the truck. On the screen, it appears that point A is closest followed by points B and C . However, in reality, the distance to points A and C is the same, and point B is farther than A and C . Make sure to visually check behind you and your surroundings. The distance to point D is about 1 m (3 ft.).



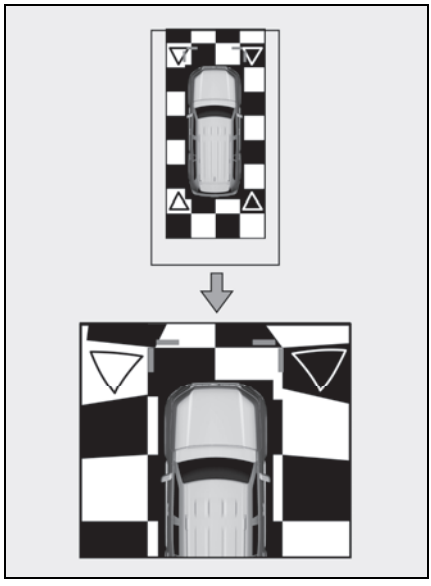
Overhang of a diagonal beam

In panoramic view, a diagonal beam may appear straight and seems likely not to be struck, however, since the top part of the beam is actually overhanging, the vehicle may hit it. Make sure to visually check the rear and surroundings.



Magnifying function

Unlike the normal panoramic view, the panoramic view magnifying function zooms in on the vehicle icon. Therefore, white lines on the road, walls, and other objects may look bent.



Under vehicle terrain view

The tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines may differ from actual vehicle positions depending on the number of passengers, weight of the load, road grade, road surface conditions, brightness of the surrounding environment, etc. Always drive the vehicle while directly confirming the safety of your surroundings

■ Using under vehicle terrain view

- The images displayed were previously taken behind the current vehicle position. Therefore, actual conditions may differ from those shown on the screen in the following situations.
  - When conditions changed such as when an object moved or entered the frame after the image was taken.
  - Loose material like sand or snow has crumbled or shifted
  - An obstacle has moved
  - There is a puddle, tract of mud, etc., within the display range
  - The vehicle slips
- In the following situations, actual tire positions and vehicle position may differ from those indicated by the tire position indicator lines and vehicle position indicator lines.
  - Tires have been replaced
  - Optional equipment has been installed

WARNING

■ Guide lines

The displayed guide lines are composed with the image that was previously taken and may differ from the actual state. Always drive the vehicle while confirming the safety of your surroundings.

Things you should know

If you notice any symptoms

If you notice or are troubled by any of the symptoms below, check the issue again referring to the likely cause and solution.

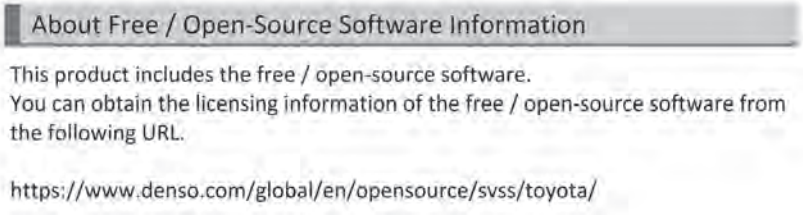
If the symptom is not resolved by the solution, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The screen is difficult to see	• The vehicle is in a dark area or it is night. • The temperature around the lens is either high or low • The outside temperature is low • There are water droplets on the camera • It is raining or humid • Foreign matter (mud, etc.) is stuck to the camera • Sunlight or headlights are shining directly into the camera • The vehicle is under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights, etc.	Visually check the vehicle's surroundings while you are driving. Use the Multi-terrain Monitor again once the camera and conditions have improved. The procedure for adjusting the picture quality of the Multi-terrain Monitor system is the same as the procedure for adjusting the screen display. Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".
The image is blurry	Dirt or foreign matter, such as water droplets, snow, or mud, has stuck to the camera lens.	Splash the camera with a large amount of water and then wipe the camera lens clean with a soft, damp cloth. Rear camera: Operate the dedicated camera cleaning washer and clean the camera lens. (→P.205)
The screen is misaligned	The camera has received a strong impact.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The guide lines are significantly misaligned	The camera position is misaligned.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
	• The vehicle is tilted. (There is a heavy load on the vehicle, tire pressure is low due to a tire puncture, etc.) • The vehicle is on an incline.	Visually check the vehicle's surroundings while you are driving.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
The estimated course lines move even though the steering wheel is straight (the vehicle width guide lines and estimated course lines are out of alignment).	There is a malfunction in the signals being output by the steering sensor.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The guide lines are not displayed	The back door is open.	Close the back door. If this does not resolve the symptom, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The panoramic view display cannot be enlarged. The see-through view/moving view, side clearance view, and cornering view cannot be displayed.	The Lexus parking assist-sensor may be malfunctioning or dirty.	Follow the correction procedures for malfunctions of the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.263)
Washer fluid dose not spray out.	When the washer fluid reservoir is empty.	Replenish washer fluid.
	When a nozzle becomes blocked.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
	When washer fluid is frozen.	Use washer fluids that are appropriate to the outside temperatures.
	The back door is open.	Close the back door.
	Washer fluid is not filled into the washer path hose due to no operation for an extended period of time.	Operate the rear camera washer several times.

Symptom	Likely cause	Solution
Rear camera image is difficult to see.	Foreign matters (such as water droplets, mud, snow and snow melting agents.) is on the camera lens.	Rinse the camera with a large quantity of water, wipe it clean with a soft cloth dampened with water.
	Foreign matters (such as Ice, snow and mud) is attached to surrounding parts of the camera lens.	Remove foreign matters.
The washer switch does not respond.	The panoramic view monitor is malfunctioning.	Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

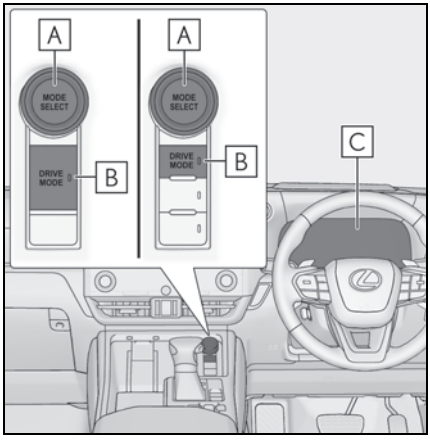
Information about free/open source software



Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

System components



A MODE SELECT switch

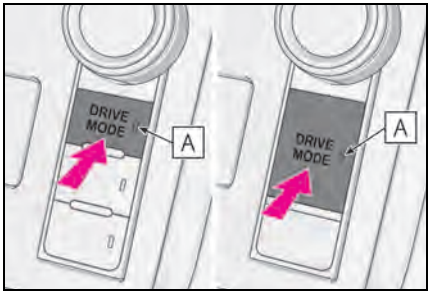
B DRIVE MODE switch

C Multi-information display (→P.74)

Selecting the driving mode

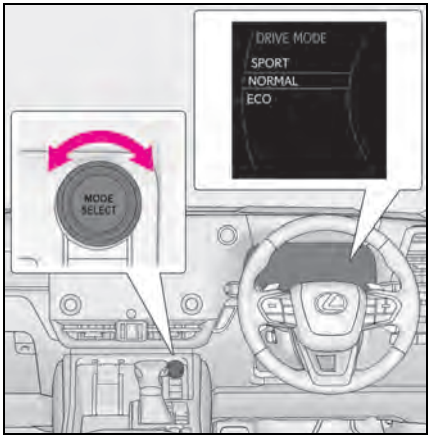
1 Press the DRIVE MODE switch.

The indicator A on the switch will turn on.



2 Select the driving modes on the multi-information display while turning the MODE SELECT switch left and right.

▶ Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension system



- Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

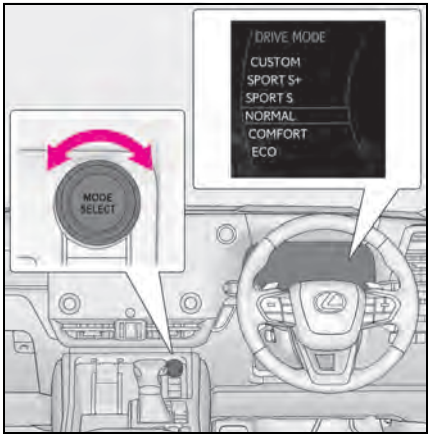
- Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling). The Eco drive mode indicator comes on.

- Sport mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the transmission, engine and steering. Suitable for when precise handling is desirable, for example when driving on mountain roads. The sport mode indicator comes on.

▶ Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system



• Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

• Comfort mode

By controlling the suspension, riding comfort is further enhanced. Suitable for city driving. The comfort mode indicator comes on.

• Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling). The Eco drive mode indicator comes on.

• SPORT S mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the transmission. This mode is suitable for when powerful acceleration is desired. The SPORT S mode indicator comes on.

• SPORT S+ mode

Helps to ensure the controllability and stability of the vehicle by integrally controlling the steering wheel and suspensions as well as the transmission and engine, making it suitable for sporty driving. The SPORT S+ mode indicator comes on.

• Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the power train, steering wheel, suspensions and air conditioning system functions set to your preferred settings. Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of center display. (→P.516) The custom mode indicator comes on.

■ The driving mode select switch can be operated when

The four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

● Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.385)

● Adjust the fan speed (→P.384)

● Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.355)

■ Automatic deactivation of driving mode

Driving mode is deactivated and the driving mode will be changed to normal mode in the following conditions:

▶ When Sport mode, SPORT S mode, SPORT S+ mode or custom mode is selected

● After turning the engine switch off and then turning it to ON.

● When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

● When the Multi-terrain Select (if equipped) is turned on

● When the “REMOLQUE” mode is turned on

▶ When Eco drive mode or comfort mode is selected

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4
- When the Multi-terrain Select (if equipped) is turned on
- When the "REMOLQUE" mode is turned on

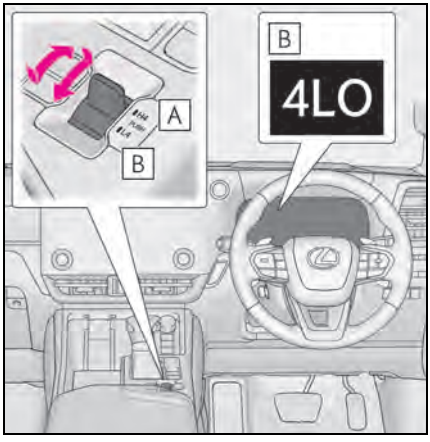
■ **Customization (vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system)**

The custom mode can be changed. (Customizable features:→P.516)

Four-wheel drive system

Use the four-wheel drive control switch and center differential lock switch to select the following transfer and center differential modes.

Four-wheel drive control switch



A H4 (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

B L4 (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and hard pulling in sand or mud, etc.

The low speed four-wheel drive indicator will come on.

Shifting between H4 and L4

■ **Shifting from H4 to L4**

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

3 Push and turn the four-wheel drive control switch counterclockwise.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on.

■ Shifting from L4 to H4

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

3 Push and turn the four-wheel drive control switch clockwise.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns off.

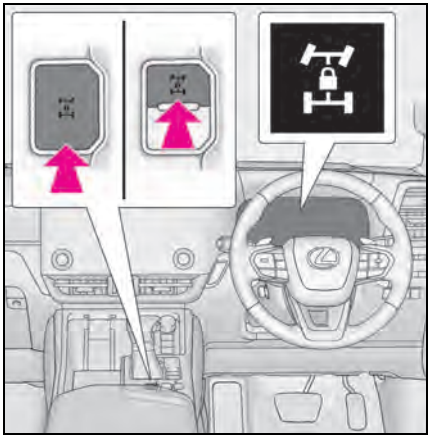
Center differential lock switch

Lock the center differential when your vehicle's wheels get stuck in a ditch or when driving on a slippery or bumpy surface.

The center differential lock indicator will come on.

To unlock the center differential, push the switch again.

Unlock the center differential after the wheels have been freed, or after moving to a flat, non-slippery surface.



■ The four-wheel drive control switch can be operated when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The shift lever is in N.
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

■ The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light

The indicator light blinks while shifting between "H4" and "L4".

■ Advice for driving on slippery roads

- If you shift the four-wheel drive control switch to L4 and the shift lever to the 2 range of M while driving in steep off-road areas, the output of the brake can be controlled effectively by the Active TRC, which assists the driver to control the driving power of 4 wheels.
- Use the 1 range of M of the shift lever for maximum power and traction when your wheels get stuck or when driving down a steep incline.

■ The center differential lock indicator

The indicator blinks while locking/unlocking the center differential.

■ The center differential lock switch can be operated when

- The engine switch is in ON.
- The vehicle speed is less than 100 km/h (62 mph).

■ Locking/unlocking the center differential

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 with the center differential locked, VSC is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and VSC OFF indicator lights come on.)
- If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not turn off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
- If the center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the

cruise control system is on, cancel the cruise control system.

■ **If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator blinks**

- If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light continues to blink when using the four-wheel drive control switch, stop the vehicle completely, move the shift lever to N and then operate the switch again.
- If the engine is started when the outside temperature is low, the four-wheel drive control switch may not be shifted between "H4" and "L4", as the automatic transmission fluid temperature is low. In this case, follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display and operate the switch again after warming up the engine.

If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator continues to blink even after attempting the above, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to shift between H4 and L4, and the center differential lock may not be operable. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

WARNING

■ **While driving**

Never move the four-wheel drive control switch if the wheels have lost traction. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the vehicle is parked**

If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)

Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the shift lever is in P. You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the center differential**

- For normal driving on dry and hard surface roads, unlock the center differential.
- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the slippery or bumpy surface.
- Do not push the center differential lock switch when the vehicle is turning or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

Rear differential lock system*

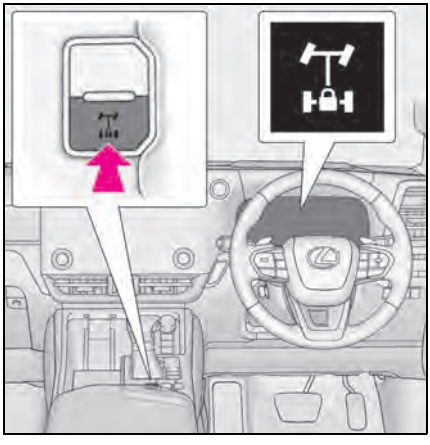
*: If equipped

Use the rear differential lock system only when wheel spinning occurs in a ditch or on a slippery or ragged surface. This system is effective in case one of the rear wheels is spinning.

Rear differential lock switch

Press the switch to turn the system on/off.

At this time, the rear differential lock indicator and indicator in the differential lock/unlock display will blink. Wait a few seconds for the system to complete operation. After the rear differential is locked, the indicators will stop blinking and remain on.
To unlock the rear differential, push the switch again.



■ **Operating tips**

First turn the four-wheel drive control switch to "L4" with the center differential locked to see if you can move forward. If this does not work, use the rear differential lock system also.

- Be sure to stop the wheels before locking the differential.
- Unlock the differential as soon as the vehicle moves out.

■ **Unlocking the rear differential**

If the rear differential lock indicator still flashes even after unlocking the rear differential, check the safety of the surrounding area and slightly turn the steering wheel in either direction while the vehicle is in motion.

■ **Automatic unlocking feature**

The differential will unlock if any of the following conditions are met:

- Turn off the engine switch.
- Shifting the four-wheel drive control switch to "H4".
- Unlock the center differential.

■ **After unlocking the rear differential**

Check that the indicators go off.

■ **The rear differential lock indicator and indicator in the differential lock/unlock display**

- The indicators blink while locking/unlocking the rear differential.
- If the indicators continue to blink when you operate the rear differential lock switch, check the safety of the surrounding area and turn the steering wheel in either direction while the vehicle is in motion.

If the indicators continue to blink even if doing so, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. There may be a trouble in the four-wheel drive system.

■ **Locking the rear differential**

The following systems do not operate when the rear differential is locked.

- ABS

- Brake assist system
- VSC
- Downhill assist control system
- Active TRC

WARNING

■ When using the rear differential lock system

Failure to observe the following precautions may result in an accident.

- Do not lock the rear differential in the conditions other than above.
- Do not lock the rear differential until the wheels have stopped spinning.
- Do not drive over 8 km/h (5 mph) when the differential is locked.
- After using the rear differential lock system, turn the switch off immediately and do not keep driving with the rear differential locked.

Crawl Control*

*: If equipped

Allows travel on extremely rough off-road surfaces at a fixed low speed without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. Minimizes loss of traction or vehicle slip when driving on slippery road surfaces, allowing for stable driving.

WARNING

■ When using Crawl Control

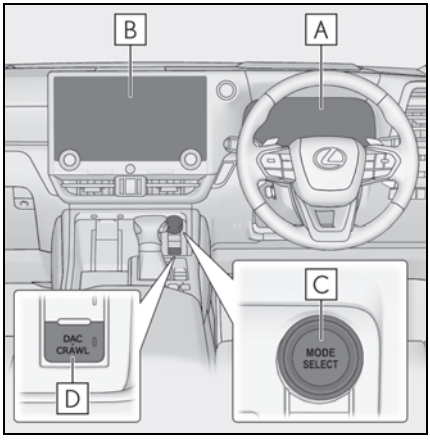
Do not rely solely on the Crawl Control. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

■ These conditions may cause the system not to operate properly

When driving on the following surfaces, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident:

- Extremely steep inclines.
- Extremely uneven surfaces.
- Snow-covered roads, or other slippery surfaces.

System components



A Meter (→P.64)

B Center display (→P.81)

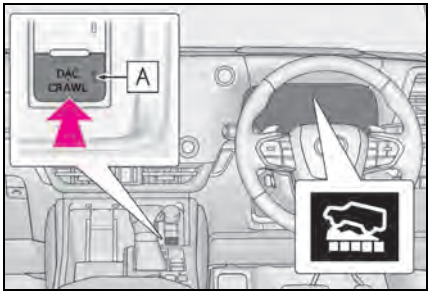
C MODE SELECT switch

D DAC/CRAWL switch

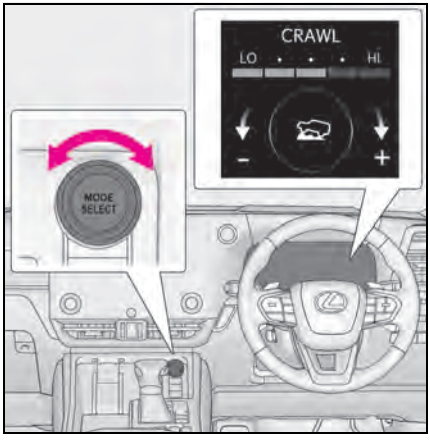
Turning Crawl Control on

1 Press the DAC/CRAWL switch.

The indicator light A and the Crawl Control indicator on the meter will come on, and the slip indicator light will flash.

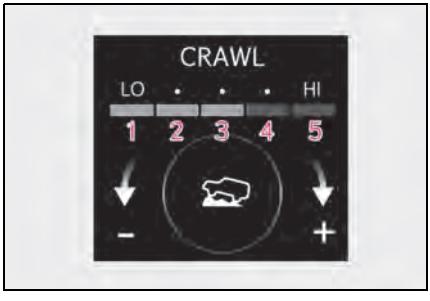


2 Turn the MODE SELSCT switch left or right to select a mode on the multi-information display.



Selectable modes

A mode which matches the road conditions can be selected from among the following 5 modes.



1 Lo

Suitable for driving on rocky roads or decline

2 Lo-Mid

Suitable for driving on rocky roads, decline or bumpy incline

3 Mid

Suitable for driving on bumpy inclines

4 Mid-Hi

Suitable for driving on bumpy inclines, debris roads, snow-covered roads, muddy roads, gravel roads and grass roads

5 Hi

Suitable for driving on bumpy inclines, debris roads, snow-covered roads, muddy roads, gravel roads and grass roads

Turning Crawl Control off

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator illuminates

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again.

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator does not illuminate

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch to turn the indicator on. Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again with the indicator turned on.

If Crawl Control is turned off, the Crawl Control indicator and slip indicator will go off and a message stating that Crawl Control has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

When turning off Crawl Control while driving, drive extremely carefully.

■ Operation conditions of the Crawl Control

- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than P or N.
- The four-wheel drive control switch is in L4.
- The driver's door is closed.

■ Automatic system cancelation of Crawl Control

In the following situations, the buzzer will sound intermittently and Crawl Control will be canceled automatically. In this event, the Crawl Control indicator will flash and then go off, and a message stating that Crawl Control has been turned off will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds.

- When the shift lever is moved to P or N.
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.
- When the driver's door is opened.

■ Function limitations of Crawl Control

- In the following situations, brake control can be used to drive downhill at a constant speed. However, engine control is not available when driving uphill at a constant speed.
  - When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).
- In the following situation, engine control and brake control will stop temporarily. In this event, the Crawl Control indicator will flash.
  - With the rear differential is locked: when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).
  - With the rear differential is unlocked: When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 25 km/h (15 mph).

■ When the Crawl Control system is operated continuously

- If Crawl Control is used continuously for a long time, the brake system may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, a message stating a malfunction will be displayed on the multi-information display, and the Crawl Control indicator will flash and then go off. In this event, as Crawl Control will be temporarily inoperable, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place, and allow the brake system to cool down sufficiently until the message goes off. (In the meantime, normal driving is possible.)
- If Crawl Control is used continuously for a long time, the automatic transmission may overheat. In this case, a buzzer will sound, the system will be temporarily canceled, and a message stating a mal-

function may be displayed on the multi-information display. In this event, stop the vehicle in a safe place until the message goes off.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the Crawl Control system**

● A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in Crawl Control system.

● Either of the following conditions may occur when the Crawl Control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.

- Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
- A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on. (→P.474, 479)

Multi-terrain Select*

*: If equipped

Multi-terrain Select is a system that improves drivability in off-road situations.

Select a mode that most closely matches the type of terrain on which you are driving from several modes. Brake control, drive force control and suspension control can be optimized in accordance with the selected mode.

When AUTO mode is selected, brake control, drive force control and suspension control are optimized automatically according to the road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When using the Multi-terrain Select**

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

● Check that the selected mode indicators are illuminated before driving. Multi-terrain Select will not operate when the indicators are off.

● The road conditions listed (→P.365) are for reference only. There is a chance that the function may not be the most appropriate in terms of road conditions such as pitch, slipperiness, undulation, etc. Thoroughly check the road conditions before driving.

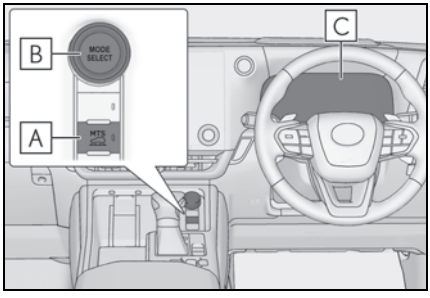
● Multi-terrain Select is not intended to expand the limits of the vehicle. Check the road conditions thoroughly beforehand, and drive safely and carefully.

NOTICE

■ Precaution for use

The Multi-terrain Select is intended for use during off-road driving. Do not use the system at any other time.

System components



A MTS switch

B MODE SELECT switch

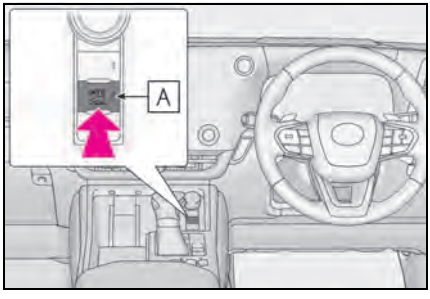
C Multi-information display

Selected mode is displayed.

Switching modes

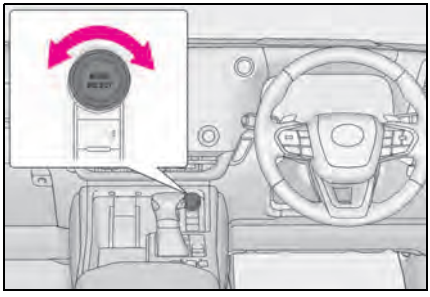
1 Press the MTS switch.

The indicator A on the switch will turn on.



2 Select the driving modes on the multi-information display while turning the MODE SELECT switch left and right.

Depending on the positions of the four-wheel drive control switch, a mode can be selected from among the following modes.



▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in L4

Mode		Road Conditions
	AUTO	Suitable for the road conditions
	SAND	Suitable for sandy roads
	MUD	Suitable for muddy roads
	ROCK	Suitable for rocky terrain

If the brake control has activated, the slip indicator light will flash.

▶ Four-wheel drive control switch is in H4

Mode		Road Conditions
	AUTO	Suitable for the road conditions
	DIRT	Suitable for dirt roads

Mode		Road Conditions
	SAND	Suitable for sandy roads
	MUD	Suitable for muddy roads
	DEEP SNOW	Suitable for deep snow roads

If the brake control has activated, the slip indicator light will flash.

When the vehicle is in SAND, MUD or DEEP SNOW mode, VSC is automatically turned off. (VSC OFF indicator light come on.)

■ Multi-terrain Select

Multi-terrain Select controls the vehicle so that it can maximize the drive force and improve drivability on rough roads. As a result, fuel efficiency may diminish when compared to driving in normal mode.

■ Automatic system cancelation

In the following situations, Multi-terrain Select will be canceled automatically.

- When the DRIVE MODE switch is pressed while the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.
- When the engine switch is turned off

■ AUTO mode

Estimates the road conditions where the vehicle is being driven and optimizes brake control, drive force control and suspension control.
The capability to estimate the road conditions is limited and there is a chance that the Multi-terrain Select may not be the most appropriate for road conditions such as pitch, slipperiness, undulation, etc.
In these cases, select the mode that matches the road conditions before driving.

■ Turning off Multi-terrain Select

Performing the following turns Multi-terrain Select off, and then the display on the multi-information display will disappear.

▶ When the MTS switch indicator is illuminated

Press the MTS switch while the system is in operation.

▶ When the MTS switch indicator is not illuminated

Press the MTS switch to turn the indicator on.

Press the MTS switch again with the Multi-terrain Select indicator illuminated.

■ When the vehicle is stuck

Switching the transfer and differential
For the operation of the following functions, refer to the following pages.

- Four-wheel drive system (→P.357)
- Center differential lock (→P.358)
- Rear differential lock* (→P.360)

*: If equipped

■ Driving in Multi-terrain Select

The following types of situations may occur, but they are not malfunctions.

- Vibrations may be felt throughout the vehicle or steering wheel.
- Operating noise may be heard from the engine compartment.

■ When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary

In the following situations, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- When the slip indicator light illuminates.
- When the indicator for each mode does not illuminate on the multi-information display even though Multi-terrain Select is selected.

Downhill assist control system*

*: If equipped

The downhill assist control system helps to prevent excessive speed on steep downhill slopes. The system will operate when the vehicle is traveling under 30 km/h (18 mph) with the accelerator and brake pedals released and the transfer mode is in H4.

WARNING

■ When using downhill assist control system

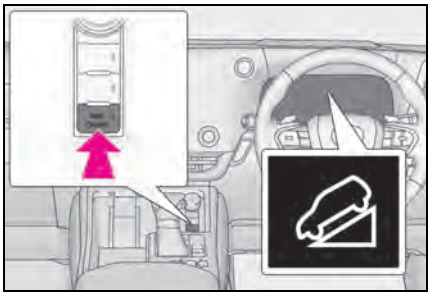
Do not rely overmuch on the downhill assist control system. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

System operation

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch.

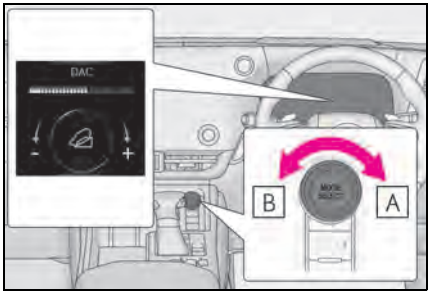
The downhill assist control system indicator will comes on and the system will operate.

When the system is in operation, the slip indicator will flash, and the stop lights/high mounted stop lights will be lit. A sound may also occur during the operation. This does not indicated a malfunction.



Setting the speed of the downhill assist control system

Turn the MODE SELECT switch to set the desired speed (Approximately 4 to 30 km/h (3 to 18 mph)). The set speed is displayed on the multi-information display.



A Increases the speed

B Decreases the speed

Turning off the system

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator illuminates

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch again.

▶ When the DAC/CRAWL switch indicator does not illuminate

Press the DAC/CRAWL switch to turn the indicator on. Press the

DAC/CRAWL switch again with the indicator turned on.

The downhill assist control system indicator will flash as the system gradually ceases operation, and will turn off when the system is fully off.

Operating tips

The system will operate when the shift lever is in a position other than P or N.

The system will not operate when

- The transfer mode is in L4.
- The rear differential is locked. (if equipped)

If the downhill assist control system indicator flashes

- In the following situations, the indicator flashes and the system will not operate:
  - The transfer mode is not in L4 or H4.
  - The rear differential is locked. (if equipped)
  - The shift lever is in P.
  - The vehicle speed exceeds approximately 30 km/h (18 mph).
  - The brake system overheats.
- In the following situations, the indicator flashes to alert the driver, but the system will operate:
  - The shift lever is in N.

The system will gradually ceases operation. The indicator will flash during operation.

When the downhill assist control system is operated continuously

This may cause the brake actuator to overheat. In this case, the downhill assist control system will stop operating, a buzzer will sound and the downhill assist control system indicator will start flashing, and the "Traction Control Turned OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display. Refrain from using the system until the downhill assist control system indicator stays on and "Traction Control Turned OFF" turns off. (The vehicle can be driven normally during this time.)

Sounds and vibrations caused by the downhill assist control system

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in downhill assist control system.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the downhill assist control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

System malfunction

In the following cases, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The downhill assist control system indicator does not come on when the engine switch is turned to ON.
- The downhill assist control system indicator does not come on when the DAC/CRAWL switch is pressed.
- The slip indicator comes on.

WARNING

The system may not operate on the following surfaces, which may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury

- Slippery surfaces such as wet or muddy roads
- Icy surface
- Unpaved roads

Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)**

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface
Vehicles with Multi-terrain Select system: The ABS operates in synchronization with the Multi-terrain Select

■ **Brake assist**

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, Active TRC, VSC and EPS.

Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

■ **Trailer Sway Control**

Helps the driver to control trailer sway by selectively applying brake pressure for individual wheels and reducing driving torque when trailer sway is detected.

■ **Active TRC (Traction Control)**

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ **Hill-start assist control**

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ **Electronic-Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System (if equipped)**

Electronically controls the stabilizer according to the road conditions and driving conditions such as when driving off-road or on a curve, enhancing riding comfort and driving stability.

In addition, the control is optimized for each mode by selecting the drive mode using the multi-terrain select. (→P.364)

Control can be changed to suit off-road driving by setting the four-wheel drive control switch to L4.

AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) (if equipped)

The damping force of the shock absorbers are independently controlled for the 4 wheels according to factors including the road surface conditions and driving operation, contributing toward enhancing smooth driving comfort and superior stability, and helping to maintain vehicle posture.

In addition, the damping force can be changed by selecting the drive mode with the driving mode select (→P.355), and driving comfort can be ensured during off-road driving by setting the four-wheel drive control switch to L4. (→P.357)

Emergency brake signal

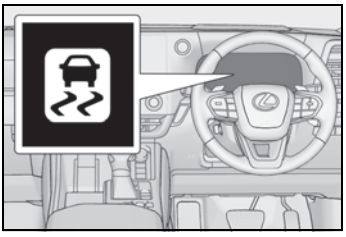
When the brakes are applied suddenly, the emergency flashers automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

The Secondary Collision Brake

When the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision and the system operates, the brakes and brake lights are automatically controlled to reduce the vehicle speed and help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision.

When the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating.

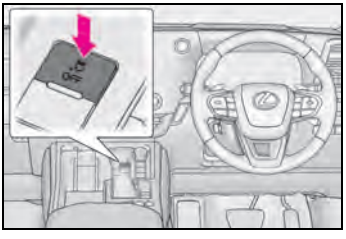


Disabling the Active TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the Active TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels.

Pressing OFF to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the Active TRC system off, quickly press and release OFF.



"Traction Control Turned OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press OFF again to turn the system back on.

Turning off the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems

To turn the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off, press and hold OFF for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "Traction Control Turned OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press OFF again to turn the systems back on.

*: PCS will also be disabled (only Pre-Colli-

sion warning is available). The PCS warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.221)

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that Active TRC has been disabled even if OFF has not been pressed**

Active TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When all of the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.
- The engine switch is in ON

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed and the parking brake is engaged.
- A maximum of 2 seconds have elapsed after the brake pedal is released.
- The engine switch is turned to OFF.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, Trailer Sway Control, Active TRC and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **Automatic reactivation of Active TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems**

After turning the Active TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off.
- If only the Active TRC system is turned off, the Active TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases.
  If both the Active TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking

operation.

■ Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

■ Secondary Collision Brake operating conditions

The system operates when the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision while the vehicle is in motion. However, the system does not operate when the components are damaged.

■ Secondary Collision Brake automatic cancellation

The system is automatically canceled in any of the following situations

- The vehicle speed drops to approximately 0 mph (0 km/h).
- A certain amount of time elapses during operation
- The accelerator pedal is depressed a large amount

WARNING

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ Active TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the Active TRC/VSC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

WARNING

■ When the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help enhance vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the Active TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off unless necessary.

Trailer Sway Control is part of the VSC system and will not operate if VSC is turned off or experiences a malfunction.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. The ABS, Active TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

■ Trailer Sway Control precaution

The Trailer Sway Control system is not able to reduce trailer sway in all situations. Depending on many factors such as the conditions of the vehicle, trailer, road surface and driving environment, the Trailer Sway Control system may not be effective. Refer to your trailer owner's manual for information on how to tow your trailer properly.

■ If trailer sway occurs

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead. Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
  Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (→P.171)

■ Secondary Collision Brake

Do not rely solely upon the Secondary Collision Brake. This system is designed to help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision, however, that effect changes according to various conditions. Overly relying on the system may result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Electronic-Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System precautions (if equipped)

In the following cases, the system may be malfunctioning and driving comfort or drivability on rough roads may be impaired. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- When there is a feeling that the incline of the vehicle has become larger than usual when turning at a corner.

NOTICE

- When the incline of the vehicle does not return even after the vehicle has continued to drive after being left on an inclined position such as on a curb or slope for a long time (the vehicle may remain in an inclined condition immediately after it is returned to on a level surface).

Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle features

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause the vehicle to rollover.

WARNING

■ Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should always fasten their seat belts.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles:

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

WARNING

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ To prevent the water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.

NOTICE

- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Service Booklet".

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Intercooler coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires*.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on vehicles with 265/70R18 and 265/50R22 tires.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.

WARNING

- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains (vehicles with 265/55R20 tires)

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) system.
- Do not use LDA (Lane Departure Alert) system.

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from your Lexus dealer or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, outside rear view mirrors, side windows, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the

vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

- Turn automatic mode of the parking brake off.
  Otherwise, the parking brake may freeze and not be able to be released automatically.

Also, avoid using the following as the parking brake may operate automatically, even if automatic mode is off.

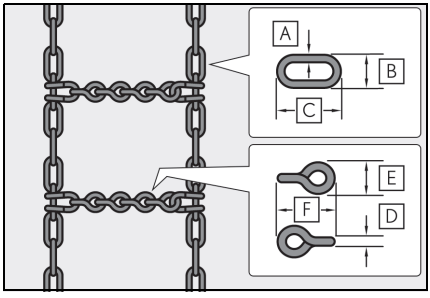
- Brake hold system

- Park the vehicle and shift the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels. Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.
- When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P.188)
  Turn off the engine switch while pressing the parking brake switch.
- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P.
- If the vehicle is left parked with the brakes damp in cold temperatures, there is a possibility of the brakes freezing.

Selecting tire chains

▶ Vehicles with 265/55R20 tires

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



Side chain:

A 5 mm (0.20 in.) in diameter

B 18 mm (0.71 in.) in width

C 46 mm (1.81 in.) in length

Cross chain:

D 6.3 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter

E 22.6 mm (0.89 in.) in width

F 38.1 mm (1.50 in.) in length

▶ Vehicles without 265/55R20 tires

Tire chains cannot be mounted.

Snow tires should be used instead.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ **Tire chain installation (vehicles with 265/55R20 tires)**

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install tire chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Fitting tire chains (vehicles with 265/55R20 tires)**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

5-1. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge..... 382

5-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system 383

Rear automatic air conditioning system 391

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators..... 393

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 396

5-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 400

Luggage compartment features 403

5-5. Using the other interior features

Panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control 406

Other interior features 408

Lexus Climate Concierge

The climate control seats are automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.

Turning on Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge operates in conjunction with "AUTO" of the air conditioning system.

1. Select the option screen switch. (→P.383)
2. Select the "Climate concierge" switch.
3. Turn the "AUTO" switch on.

Automatically controllable functions

- Automatic air conditioning system (→P.383, 391)

Operation of the air conditioning system is performed automatically according to the temperature setting for the driver's side/front passenger's side/rear passenger's side (if equipped).

- Seat heaters (→P.394)

Operation of the seat heaters is performed automatically according to the temperature setting for the driver's side/front passenger's side.

Operation will automatically change between the seat heaters and seat ventilators according to the temperature setting of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.

- Seat ventilators (→P.395)

Operation of the seat ventilators is performed automatically according to the temperature setting for the driver's side/front passenger's side.

Operation will automatically change between the seat heaters and seat ventilators according to the temperature setting of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.

- Heated steering wheel* (→P.394)

Operation of the heated steering wheel is performed automatically according to the temperature setting of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.

*: If equipped

■ **Passenger detection functions**

- When a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat, the seat heater and ventilator will operate automatically.
- When the seat heater/seat ventilator switch is set to AUTO, the passenger detection function will not operate.

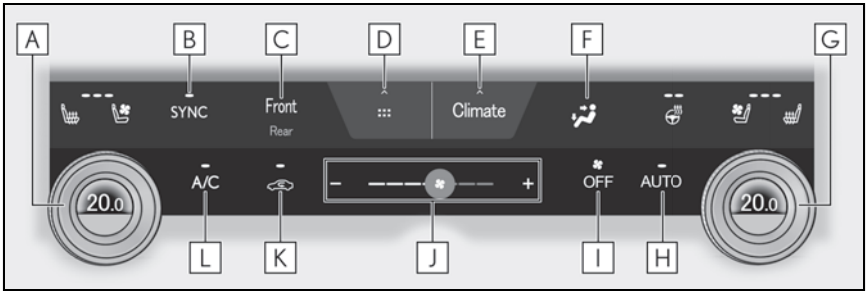
■ **Rear seat heater operation (vehicles with rear seat heaters)**

The rear seat heaters are not controlled by the Lexus Climate Concierge.

Front automatic air conditioning system

When the "AUTO" switch is on, the air outlets and fan speed will automatically be changed according to the set temperature.

Option screen switch



A Left-hand side temperature control switch

B "SYNC" switch

C Front/rear control screen switch (if equipped)

D Shortcut screen switch

Select to display shortcut icons for various functions.

E Option screen switch

F Airflow mode control switch

G Right-hand side temperature control switch

H "AUTO" switch

I "OFF" switch

J Fan speed control switch

K Outside/recirculated air mode switch

L "A/C" switch

■ **Adjusting the temperature**

Turn temperature control switch clockwise to increase the temperature and turn the switch counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

When the indicator on the "SYNC" switch is illuminated, the temperature setting for the front passenger's side and the rear seats side will match the setting for the driver's side.

When the indicator on the "SYNC" switch is off, turning the "SYNC" switch on will illuminate the "SYNC" switch indicator and the temperature setting for the front passenger's side and the rear seats side will become the same as that for the driver's side.

When the front passenger's side temperature control switch is operated, the indicator on the "SYNC" switch will turn off and the temperature setting for the front passenger's side will be able to be adjusted.

When the rear seats side temperature control switch is operated, the indicator on the "SYNC" switch will turn off and the temperature setting for the rear seats side will be able to be adjusted.

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

When the front passenger's side and the rear seats side temperature control switch is operated, adjust the temperature for the driver, front passenger and rear seats separately. (individual mode)

■ Setting the fan speed

To increase the fan speed, select the "+" fan speed adjustment switch or slide the icon of the fan speed adjustment switch right. To decrease the fan speed, select the "-" fan speed adjustment switch or slide the icon of the fan speed adjustment switch left.

Select the "OFF" switch to turn the fan off.

The fan can also be stopped by touching and holding the "-" fan speed adjustment switch or sliding the icon of the fan speed adjustment switch to the leftmost position and holding it.

■ Changing the air flow mode

Select the airflow mode control switch.

The airflow mode changes each time the switch is selected.

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.

 : Air flows to the upper body

 : Air flows to the upper body and feet

 : Air flows to the feet

 : Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Temporarily changing the air mode to recirculated air mode is recommended to prevent dirty air from entering the vehicle, such as when in a tunnel or heavy traffic, and to help cool the interior when the outside air temperature is high.

Select the outside/recirculated air mode switch.

The air mode changes between outside air mode and recirculated air mode each time the switch is selected. When recirculated air mode is selected, the indicator will illuminate.

The air mode may change automatically depending on the temperature setting,

temperature inside the vehicle and outside air (exhaust gas).

■ **When the outside temperature exceeds 24°C (75°F) and the air conditioning system is on**

- In order to reduce the air conditioning power consumption, the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically while the air conditioning system is on. This may also reduce fuel consumption.
- It is possible to switch to outside air mode at any time by pressing the outside/recirculated air mode switch.

■ **Eco air conditioning mode**

The air conditioning is controlled with low fuel consumption prioritized such as reducing fan speed, etc.

1 Select the option screen switch. (→P.383)

2 Select the "Eco Heat/Cool" switch.

- In Eco air conditioning mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, turn off Eco air conditioning mode.

• Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity.

• Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected.

- When the driving mode is set to Eco driving mode, the Eco air conditioning mode will be turned on automatically. Even in this case, the Eco air conditioning mode can be turned off by selecting the "Eco Heat/Cool".

■ **Warming the interior quickly (Max heat)**

When "Max heat" is turned on, in order to warm the interior quickly, the settings of the air conditioning system will be changed immediately.

1 Select the shortcut screen switch. (→P.383)

2 Select the "Max heat" switch.

- The driver's side temperature setting of the air conditioning system will be set to "Hi" and the "AUTO" switch will be turned on.
- Driver's side seat heater will be set to Hi.
- Heated steering wheel will be set to Hi.
- In the following situations, the front passenger's side seat heater/seat ventilator will be set to "AUTO".

• When "Climate concierge" is on

• When the system determines that a passenger is in the front passenger seat

- When the indicator on the "SYNC" switch is illuminated, the temperature setting for the front passenger's side and the rear seats side will also be set to "Hi".

■ **Cooling the interior quickly (Max cool)**

When "Max cool" is turned on, in order to cool the interior quickly, the settings of the air conditioning system will be changed immediately.

1 Select the shortcut screen switch. (→P.383)

2 Select the "Max cool" switch.

- The driver's side temperature setting of the air conditioning system will be set to "Lo" and the "AUTO" switch will be turned on.
- Driver's side seat ventilator will be set to Hi.
- In the following situation, the heated steering wheel will be set to "AUTO".

• When "Climate concierge" is on

- In the following situations, the front passenger's side seat heater/seat ventilator will be set to "AUTO".

• When "Climate concierge" is on

• When the system determines that a passenger is in the front passenger seat

- When the indicator on the "SYNC" switch is illuminated, the temperature setting for the front passenger's side and the rear seats side will also be set to "Lo".

■ nanoe™ X*1, 2 generator

A nanoe™ X generator is installed in this air conditioning system. This provides clean and refreshing air through the window side air outlet of the front passenger's seat by emitting nanoe™ X particles*3.

1 Select the option screen switch. (→P.383)

2 Select the "nanoe™X" switch.

- When nanoe™ X is turned on, the nanoe™ X generator is automatically activated when the fan is turned on.
- The effects of nanoe™ X are maximized in the following conditions:

• The upper body, upper body and feet, and feet air outlets are being used.

• The window side air outlet of the front passenger's seat is open.

- When nanoe™ X particles are generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted so a faint odor may be detectable. This is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be detectable during operation. It may take some time for operation to begin. A more noticeable noise may be detectable immediately upon the start of operation. This is not a malfunction.

*1: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ X marks are trademarks of Panasonic Holdings Corporation.

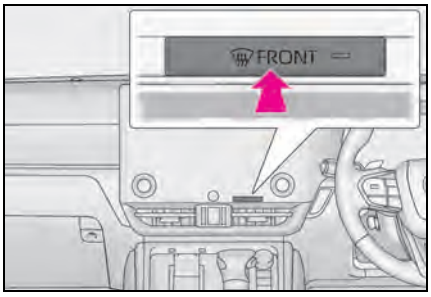
*2: nanoe™ X particles are nano-sized electrostatic atomized water particles that contain hydroxyl radicals, which have beneficial effects.

*3: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ X generator may not operate at full capacity.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch.



The dehumidification function will operate and the air flow will increase.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

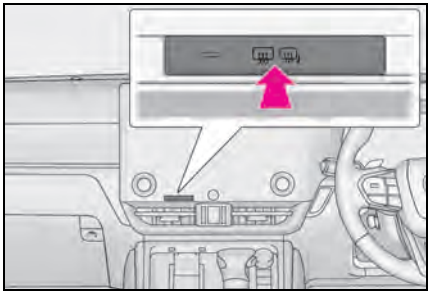
To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.



The rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers will operate and defog the rear window and outside rear view mirrors.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ When driving on dusty roads

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

■ When the outside temperature is low

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

■ Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- In order to suppress odors that occur when the air conditioning system starts, the air flow mode may change to blow air to the feet or air may stop blowing for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.
- When parking, the system automatically switches to outside air mode to encourage better air circulation throughout the vehicle, helping to reduce odors that occur when starting the vehicle.

■ "Max heat"

- The "Max heat" switch cannot be used to turn the setting off.
- After the "Max heat" switch has been operated, the temperature setting can be adjusted using the temperature control switches of the air conditioning system.
- When "Climate concierge" is on, if the "AUTO" switch is turned on, the seat heaters and seat ventilators of the front

seats, and the heated steering wheel will be operated automatically according to the temperature setting.

- Each function can also be adjusted to the desired setting.

"Max cool"

- The "Max cool" switch cannot be used to turn the setting off.
- After the "Max cool" switch has been operated, the temperature setting can be adjusted using the temperature control switches of the air conditioning system.
- When "Climate concierge" is on, if the "AUTO" switch is turned on, the seat heaters and seat ventilators of the front seats, and the heated steering wheel will be operated automatically according to the temperature setting.
- Each function can also be adjusted to the desired setting.

Fogging up of the windows

The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Selecting "A/C" on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

Using the voice control system

Air conditioning system can be operated using voice controls. For details, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

While the cool box is on (if equipped)

The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off.

Air conditioning filter

→P.453

Customization

Functions that are linked to automatic mode (when the "AUTO" switch is on) can be set through "Vehicle customise" on the center display. Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity settings can also be changed. (→P.516)

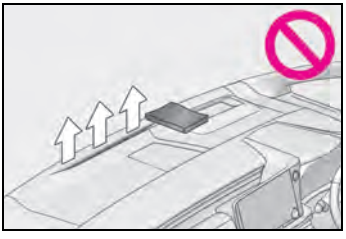
WARNING

nanoe™ X generator

Do not disassemble or attempt to repair the nanoe™ X generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the generator needs repair.

To prevent the windshield defogger from operating improperly

- Do not use the windshield defogger in extremely humid areas when the air conditioning system is set to a low temperature. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the surface of the outside rear view mirrors when the rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating, as the surface of the mirrors will become extremely hot and may cause burns.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

NOTICE

■ To prevent air conditioning system malfunction

Make sure that nothing falls into the air outlets on the instrument panel.

An object that falls into the air outlet may cause a malfunction.

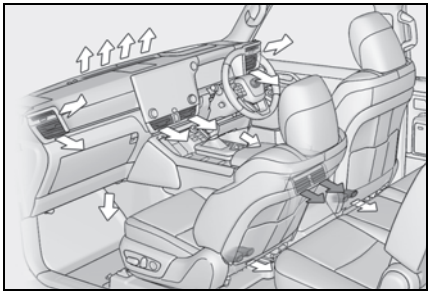
■ To prevent damage to the nanoe™ X generator

Do not insert anything into the window side air outlet of the front passenger's seat, attach anything to it, or use sprays around it. These actions could cause the generator to malfunction.

Air outlet layout and operations

■ Location of air outlets

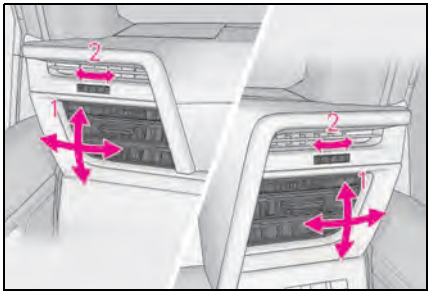
The air outlets and air volume change according to the selected air flow mode.



: If equipped

■ Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets

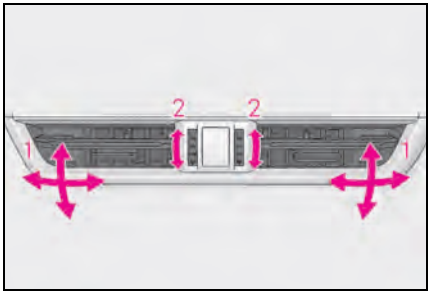
▶ Front side



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

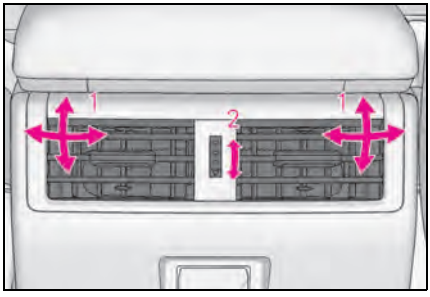
▶ Front center



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

▶ Rear (if equipped)



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

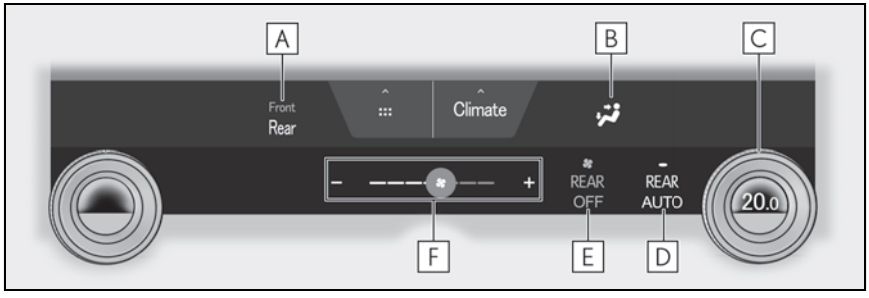
Rear automatic air conditioning system*

*: If equipped

The rear air conditioning system can be operated selecting front/rear control screen switch on the center display and rear air conditioning system control panel.

When the "AUTO" switch is on, the air outlets and fan speed will automatically be changed according to the set temperature.

Rear air conditioning control operation (center display)



A Front/rear control screen switch

B Airflow mode control switch

C Temperature control switch

D "REAR AUTO" switch

E "REAR OFF" switch

F Fan speed control switch

■ **Adjusting the temperature**

Turn temperature control switch clockwise to increase the temperature and turn the dial counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

■ **Setting the fan speed**

To increase the fan speed, select the "+" fan speed adjustment switch or slide the icon of the fan speed adjustment switch right. To decrease the fan speed, select the "-" fan speed adjustment switch or slide the icon of the fan speed adjustment switch left.

Select the "REAR OFF" switch to turn the fan off.

The fan can also be stopped by touching and holding the "-" fan speed adjustment switch or sliding the icon of the fan speed adjustment switch to the leftmost position

and holding it.

■ **Changing the air flow mode**

Select the airflow mode control switch.

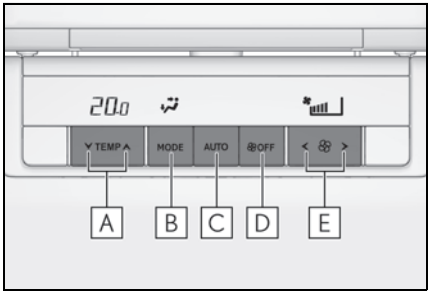
The airflow mode changes each time the switch is selected.


: Air flows to the upper body


: Air flows to the upper body and feet


: Air flows to the feet

Rear air conditioning control operation (Rear air conditioning system control panel)



A Temperature control switch

B Airflow mode control switch

C "AUTO" switch

D "OFF" switch

E Fan speed control switch

■ **Adjusting the temperature**

Press ∧ to increase the temperature and ∨ to decrease the temperature on temperature control switch.

■ **Setting the fan speed**

Press > (increase) or < (decrease) on fan speed control switch. The fan speed is shown on the display. (7 levels)

Press the "OFF" switch to turn the fan off.

■ **Changing the air flow mode**

Press the airflow mode control switch.

The airflow mode changes each time the switch is pressed.


: Air flows to the upper body


: Air flows to the upper body and feet


: Air flows to the feet

Adjusting the temperature setting of the rear seats

The temperature setting of the rear seats can be adjusted using the following methods:

- When the indicator on the "SYNC" switch is on: Adjust the driver's seat temperature.

The temperature setting for the rear seats side will match the setting for the driver's side.

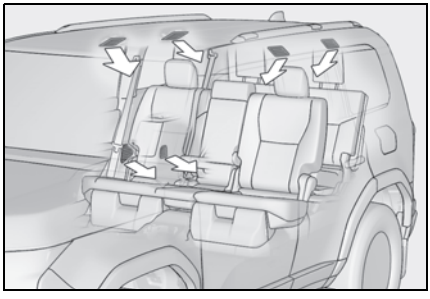
- Adjust the temperature setting of

rear seats using the center display (rear air conditioning control screen) or rear air conditioning system control panel.

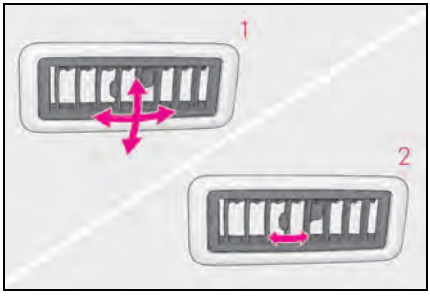
Air outlet layout and operations

■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.



■ Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Open or close the vent

To close the vent, move the knob fully rearward.

Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters/seat ventilators

*: If equipped

- Heated steering wheel

Warm up the grips of the steering wheel

- Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

- Seat ventilators

Maintain good ventilation by pulling air through the seat upholstery

WARNING

■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel or seats when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine is not running.

Operating the heated steering wheel

Select on the center display.

The level indicators (red) illuminate during operation. The "AUTO" indicator illuminates during automatic operation.

Each time the switch is selected, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

Operation condition

The engine switch is in ON.

Customization

Settings for the heated steering wheel can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

Operating the seat heaters

Front seats

Select or on the center display.

The level indicators (red) illuminate during operation. The "AUTO" indicator illuminates during automatic operation.

Each time the switch is selected, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

Outboard second seats (if equipped)

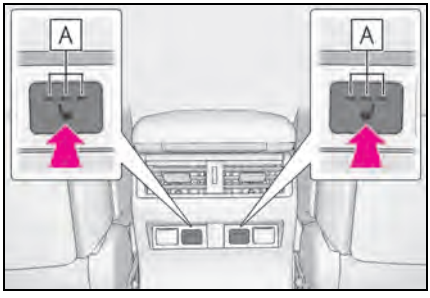
Press the switch to turn the seat heater on/off.

The level indicators [A] illuminate during operation.

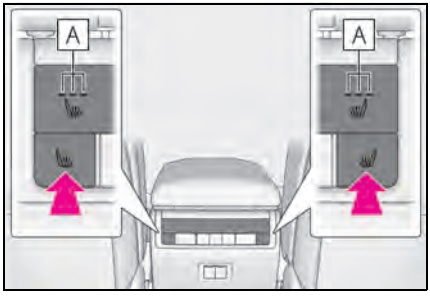
Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

▶ Vehicles without rear automatic air conditioning system



▶ Vehicles with rear automatic air conditioning system



The seat heaters can be used when

The engine switch is in ON.

Customization

Settings for the seat heaters can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

To prevent causes of overheating and minor burn injuries

Observe the following precautions when using a seat heater

- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.

WARNING

- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

Operating the seat ventilators

Select  or  on the center display.

The level indicators (blue) illuminate during operation. The "AUTO" indicator illuminates during automatic operation.

Each time the switch is selected, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The seat ventilators can be used when

The engine switch is in ON.

Air conditioning system-linked control mode

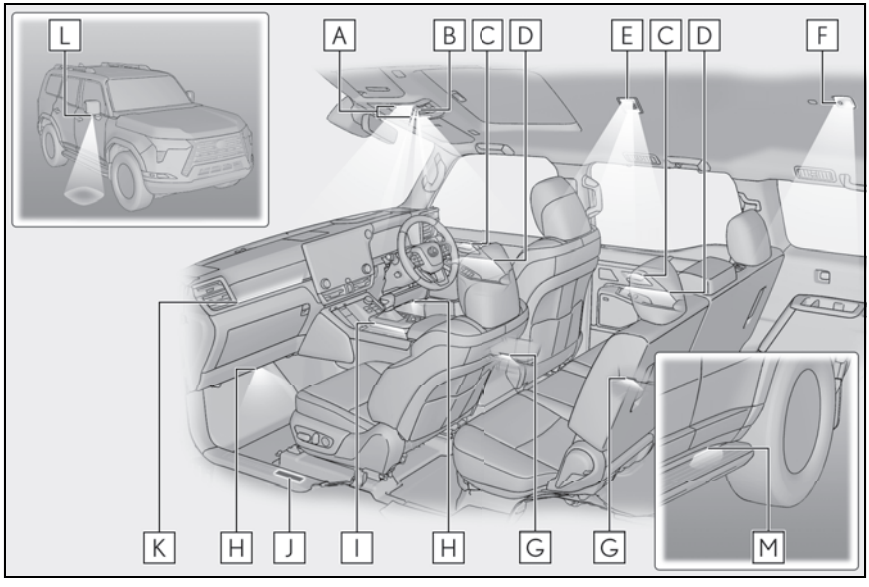
When the seat ventilator fan speed level is Hi, the seat ventilator fan speed becomes higher according to the fan speed of the air conditioning system.

Customization

Settings for the seat ventilators can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights



A Front interior light/front personal lights (→P.397, 398)

B Shift lever lights*1

C Inside door handle lights*2

D Door trim ornament lights*2

E Rear personal light (→P.398)

F Rear interior light (→P.397)

G Door courtesy lights

H Footwell lights*2

I Upper console lights*2

J Scuff lights (if equipped)

K Instrument panel ornament lights*2 (if equipped)

L Outer foot lights

M Running board lights

*1: The shift lever lights turn on/off together with the tail lights.

*2: On some models, the illumination color can also be changed. Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual" to change the settings.

Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed. Also, the brightness of the lights is automatically adjusted linked with the shift operation.

To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned to OFF, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

The interior lights may turn on automatically when

If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the interior lights will turn on automatically. The interior lights will turn off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.

The interior lights can be turned off manually. However, in order to help prevent further collisions, it is recommended that they be left on until safety can be ensured. (The interior lights may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

Customization

Setting (e.g. the time elapsed before the lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.516)

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Operating interior lights

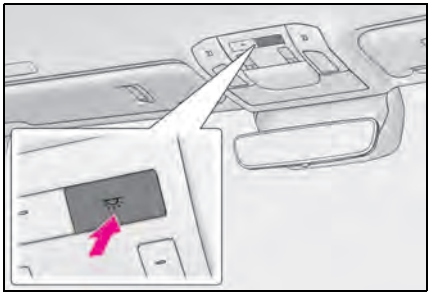
Turning the front interior light on/off

Press the switch.

Each time the switch is pressed, the light turns on/off.

The rear interior light and rear personal lights turn on/off together with the front interior light.

When a door is opened while the door position is on, the light turns on.

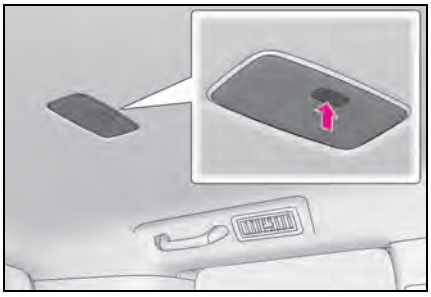


Turning the rear interior light on/off

Press the switch.

Each time the switch is pressed, the light turns on/off.

The rear interior light is also turned on/off by the front interior light operations. If the light is turned on by front interior light operation, the rear interior light cannot turn off by pressing the switch.



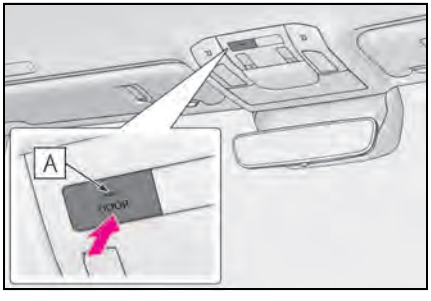
■ Turning the door position on/off

Press the door-linked interior light switch.

The light is turned on and off according to whether the doors are opened/closed while the door position is on.

Each time the switch is pressed, the door position turns on/off.

When the door position is on, the indicator A on the switch illuminates.

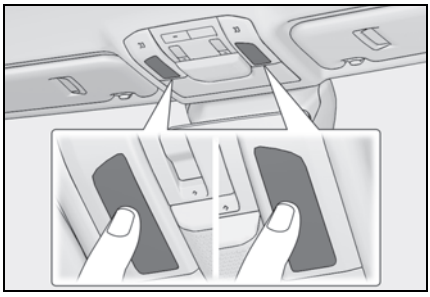


Operating personal lights

■ Turning the front personal lights on/off

Touch the light.

Each time the light is touched, the light turns on/off.

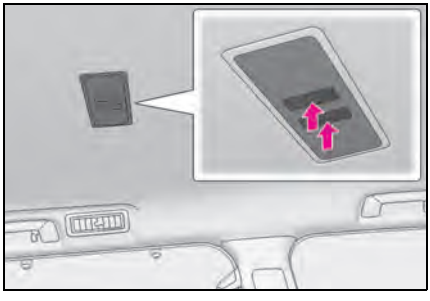


■ Turning the rear personal lights on/off

Press the switch.

Each time the switch is pressed, the light turns on/off.

The rear personal lights are also turned on/off by the front interior light operations. If the lights are turned on by front interior light operation, the rear personal light cannot turn off by pressing the switch.



■ When front personal light does not respond as normal

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

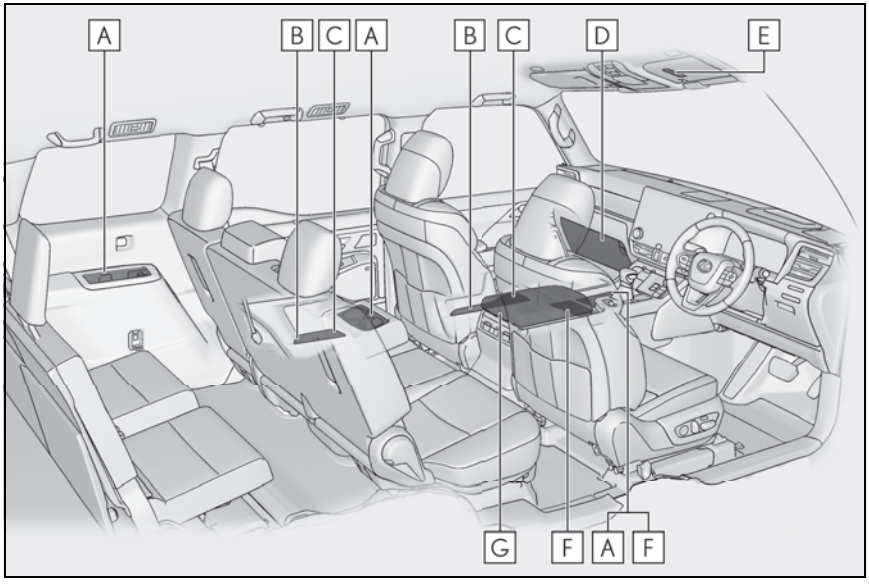
NOTICE

■ Removing front personal light lenses

Never remove the lens for the front personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged. If the lens need to remove, contact your Lexus dealer.

List of storage features

Location of the storage features



A Cup holders (→P.401)

B Door pockets

C Bottle holders (→P.402)

D Glove box (→P.401)

E Ticket holders

F Open trays (→P.402)

G Console box (if equipped) (→P.401)

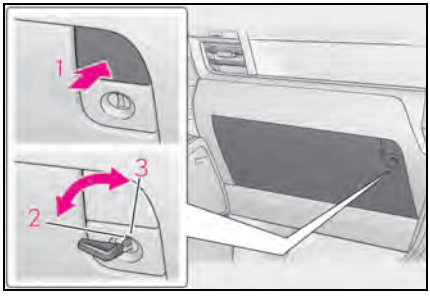
WARNING

■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box



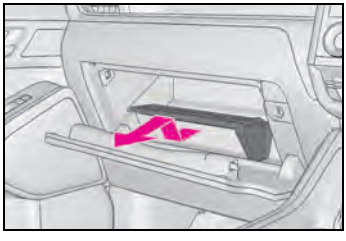
1 Open (press the button)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Removing the partition

The partition inside the glove box can be removed by pulling it.



WARNING

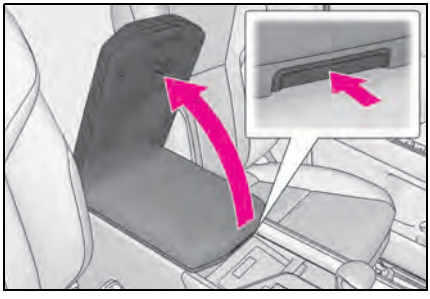
Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

Console box (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with either a console box or cool box. For vehicles with the cool box, refer to P.408.

While pressing the button, lift up and open the lid.



WARNING

Caution while driving

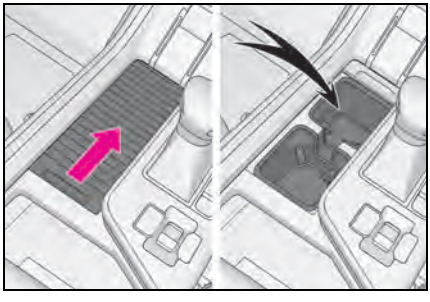
Keep the console box closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Cup holders

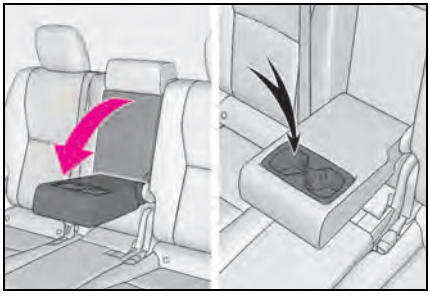
Front seats

Open the lid.

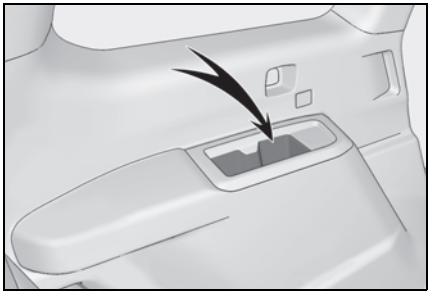


Second seats

Pull the armrest down.



■ Rear side trims



WARNING

■ When cup holders are not in use (front seats)

Keep the lid closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

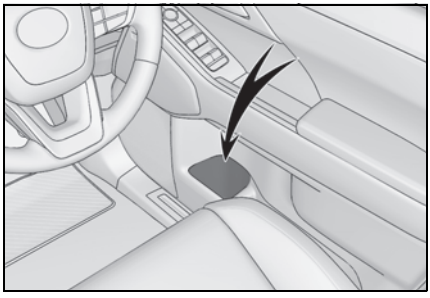
■ Items unsuitable for the cup holders

Do not place anything other than a cup, beverage can or bottle* in the cup holders. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

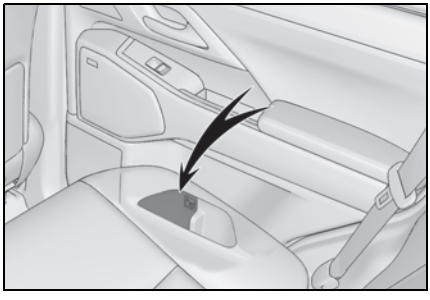
*: Except for second seat cup holders

Bottle holders

■ Front doors



■ Rear doors



■ Bottle holders

- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

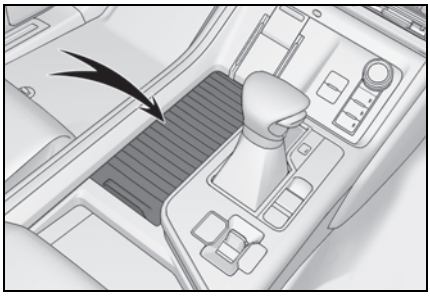
NOTICE

■ Items that should be not stowed in the bottle holders

Do not place open bottles or glass and paper cups containing liquid in the bottle holders. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Open trays

Close the lid of the front cup holders to use.



WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the open tray

Observe the following precautions when putting items in the open tray. Failure to do so may cause items to be thrown out of the tray in the event of sudden braking or steering. In these cases, the items may interfere with pedal operation or cause driver distraction, resulting in an accident.

- Do not store items in the tray that can easily shift or roll out.
- Do not stack items in the tray higher than the tray's edge.
- Do not put items in the tray that may protrude over the tray's edge.

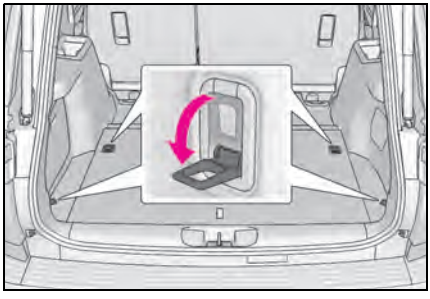
Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks

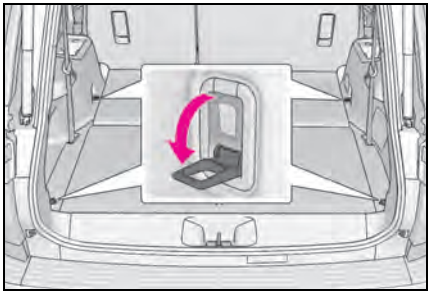
Raise the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

▶ Vehicles without third seats



▶ Vehicles with third seats



WARNING

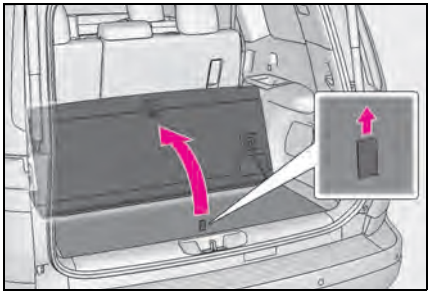
■ When cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

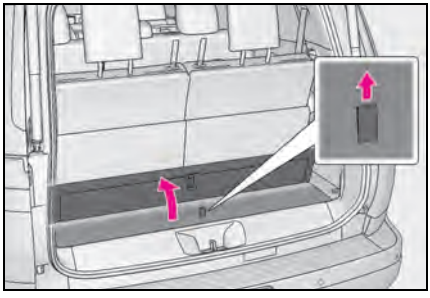
Deck board

1 Pull the strap upwards and open the deck board.

▶ Vehicles without third seats



▶ Vehicles with third seats



WARNING

■ When operating the deck board

Do not place anything on the deck board when operating the board. Otherwise, your fingers may be caught or an accident may result causing injuries.

■ Caution while driving

Keep the deck board closed.

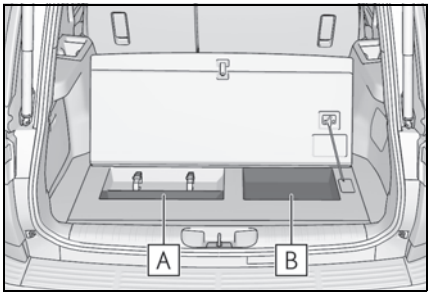
In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the deck board or the items stored under the deck board.

Deck under tray

Open the deck board. (→P.403)

The following items can be stowed.

▶ Vehicles without third seats

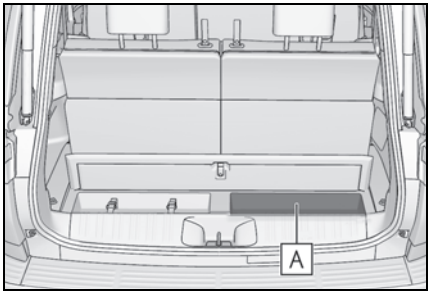


A Warning reflector*

B Accessories

*: The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

▶ Vehicles with third seats



A Warning reflector*

*: The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

■ Warning reflector

Depending on the size and shape of the warning reflector case, you may not be able to store it.

Auxiliary box (if equipped)

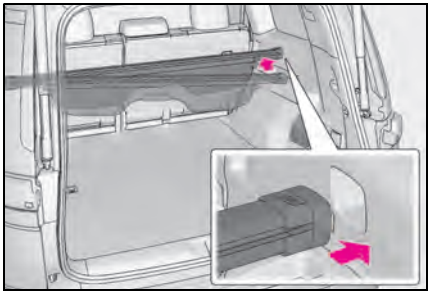
Remove the cover.



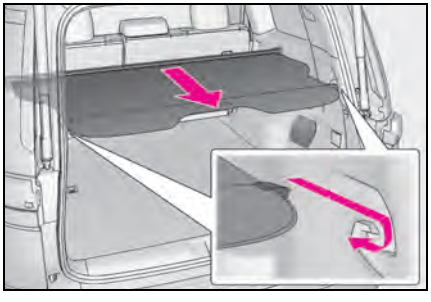
Luggage cover (if equipped)

■ Installing the luggage cover

1 Install one side of the luggage cover to the holder. While pushing that side in, install the other side to the opposite holder.

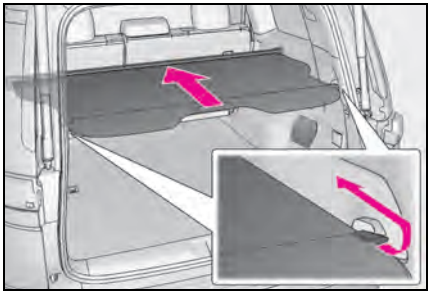


2 Pull out the luggage cover and secure it to the hook brackets.



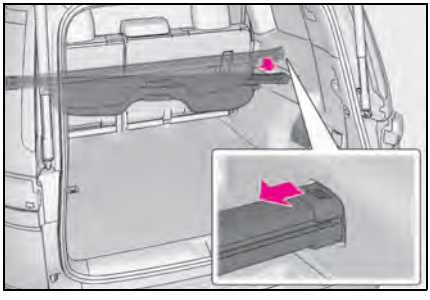
■ Removing the luggage cover

1 Detach the both ends of the luggage cover from the holder and retract it.



2 Push one end of the luggage cover inward and remove it from the holder.

After remove the luggage cover, remove it from the vehicle.



WARNING

■ Luggage cover

- Do not place anything on the luggage cover. In the event of sudden braking or turning, the item may go flying and strike an occupant. This could lead to an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.

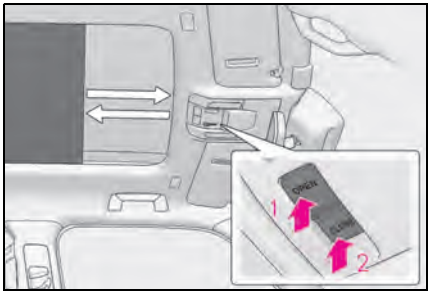
Panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to open and close the electronic sunshade and change the moon roof between opaque and transparent.

Operating the electronic sunshade and panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control

■ Opening and closing the electronic sunshade



1 Open*

2 Close*

The moon roof automatically returns to opaque when the electronic sunshade is closed, and the indicator on the dimming switch turns off.

*: To stop the electronic sunshade partway, lightly press the either end of the switch.

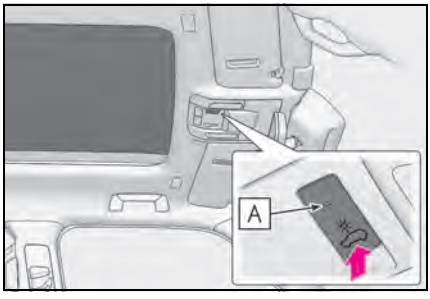
■ Changing the moon roof between opaque and transparent

Press the dimming switch.

The moon roof is changed between opaque and transparent each time the dimming switch is pressed.

The indicator A on the dimming switch turns on when the moon roof is transparent.

If the dimming switch is pressed when the electronic sunshade is fully closed, the electronic sunshade opens automatically and the opaque moon roof changes to be transparent.



■ The electronic sunshade and panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ When the moon roof is transparent

- Stripes (interference patterns) may appear on the moon roof under some weather conditions or depending on how the light shines the interior and exterior of the vehicle.
- The moon roof may appear opaque, depending on the angle.

■ The moon roof at low temperatures

The moon roof may take some time to change between opaque and transparent. Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before use.

■ **Turning the engine switch to OFF**

The transparent moon roof automatically returns to opaque when the engine switch is turned to OFF.

■ **If the indicator on the dimming switch flashes**

The panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Operation of the electronic sunshade**

To prevent the electronic sunshade motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the electronic sunshade is opening and closing repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the electronic sunshade switch.

Wait for a little while, the electronic sunshade motor will resume functioning.

■ **When the vehicle is subjected to a strong impact**

The moon roof changes to opaque and cannot be changed back to transparent. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Jam protection function for the electronic sunshade**

- If an object becomes jammed between the electronic sunshade and the sunshade frame while the electronic sunshade is closing, the electronic sunshade movement is stopped and the electronic sunshade is opened slightly.
- When the jam protection function has operated, even if the "CLOSE" side of the switch is pressed again, the electronic sunshade will not move in the close direction until the reverse operation has stopped completely.
- The electronic sunshade may operate in reverse if the electronic sunshade is subject to an impact due to the surroundings or the driving conditions.

■ **When the automatic opening and closing function of the electronic sunshade does not work**

Perform the following initialization procedure.

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.
2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" side of the switch.

It closes until it is near the fully closed position and then stops. After that, it and operates in the opening direction then closes to the fully closed position.

If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the automatic opening and closing function does not work normally even after performing the operations above, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.516)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

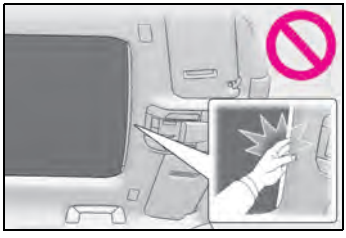
■ **Panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control**

Do not disassemble or repair the panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control needs repair.

WARNING

■ Opening and closing the electronic sunshade

● Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.



● Do not let a child operate the electronic sunshade. Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function for the electronic sunshade

● Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

● The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the electronic sunshade is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

■ To prevent burns or injuries

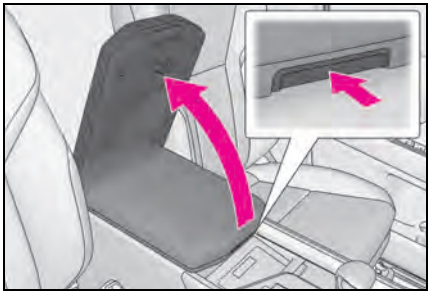
Do not touch the area between the underside of the glass roof and the electronic sunshade. Your hand may get caught and you could injure yourself. Also, if the vehicle is left in direct sunlight for a long time, the underside of the glass roof could become very hot and could cause burns.

Other interior features

Cool box (if equipped)

While the engine is running, the cool box, which is cooled by the air conditioning, can be used.

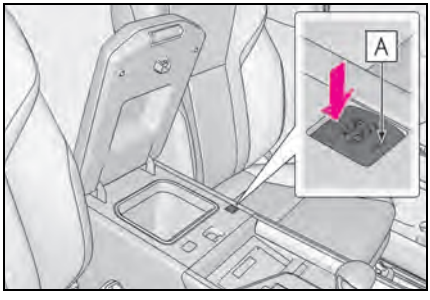
1 While pressing the button, lift up and open the lid.



2 Turns the cool box on/off

When on, the indicator light A comes on.

If the front air conditioning system is not in use, the front air conditioning system is automatically turned on when the cool box is turned on.



■ While the cool box is on

● The front air conditioning system cannot be turned off.

● To adjust the temperature of the cool box, the cool box may stop operating temporarily.

■ **When the outside temperature is 0°C (32°F) or below**

The cool box may not operate.

■ **Items unsuitable for the cool box**

- Drinks in unsealed containers
- Fragile items, perishables or anything with strong odor
- Owner's manual, electronic devices, CDs, etc.

■ **When cleaning the inside of the cool box**

Wipe dirt off with a cloth dampened with water. Directly applying water may cause a malfunction.

WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the cool box closed while driving.

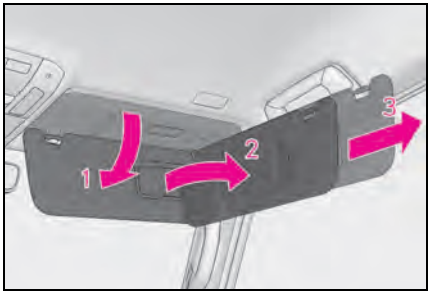
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the cool box on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Sun visors



1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

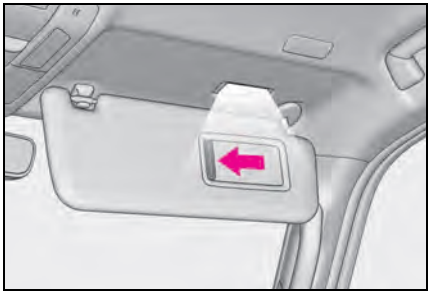
2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3 To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



■ **Automatic light off to prevent battery discharge**

If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned to OFF, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Power outlets (12 VDC)

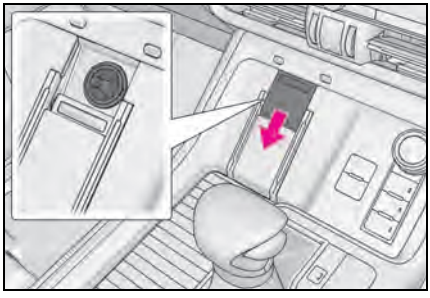
Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

When connecting multiple devices, make sure that the total power con-

sumption of all the connected devices is less than 120 W.

Open the lid.

To close, press in and release the lid.



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ **When turning the engine switch off**

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs. If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the lid when the power outlet is not in use, and do not store anything inside.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

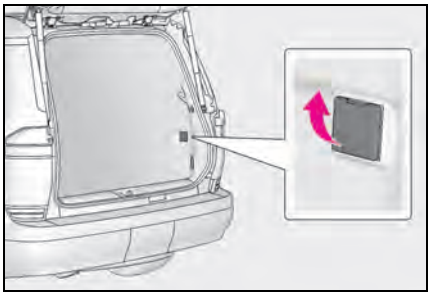
■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Power outlet (220 VAC) (if equipped)

Accessories that use less than 100 W.

Open the lid.



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Power outlet**

Do not use a 220 VAC appliance that requires more than 100 W. If a 220 VAC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (220 VAC)**

The following 220 VAC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W.

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

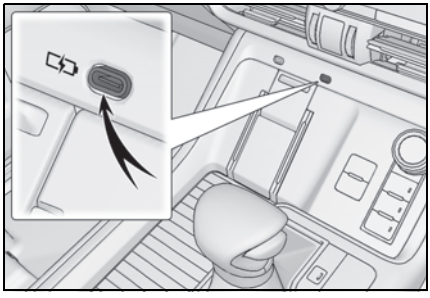
Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

USB Type-C charging ports

The USB Type-C charging ports are

used to supply 3 A of electricity at 5 V to external devices.
The USB Type-C charging ports are for charging only. They are not designed for data transfer or other purposes.
Depending on the external device, it may not charge properly. Refer to the manual included with the device before using a USB charging port.

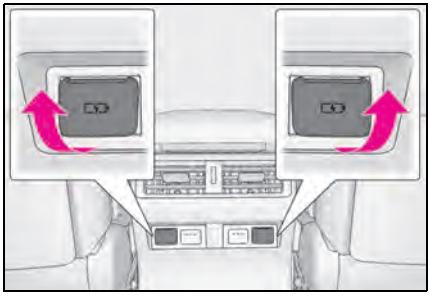
■ Type A



■ Type B

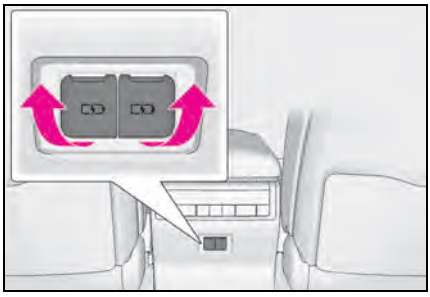
▶ Vehicles without rear automatic air conditioning system

Open the lid.

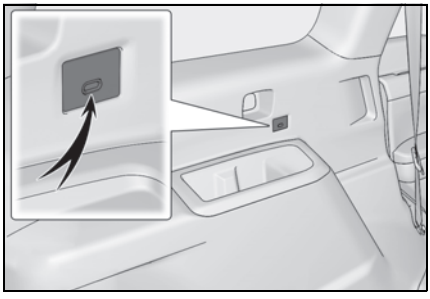


▶ Vehicles with rear automatic air conditioning system

Open the lid.



■ Type C (if equipped)



■ The USB Type-C charging ports can be used when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ Situations in which the USB Type-C charging ports may not operate correctly

- If a device which consumes more than 3 A at 5 V is connected
- If a device designed to communicate with a personal computer, such as a USB memory device, is connected
- If the connected external device is turned off (depending on device)
- If the temperature inside the vehicle is high, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun

■ About connected external devices

Depending on the connected external device, charging may occasionally be suspended and then start again. This is not a malfunction.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB Type-C charging ports

- Do not insert foreign objects into the ports.
- Do not spill water or other liquids into the ports.
- Type B: When the USB Type-C charging ports are not in use, close the lids. If a foreign object or liquid enters a port may cause a short circuit.
- Do not apply excessive force to or impact the USB Type-C charging ports.
- Do not disassemble or modify the USB Type-C charging ports.

■ To prevent damage to external devices

- Do not leave external devices in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to an external device.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary force to an external device or the cable of an external device while it is connected.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the USB Type-C charging ports for a long period of time with the engine stopped.

Wireless charger

A portable device can be charged by just placing Qi standard wireless charge compatible portable devices according to the Wireless Power Consortium, such as smartphones and mobile batteries, etc., on the charge area.

The compatible portable devices can be found on the following Wireless Power Consortium website.

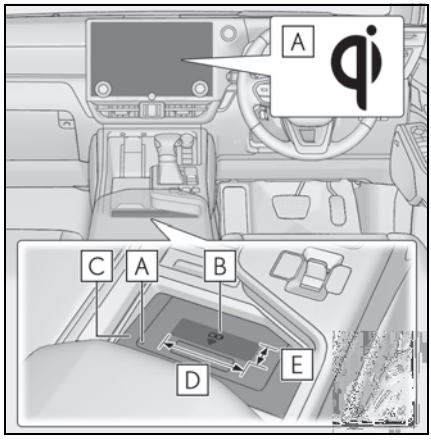
https://www.wirelesspowerconsortium.com/

This function cannot be used with portable devices that cannot be placed on the wireless charger. Also, depending on the portable device, it may not operate as normal. Please read the operation manual for portable devices to be used.

■ The "Qi" logo

The "Qi" logo is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.

■ Name for all parts



A Operation indicator light

B Charge area*

C Charging tray

D Approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.)

E Approximately 2.5 cm (1.0 in.)

*: The charging coil in the wireless charger can be moved within the charge area up to the position of the charging coil inside a portable device. Charging is possible if the center of the coil of the portable device is placed within the charge area. If 2 or more portable devices are placed on the wireless charger, their charging coils may not be properly detected and they may not be charged.

Using the wireless charger

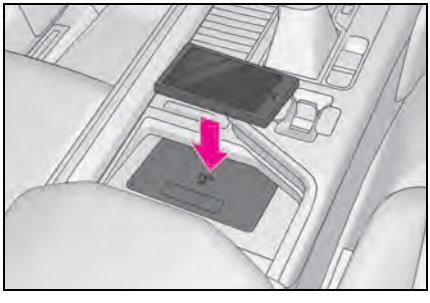
Place the portable device on the wireless charger.

Place the charging side of the portable device down with the center of the device in the center of the charge area.

When charging, the operation indicator light (orange) on the wireless charger comes on.

Refer to "Situations in which the function may not operate normally" (→P.417) when charging is not performed.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) on the wireless charger comes on.



Recharging function

- When charging is complete and after a fixed time in the charge suspension state, charging restarts.
- When a portable device is moved significantly in the charge area, the charging coil is disconnected and charging is stopped momentarily. However, if there is the center of a charging coil in the charge area, the charging coil inside the wireless charger will move toward it and then charging restarts. If the portable device is moved to somewhere outside of the charge area, charging will stop. Place the portable device near the center of the charge area.

Rapid charging function

- The following portable devices support rapid charging.

• Portable devices compliant with WPC Ver1.3.2 and compatible with rapid charging

• iPhone's with an iOS version that supports 7.5 W charging (iPhone 8 and later models)

• Portable devices compatible with Galaxy original rapid charging standard.

- When a portable device that supports rapid charging is charged, charging automatically switches to the rapid charging function.

■ **Lighting conditions of operation indicator light**

Operation indicator light		Conditions
Charging tray side	Center display side	
Turning off	Disappear	When power for Multimedia is off or the engine switch is off
Green (comes on)	Gray	On Standby (charging possible state)*1
		When charging is complete*2
Orange (comes on)	Blue	Charging

*1: Charging power will not be output during standby. A metallic object will not be heated, if it is placed on the wireless charger in this state.

*2: Depending on the portable device, there are cases where the operation indicator light will continue being lit up orange even after the charging is complete.

■ **When the wireless charger does not operate properly**

When the wireless charger does not operate properly, handle the probable cause based on the following tables.

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center display side	
Orange (Flashing repeatedly once every second)	Gray	**Vehicle to wireless charger communication failure** → **If the engine is running, stop and then restart the engine.** If the engine switch is in ACC, start the engine. (→P.179)
Green (Flashing repeatedly once every second)	Disappear	**Wireless charger and multimedia system communication failure** → **If the engine is running, stop and then restart the engine.** If the engine switch is in ACC, start the engine. (→P.179)

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center display side	
Green (comes on)	Blue	AM radio stations are being automatically selected → Wait until the system has completed the automatic selection of AM radio stations. In the case that automatic selection cannot be completed, stop automatic selection.
		The smart entry & start system is detecting the electronic key. → Wait until electronic key detection has completed.
Green (comes on)	Gray	Foreign substance detection: The abnormal heating prevention function for foreign substances operated due to the presence of a metallic foreign substance in the charge area → Remove the foreign substance from the charge area.
		Portable device misaligned / distanced from charging surface: The charging coil in the portable device moved outside of the charging area, or lens convex is large, or case is thick so the abnormal heating prevention function operated → Remove the portable device from the wireless charger, after 5 seconds, then place the portable device so that it is near the center of the wireless charger. Also, if a case or cover is installed to the portable device, remove it.

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center display side	
Green (comes on)	Gray	**Battery protection function of portable device:** **Before full charging, battery protection function of portable device operated** **→ Confirm the setting of portable device.**
		Continued detection of an electronic key: **When a Multimedia function is used through vehicle customization, the electronic key is continually detected without being confirmed.** **→ In this case, turn the engine switch ACC or ON to confirm the key.**
Orange (Repeatedly flashes 4 times continuously)	Gray	**Safety shutdown resulting when the temperature within the wireless charger exceeded the set value** **→ Stop charging, remove the portable device from the wireless charger, wait for the temperature to drop, and then start charging again.**

■ **The wireless charger can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ **Usable portable devices**

● Devices compatible with wireless charging Qi standards can be used. However, compatibility with portable devices that comply with Qi Ver. 1.0, 1.3.2 and later versions is not guaranteed.

● Starting with mobile phones and smartphones, it is aimed for low power electrically supplied portable devices of no more than 5W.

● However, charging exceeding 5 W is supported by the following portable devices.

- Charging at 7.5 W or less is supported by iPhone's that support 7.5 W charging.
- Charging at 10 W or less is supported by Galaxy device that support 10 W charging of original standard.
- Charging at 15 W or less is supported by portable devices compliant with EPP output as defined by WPC standard Ver1.3.2.

■ **Using the smart entry & start system**

If the smart entry & start system detects the electronic key while a device is being charged, charging will be temporarily stopped. When the electronic key is detected, charging will automatically start again.

■ **When covers and accessories are attached to portable devices**

Do not charge in situations where cover and accessories not able to handle Qi are attached to the portable device. Depending on the type of cover (including for certain genuine manufacturer parts) and accessory, it may not be possible to charge. When charging is not performed even with

the portable device placed on the charge area, remove the cover and accessories.

■ **AM radio cooperation function during charging**

- During charging, if noise occurs when listening to the AM radio, the charging frequency is automatically changed to reduce the noise.
- When automatically seeking AM radio stations, charging will be suspended to prevent charging noise from being detected as a radio station. Charging will resume automatically when seek tuning is stopped.

■ **Important points of the wireless charger**

- If the electronic key cannot be detected within the vehicle interior, charging cannot be done. When the door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- When charging, the wireless charging device and portable device will get warmer, however this is not a malfunction.
  When a portable device gets warm while charging, charging may stop due to the protection function on the portable device side. In this case, when the temperature of the portable device drops significantly, charge again.

The fan may start operating to lower the temperature inside the wireless charger, however this is not a malfunction.

■ **Operation sounds**

A buzzing noise may be heard when pressing the engine switch to turn to ACC or ON or when detecting a portable device. However, this is not a malfunction.

■ **Cleaning the wireless charger**

→P.426

■ **Situations in which the function may not operate normally**

Devices may not be charged normally in the following situations.

- The portable device is fully charged
- The portable device is being charged with a cable connected
- There is foreign matter between the charge area and portable device
- Charging has caused the portable device to heat up
- The temperature around the wireless charger is 35°C (95°F) or higher, such as in extreme heat
- The portable device is placed with its charging surface facing up
- The small portable device such as foldable type is placed in an area misaligned from the charge area
- The portable device is larger than the charging tray
- The vehicle is in an area where strong electrical waves or noise are emitted, such as near a television tower, power plant, gasoline station, broadcasting station, large display, airport, etc.
- The electronic key is not inside the vehicle
- Any of the following objects is stuck or installed between the charging side of the portable device and the charge area.
  - Thick cases or covers
  - A case or cover attached with an uneven or tilted surface, so that the charging side is not flat
  - Thick decorations
  - Accessories, such as finger rings, straps, etc.
- When there is a gap between the charging side of the portable device and the charge area due to a protrusion such as a camera on the charging side of the portable device.
- When the portable device is in contact with, or is covered by any of the following metallic objects:
  - A card that has metal on it, such as aluminum foil, etc.
  - A pack of cigarettes that includes aluminum foil
  - A wallet or bag that is made of metal
  - Coins
  - A heating pad

- CDs, DVDs or other media
- A metal accessory
- A case or cover made of metal
- A flip type case with a magnet on the charging side of the portable device

● Electric wave type wireless remote controls are being used nearby

● 2 or more portable devices are placed on the wireless charger at the same time

● If you use a device with a built-in S-Pen (Galaxy Note series, etc.) and the device with the S-Pen inserted is on the tray.

If charging is abnormal or the operation indicator light continues to flash for any other reason, the wireless charger may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ If the smartphone OS has been updated

If the smartphone OS has been updated to a newer version, its charging specifications may have changed significantly. For details, check the information on the manufacturer's website.

■ Trademark information

● iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

● Galaxy is a trademark or registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

When charging a portable device, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the main part of the portable device while driving.

■ Caution while in motion

When charging a portable device, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the main part of the portable device while driving.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverters, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger.

■ To prevent malfunctions or burns

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in a equipment failure and damage, catch fire, burns due to overheat or electric shock.

● Do not insert any metallic objects between the charge area and the portable device while charging

● Do not attach an aluminum sticker or other metallic object to the charge area

● Do not attach an aluminum sticker or other metallic object to the side of the portable device (or to its case or cover) that touches the charge area

● Do not store items on the wireless charger instead of in an auxiliary box

● Do not subject to a strong force or impact

● Do not disassemble, modify or remove

● Do not charge devices other than specified portable devices

● Keep away from magnetic items

● Do not perform charging if the charging area is dirty

● Do not cover with a cloth or similar material

NOTICE

■ To prevent malfunctions and data corruptions

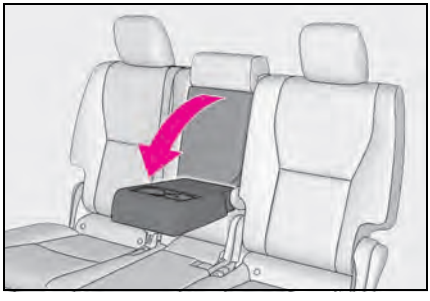
- When charging, bringing a credit, or other magnetic card, or magnetic storage media close to the charge area may clear any stored data due to magnetic influence. Also, do not bring a wristwatch or other precision instrument close to the charge area since doing so may cause it to malfunction.
- Do not charge with a non-contact IC card such as a transportation system IC card inserted between the charging side of a portable device and the charge area. The IC chip may become extremely hot and damage the portable device or IC card. Be especially careful not to charge a portable device inside a case or cover with a non-contact IC card attached.
- Do not leave portable devices inside the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle can become hot in extreme heat, which could cause a malfunction.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the wireless charger for a long period of time when the engine is stopped.

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.



NOTICE

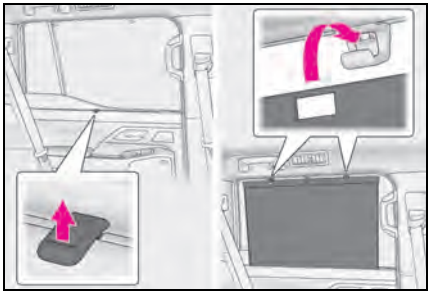
■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Rear door sunshades (if equipped)

Pull the tab of the rear door sunshade and hook the shade on the anchor.

To retract the rear door sunshade, unhook the shade and retract it slowly.



WARNING

■ Rear door sunshade

- When a sunshade is in use, do not put fingers on the anchors or in the groove of the sunshade. Otherwise, a finger may get caught, possibly causing an injury.
- Do not use the sunshade when either hook is detached.

The sunshade may come off, possibly causing an injury.

NOTICE

■ To ensure the rear door sunshade can operate properly

Observe the following precautions

NOTICE

- Do not place anything where it may interrupt opening/closing of the sunshade.
- Do not attach anything to the sunshade.
- Do not apply excessive force to the sunshade when it is being hooked on the anchor.
- Do not operate the sunshade while the rear door is opening or closing.
- Do not store the sunshade in a tilted position.

If stored in a tilted position, the sunshade screen may become creased.

■ To prevent damage to the rear door sunshades

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to the sunshades:

- Do not hook anything other than the sunshade on hook.

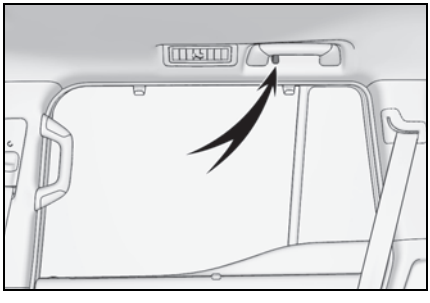
The hook may be damaged.

- Do not pull on the screen while the sunshade is hooked on the anchor.

The screen may be damaged.

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the second seat assist grips.



WARNING

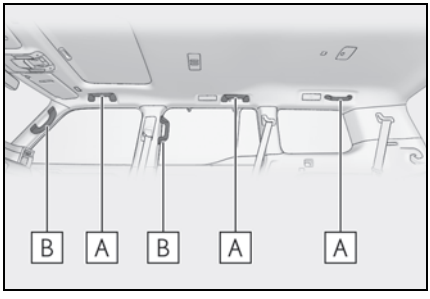
■ Items that must not be hanged on the hook

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Assist grips

An assist grip (type A) installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.

An assist grip (type B) installed on the pillar can be used when getting in or out of the vehicle and others.



A Assist grip (type A)

B Assist grip (type B)

WARNING

■ Assist grip (type A)

Do not use the assist grip (type A) when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 422

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 425

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements .. 428

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 430

Hood 432

Engine compartment 433

Tires 441

Tire inflation pressure 451

Wheels 452

Air conditioning filter 453

Electronic key battery 455

Checking and replacing fuses 457

Light bulbs 459

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

Cleaning instructions

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature. The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

■ Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors
  - Turn off the power back door

Start washing from the front of the vehicle.
Extend the mirrors before driving.

- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface, parts (wheel, etc.) and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

■ High pressure car washes

- As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.
- Do not use the high-pressure washer too close to the bearings and oil seals of drivetrain system parts (such as the differential gear).

If used too close to such parts, the high water pressure may cause water to enter the parts and grease to be washed out, causing the system performance to decrease.

■ Wheels and wheel ornaments (vehicles without matte painted wheels)

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.
  - Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent.
  - Do not use hard brushes.
  - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather.

■ **Aluminum wheels (vehicles with matte painted wheels)**

As matte painted wheels require different cleaning methods than conventional aluminum wheels, be sure to observer the following. For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

- Remove dirt using water. If the wheels are excessively dirty, use a sponge or soft cloth dampened with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the dirt.
- When using detergent, make sure to rinse it off with water immediately. Then use a soft cloth to wipe off the water.
- To prevent the matte paint from being damaged, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Do not scrub or polish the wheels using a brush or dry cloth.
  - Do not use any wheel coatings or abrasive detergents.
  - When using an automatic car wash, disable/do not select the wheel brush function (if such an option is available).
  - Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner.
  - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather.

■ **Brake caliper coating**

- When using detergent, use neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners, as they will damage the coating.
- Do not use detergent on the brake calipers when they are hot.
- Wash detergent off immediately after use.

■ **Brake pads and calipers**

Rust may form if the vehicle is parked with wet brake pads or disc rotors, causing them to stick. Before parking the vehicle after it is washed, drive slowly and apply the brakes several times to dry the parts.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **Plated portions**

If dirt cannot be removed, clean the parts as follows:

- Use a soft cloth dampened with an approximately 5% solution of neutral detergent and water to clean the dirt off.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.
- To remove oily deposits, use alcohol wet wipes or a similar product.

■ **Note for a smart entry & start system**

- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.120)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.

WARNING

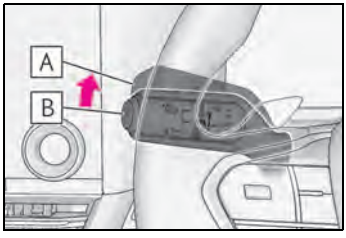
■ **When washing the vehicle**

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

WARNING

■ When cleaning the windshield

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
  Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

NOTICE

■ When using a high pressure car wash

- When washing the vehicle, do not spray the camera or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not spray water directly on the radar which is equipped behind the emblem. Otherwise it may cause the device to be damaged.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts.
  The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts
- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.
- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously. If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.
- Do not wash the underside of the vehicle using a high pressure car washer.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
  Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

WARNING

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components, etc., to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.32)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not let the wireless charger (→P.412) get wet. Failure to do so may cause the charger to become hot and cause burns or could cause electric shock resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water. Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.210)

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear quarter windows and rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear quarter windows and rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

- Remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

The metal areas use a layer of real metal to the surface. It is necessary to clean them regularly. If dirty areas are left uncleaned for long period of time, they may be difficult to clean.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

WARNING

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ **Handling of the battery**

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.438)

■ **Used engine oil**

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid prolonged and repeated contact. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, refer to the "Warranty and Service Booklet".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

■ **Where to go for the maintenance service?**

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for the maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

■ **Does your vehicle need repairs?**

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However,

water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)

- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.69)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.438)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) • Distilled water
Engine coolant/intercooler coolant level (→P.437)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.434)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P.457)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.459)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original
Engine radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator (→P.438)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.451)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.440)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ **When working on the engine compartment**

● Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.

WARNING

- Be careful not to touch the engine, engine radiator, exhaust manifold, etc., right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is off. With the engine switch in ON, the cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.438)

■ When working on or under the vehicle

Do not get under the vehicle with just the jack supporting it. Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc., from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

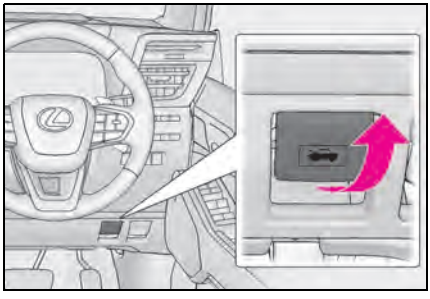
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

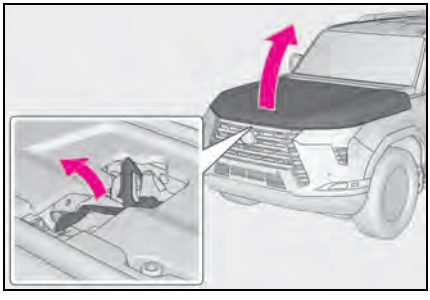
Opening the hood

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



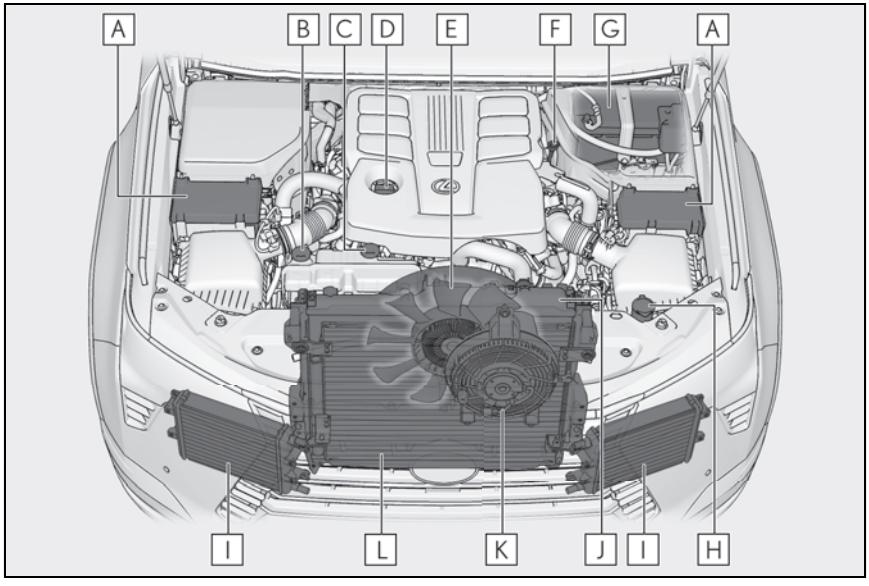
WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Engine compartment

Components



A Fuse boxes (→P.457)

B Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P.437)

C Engine coolant reservoir (→P.437)

D Engine oil filler cap (→P.436)

E Radiator cooling fan (→P.438)

F Engine oil level dipstick (→P.434)

G Battery (→P.438)

H Washer fluid tank (→P.440)

I Intercooler radiators (→P.438)

J Engine radiator (→P.438)

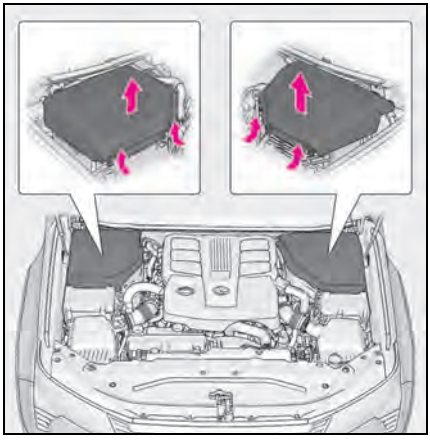
K Electric cooling fan (if equipped)

L Condenser (→P.438)

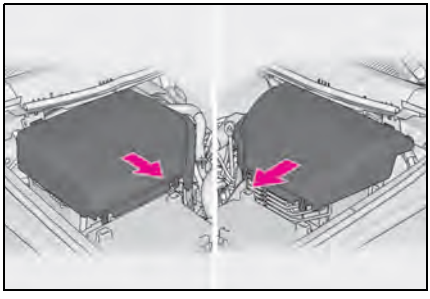
Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the engine compartment cover

1 Push the tab in and pull the lock release, and lift the cover.

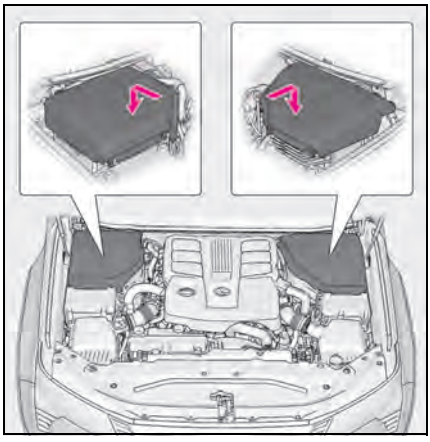


2 Pull the cover toward the front of the vehicle to remove it.



■ Installing the engine compartment cover

Install the cover as shown in the illustration.



NOTICE

■ After installing an engine compartment cover

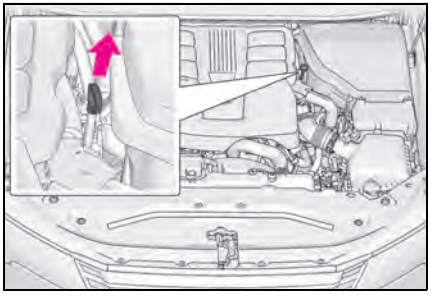
Make sure the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Checking the engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the engine, wait about 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

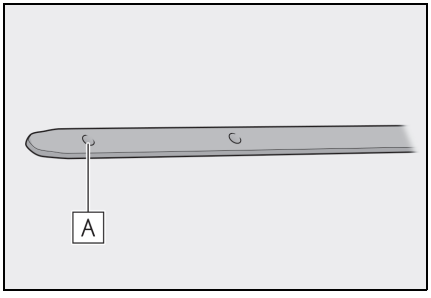
2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check whether the oil level is above low level mark.



A Low level mark

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ Engine oil level rise

If the vehicle is repeatedly driven without the engine warmed up, moisture caused by dew condensation inside the engine or fuel which did not burn mixes into the engine oil, resulting in a rise in engine oil level. However, this is not a malfunction.

For example, the engine become difficult to be warmed up in the following situations.

- When driving a short distance
- When driving at a low speed
- When the outside temperature is low

When checking the engine oil, make sure that the engine is warmed up. If the engine oil level exceeds the refill upper limit mark, contact your Lexus dealer.

Adding engine oil

■ Checking the oil type and preparing the items needed

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

- Engine oil selection

→P.510

- Oil quantity (Low level mark → Refill upper limit mark)

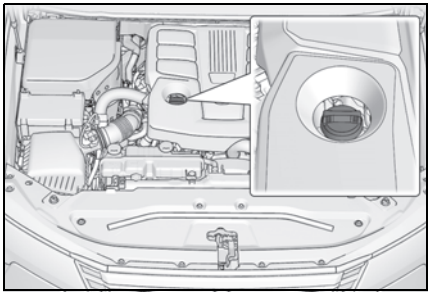
1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp.qt.)

● Items

Clean funnel

■ Adding engine oil

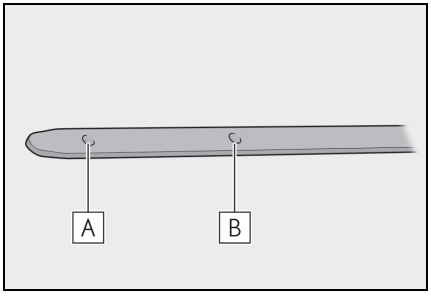
If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.



1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

Make sure that the oil level does not exceed the refill upper limit mark and is between the low level mark and refill upper limit mark.



A Low level mark

B Refill upper limit mark

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ After changing the engine oil

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1 Select ⚙ on the center display.

2 Select “Vehicle customise”.

3 Select “Utility”.

4 Select “Oil maintenance”.

5 Select “Reset”.

A message will be displayed when the reset procedure has been completed.

⚠ WARNING

■ Used engine oil

● Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.

● Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.

● Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When replacing the engine oil

● Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.

NOTICE

- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

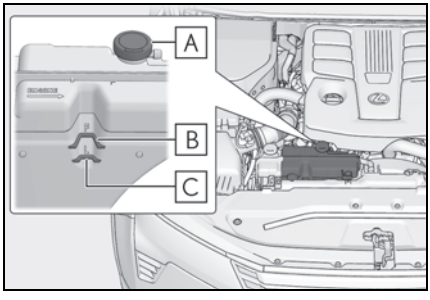
■ After changing the engine oil

Make sure to reset the engine oil maintenance data. If it is not reset, the next maintenance timing will not be displayed properly.

Checking the coolant

■ Engine coolant reservoir

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



A Reservoir cap

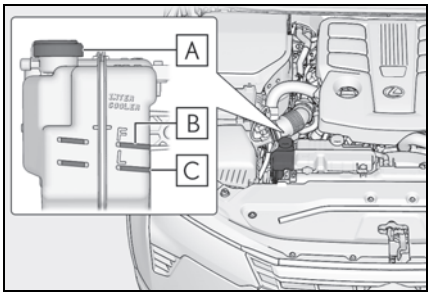
B "F" line

C "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P.502)

■ Intercooler coolant reservoir

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



A Reservoir cap

B "F" line

C "L" line

■ Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.
"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -35°C [-31°F])
For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the engine radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir cap, intercooler radiator, intercooler coolant reservoir cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap or intercooler coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the engine radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator

Check the engine radiator, condenser and intercooler radiator and clear any foreign objects. If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the engine radiator, condenser or intercooler radiator as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Checking the battery

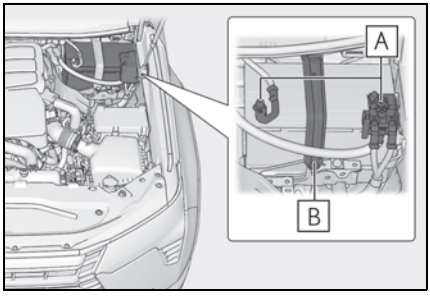
Check the battery as follows.

■ Removing the engine compartment cover

→P.434

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

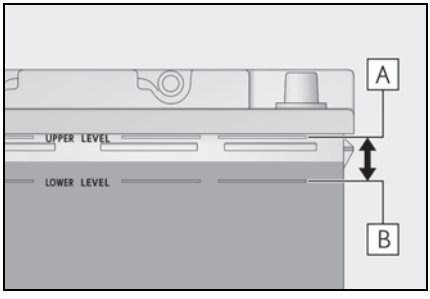


A Terminals

B Clamp

■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the upper and lower lines.



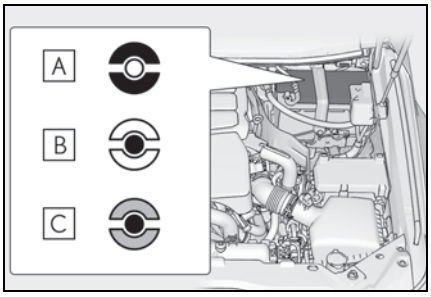
A Upper line

B Lower line

If the fluid level is at or below the lower line, add distilled water.

■ Checking the battery condition (vehicles with battery indicator)

Check the battery condition by indicator color.



A Red and clear: Replacement is necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

B Clear and red: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

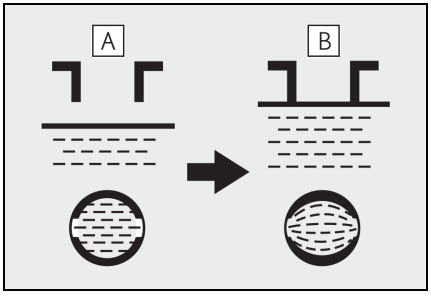
C Blue and red: Good condition

■ **Adding distilled water**

1 Remove the vent plug.

2 Add distilled water.

If the upper line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.



A LOW

B O.K.

3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ **Install the engine compartment cover**

→P.434

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACC. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Chemicals in the battery

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

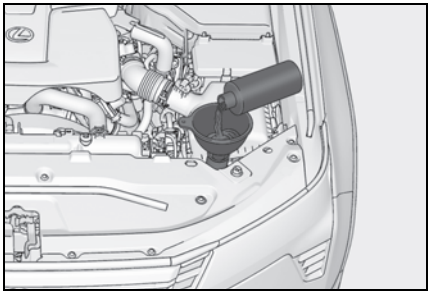
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When adding distilled water

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Adding the washer fluid

If none of the washer does not work or the "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine anti-freeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

■ Diluting washer fluid

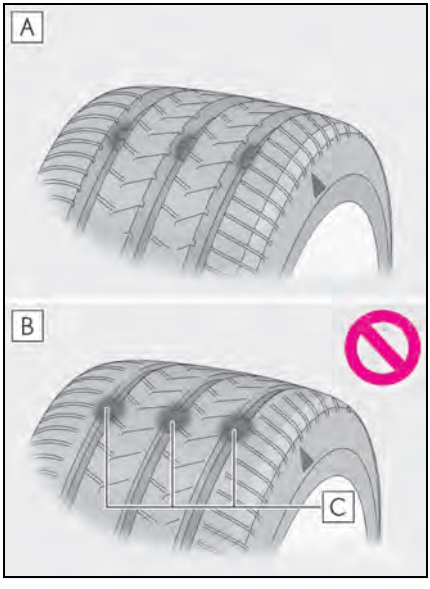
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.
Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or " △ " mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

NOTICE

■ Driving on rough roads

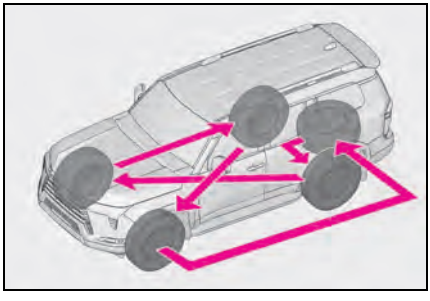
Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 5000 km (3000 miles).

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

■ When rotating the tires

Make sure that the engine switch is OFF. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch is in ON, the tire position information will not be updated.

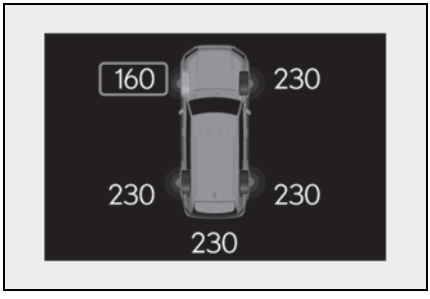
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch to OFF and then to ON, or initialize the system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

Tire pressure warning system

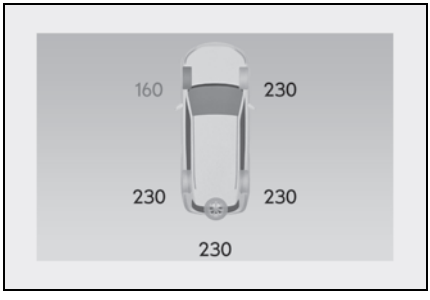
Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

The tire pressure warning system of this vehicle adopts a 2-type warning system. (→P.476)

▶ Multi-information display



▶ Center display



- When "Adjust Pressure" is displayed on the multi-information display (Normal Warning)

A warning with the tire pressure warning light and warning buzzer when there is an unknown level of low tire pressure with the appearance of the tire due to natural air leakage as well as the pressure lowering due to changes in the pressure according to the outside temperature.

- When "Immediately Check tyre when Safe" is displayed on the multi-information display (Emergency Warning)

A warning with the tire pressure warning light and warning buzzer when there is a known level of low tire pressure with the appearance of the tire due to pressure suddenly lowering.
However, the system may not be able to detect sudden tire ruptures (bursting, etc.).

- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the center display. (→P.85)

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Tire inflation pressure

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to ON. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured

using a tire pressure gauge.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly**

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

● If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by changing the location of the vehicle as the radio wave conditions may change.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not operate.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer. (→P.448)

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. In this case, after driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

● When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.

● Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves, corrode the valve, and cause sticking and air leaks.

● When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

Registering the position of each wheel

■ When to register the position of each wheel

It is necessary to register the position of each wheel after performing a tire rotation.

Wheel position registration can be performed by oneself. Wheel position registration is performed by driving forward with moderate left and right turns. However, depending on the driving conditions and driving environment, registration may take some time to complete.

■ Registering the position of each wheel

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place, turn the engine switch off and wait 15 minutes or more.

2 Start the engine.

The wheel position registration procedure cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

3 Select ⚙ on the center display.

4 Select “Vehicle customise”.

5 Select “Tyre pressure”.

6 Select “Tyre rotation”.

7 Select “Continue”.

A message indicating that wheel position registration is being performed will be displayed on the multi-information display. “---” will be displayed for the tire inflation pressure of each tire and wheel position registration will begin.

8 Drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When wheel position registration is complete, a message indicating that registration has been completed and the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Even if it is not possible to drive continuously at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, registration can be completed by driving for a long time. However, if registration does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, park the vehicle in a safe place and leave it with the engine switch in ON for approximately 15 minutes or more, and then perform the driving procedure again.

■ When performing wheel position registration

- Normally, wheel position registration can be completed within approximately 30 minutes.
- Wheel position registration is performed while driving at a vehicle speed of approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.

■ Wheel position registration procedure

- If the engine switch is turned off while registering the wheel position, the next time the engine switch is turned to ON, the wheel position registration will resume and it will not be necessary to restart the procedure.
- While the position of each wheel is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed, if the inflation pressure of a tire drops, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

■ If the wheel position cannot be registered easily

- In the following situations, wheel position registration may take longer than usual to be completed or may not be possible.
  - Vehicle is not driven at approximately 40

km/h (25 mph) or more
- Vehicle is driven on unpaved roads

● If wheel position registration does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 15 minutes and then drive the vehicle again.

● If the vehicle is reversed during wheel position registration, all data collected until then will be cleared. Perform driving again.

Setting the tire pressure

■ When you need to setting the tire pressure

In the following situations, it will be necessary to perform the tire inflation pressure setting procedure of the tire pressure warning system.

- When the specified tire inflation pressure has changed, such as due to carried load, etc.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when the tire size is changed.

If the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted to the specified level, perform the tire inflation setting procedure by selecting specified inflation pressure on the center display. (→P.446)

When the tire inflation pressure is to be other than specified, such as when tires other than the specified size are used, etc., set the tire inflation pressure using the current pressure. Make sure to adjust the tire inflation pressure of each tire to the appropriate level before performing tire pressure setting. The tire pressure warning system operates based on this tire inflation pressure. (→P.446)

■ Setting by selecting a specified tire inflation pressure

1 Start the engine.

The tire inflation pressure cannot be set while the vehicle is moving.

2 Select ⚙ on the center display.

3 Select “Vehicle customise”.

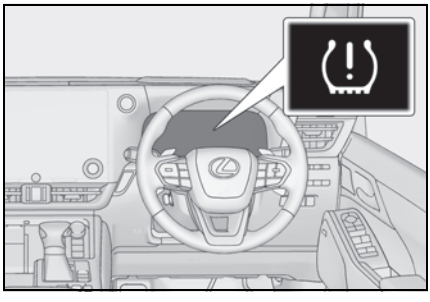
4 Select “Tyre pressure”.

5 Select “Set indicated air pressure” and then select the desired front and rear tire pressures.

6 Select “OK”.

The tire pressure warning light will slowly blink 3 times.

After setting the tire inflation pressure, a message indicating that setting has been completed will be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Setting using the current tire inflation pressure

1 Adjust the tire inflation pressure of each tire to the appropriate level.

Make sure to adjust the tire inflation pressure with the tires cold.

2 Start the engine.

The tire inflation pressure cannot be set while the vehicle is moving.

3 Select ⚙ on the center display.

4 Select “Vehicle customise”.

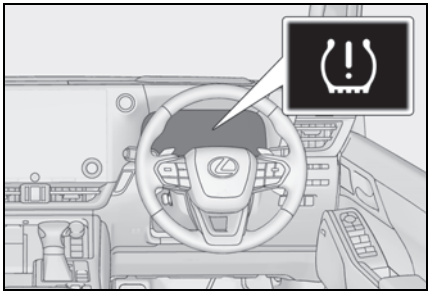
5 Select “Tyre pressure”.

6 Select “Set current air pressure”.

7 Select “Continue”.

The tire pressure warning light will slowly blink 3 times and a message indicating that tire inflation pressure is being set will be displayed on the multi-information display.

After setting the tire inflation pressure, a message indicating that setting has been completed will be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system (Setting using the current tire inflation pressure)**

- When performing the tire pressure setting using the current tire inflation pressure, the warning timing of the tire pressure warning system will vary according to the conditions under which tire pressure setting was performed. Therefore, a warning may be output even if the tire inflation pressure drops slightly or if the tire inflation pressure increases above that when the tire inflation pressure was set.
- Make sure to perform the tire pressure setting procedure after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before performing the tire pressure setting procedure or adjusting the tire inflation pressure.

■ **Tire inflation pressure setting procedure (Setting using the current tire inflation pressure)**

- If the engine switch is turned off while setting the tire inflation pressure, the next time the engine switch is turned to ON, the setting procedure will resume and it will not be necessary to restart the procedure.
- If the tire inflation pressure setting procedure is started unnecessarily, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level with the tires cold and then perform setting by selecting a specified tire inflation pressure, or perform the tire inflation pressure setting procedure with the current tire inflation pressure.

■ **If the tire inflation pressure cannot be set easily**

- Normally, it takes approximately 3 minutes to complete the setting procedure to the current tire inflation pressure.
- If the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times when starting the tire inflation pressure setting procedure, the procedure may not have started. Perform the procedure again from the beginning.
- If tire inflation pressure setting procedure cannot be completed after performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When setting using the current tire inflation pressure**

Make sure to adjust the tire inflation pressure of each tire to the appropriate level before performing tire pressure setting. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not illuminate even if the tire inflation pressure drops or may illuminate even though the tire inflation pressure is normal.

Registering ID codes

■ When to register ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

■ How to registration ID code

Before performing ID code registration, make sure that no wheels with tire pressure warning valve and transmitters installed are near the vehicle.

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place, turn the engine switch off and wait 15 minutes or more.

2 Start the engine.

The ID code registration procedure cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

3 Select ⚙ on the center display.

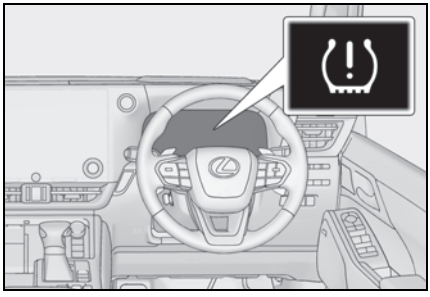
4 Select “Vehicle customise”.

5 Select “Tyre pressure”.

6 Check if the desired wheel set (“Set 1” or “Set 2”) is displayed.

ID codes will be registered to the displayed wheel set.
To change the wheel set to be registered, select the displayed set, and then select the wheel set you wish to register.

If ID codes have already been registered for that wheel set, the tire pressure warning light will slowly blink 3 times, and a message indicating that change is occurring will be displayed on the multi-information display.

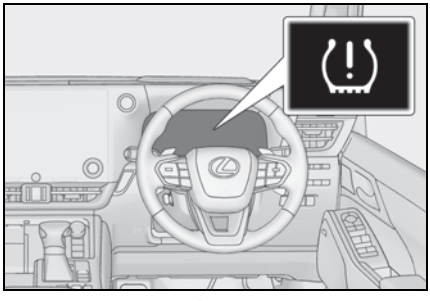


7 Select “New tyre registration”.

8 Select “Continue”.

The tire pressure warning light will slowly blink 3 times and a message indicating that ID code registration is being performed will be displayed on the multi-information display. Wheel set changing will be canceled and registration will begin.

When registration is being performed, the tire pressure warning light will blink for approximately 1 minute then illuminate and “---” will be displayed for the inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display.



9 Drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When registration is complete, the tire pressure warning light will turn off and a message indicating that registration has been completed will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Registration may take longer than normal

to complete if the vehicle speed cannot be maintained at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more. If registration cannot be completed after driving for 1 hour or more, perform the registration procedure again from the beginning.

10 If the tire inflation pressure of the wheel set installed differs from that of the previous set, it will be necessary to perform the tire inflation pressure setting procedure of the tire pressure warning system. (→P.446)

If the specified tire inflation pressure is the same, it will not be necessary to perform the tire inflation pressure setting procedure.

■ **When registering ID codes**

- Normally, wheel position registration can be completed within approximately 30 minutes.
- ID code registration is performed while driving at a vehicle speed of approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- ID codes can be registered by yourself, but depending on the driving conditions and driving environment, registration may take some time to complete.
- When using a wheel set which all of the ID codes have already been registered, the wheel set can be changed in a short amount of time. (→P.449)

■ **If ID codes are not registered easily**

- In the following situations, ID code registration may take longer than usual to be completed or may not be possible.
  - When the vehicle has not been parked for approximately 15 minutes or more before being driven
  - Vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more
  - Vehicle is driven on unpaved roads
  - Vehicle is driven near other vehicles and system cannot recognize tire pressure warning valve and transmitters of your vehicle over those of other vehicles
  - Wheel with tire pressure warning valve and transmitter installed is inside or near the vehicle
- If the vehicle is reversed during registration, all data collected until then will be cleared. Perform driving again.
- If registration does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, perform the ID code registration procedure again from the beginning.
- If the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times when starting ID code registration procedure, the procedure may not have started. Perform the procedure again from the beginning.
- If the ID codes cannot be registered even when performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

Canceling ID code registration

To cancel ID code registration after it has been started, select "New tire registration" again on the center display.

If ID code registration has been canceled, the tire pressure warning light will turn off.

If the warning light does not turn off, ID code registration may not have been cancelled correctly. To cancel registration, select "New tire registration" again on the center display.

Selecting wheel set

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system with a function to register two sets of ID codes. This allows for registration of a second wheel set, for example a winter set.

- The wheel set can be changed only if a second wheel set has been registered to the system. If a second

wheel set has not been registered, “Set 2 (Unregistered)” will be displayed and it will not be possible to change to the selected wheel set.

ID codes can be registered by yourself. (→P.448)

- Only a change between both registered wheel set is possible, mixing between these wheel sets is not supported.
- While registering ID codes, it may not be possible to change between wheel sets normally. Cancel registration before changing between wheel sets.

■ Changing ID codes between different wheel sets

1 Install the desired wheel set.

2 Select ⚙ on the center display.

3 Select “Vehicle customise”.

4 Select “Tyre pressure”.

5 Select the wheel set (“Set 1” or “Set 2”) displayed for the set selection setting.

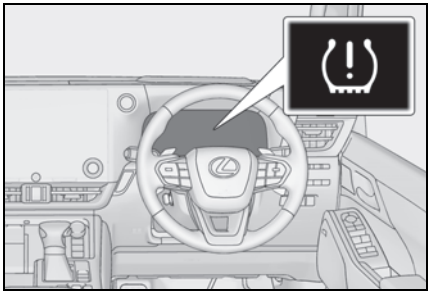
6 Select the wheel set you wish to register, and then select “OK”.

The tire pressure warning light will slowly blink 3 times, a message indicating that change is occurring will be displayed, and the wheel set change will begin.

Wheel set change will begin and the tire pressure warning light will blink for 1 minute and then illuminate. Also, while the change is being performed, “---” will be displayed for the tire inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display.

After approximately 2 minutes, the wheel set change will complete, the tire pressure warning light will turn off, and a completion message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If changing does not complete after approximately 4 minutes, a message indicating that the change could not be completed will be displayed.
Check which wheel set is installed and perform the change procedure again from the beginning.



7 If the specified tire inflation pressure of the wheel set installed differs from that of the previous set, it will be necessary to perform the tire inflation pressure setting procedure of the tire pressure warning system. (→P.446)

If the specified tire inflation pressure is the same, it will not be necessary to perform the tire inflation pressure setting procedure.

8 Register the position of each wheel. (→P.445)

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain the proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P.514)

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.444)

WARNING

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

NOTICE

Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).

- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

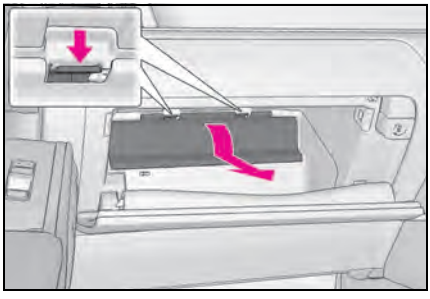
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

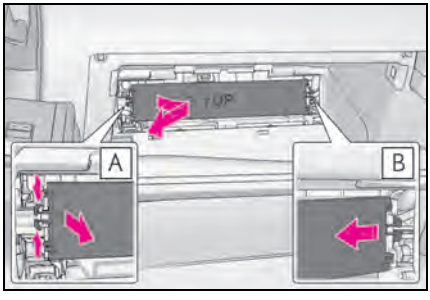
1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the glove box and remove the separate tray. (→P.401)

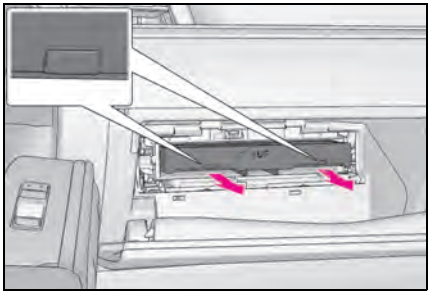
3 Remove the filter panel.



4 Unlock the filter cover (A), pull the filter cover out of the claws (B), and remove the filter cover.

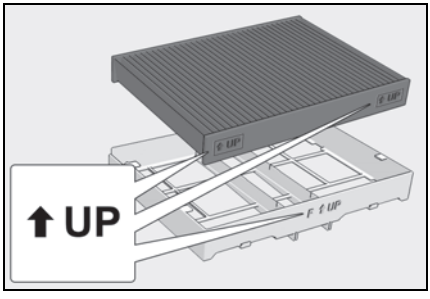


5 Remove the filter case.



6 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The " ⇧ UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Warranty and Service Booklet".)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

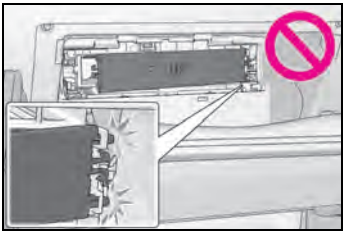
NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

■ To prevent damage to the filter cover

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.



Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.
As the key may be damaged if the following procedure is not performed properly, it is recommended that key battery replacement be performed by your Lexus dealer.

If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Items to prepare

Prepare the following before replacing the battery:

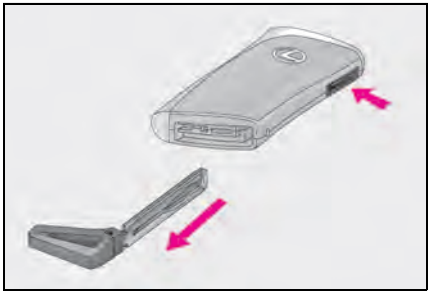
- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

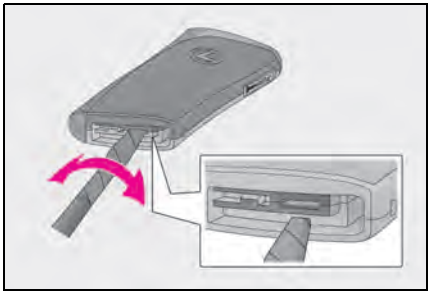
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.



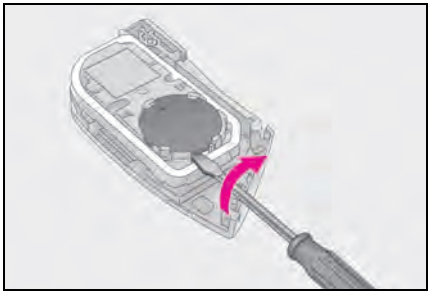
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



3 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



WARNING

■ Battery precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- A coin battery or button battery is used in the electronic key. If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.
- If the cover cannot be firmly closed, stop using the electronic key and stow the key in the place where children cannot reach, and then contact your Lexus dealer.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ To prevent battery explosion or leakage of flammable liquid or gas

- Replace the battery with a new battery of the same type. If a wrong type of battery is used, it may explode.
- Do not expose batteries to extremely low pressure due to high altitude or extremely high temperatures.
- Do not burn, break or cut a battery.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the battery

Use a flathead screwdriver of appropriate size. Applying excessive force may deform or damage the cover.

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

Checking and replacing fuses

1 Turn the engine switch off.

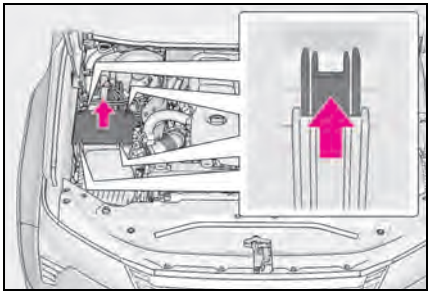
2 Remove the engine compartment cover (→P.434)

3 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment

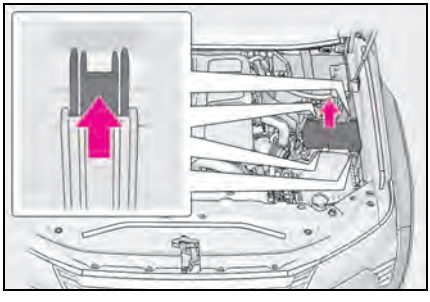
Type A:

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



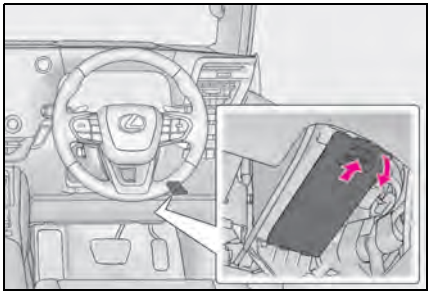
Type B:

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



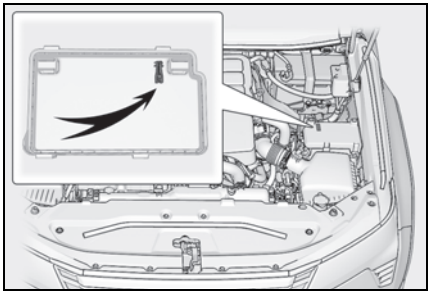
▶ Instrument panel

Remove the lid.



4 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



5 Check if the fuse is blown.

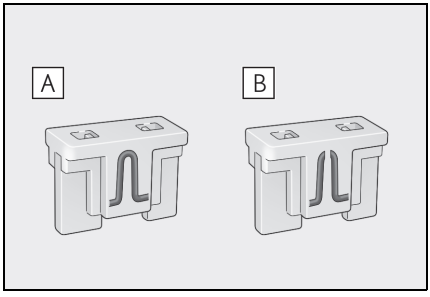
Type A and B:

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:

Contact your Lexus dealer.

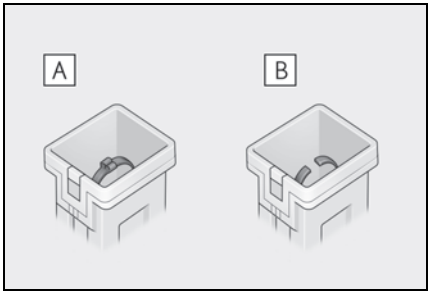
▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

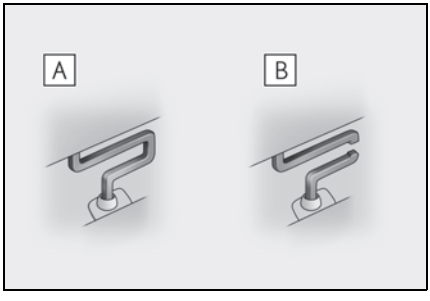
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

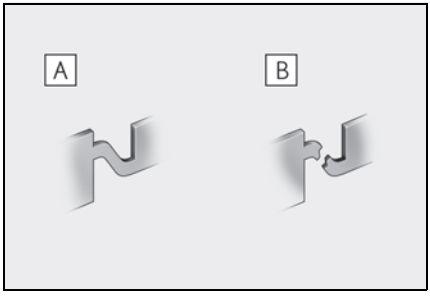
▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type D



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

■ After a fuse is replaced

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.459)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ When replacing light bulbs

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

WARNING

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.

WARNING

- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

If any lights burn out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ LED lights

The lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the light lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the light.

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 462

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 462

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising .. 463

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 465

If you think something is wrong 468

Fuel pump shut off system 469

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 470

If a warning message is displayed 479

If you have a flat tire..... 485

If the engine will not start 494

If you lose your keys 496

If the electronic key does not operate properly 496

If the vehicle battery is discharged 498

If your vehicle overheats 502

If the vehicle becomes stuck 505

Emergency flashers

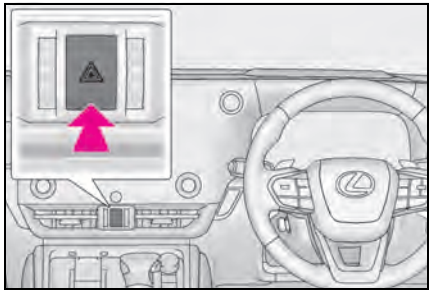
The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash.

To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

- If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the emergency flashers will turn on automatically.
  The emergency flashers will turn off automatically after operating for approximately 20 minutes. To manually turn the emergency flashers off, press the switch twice. (The emergency flashers may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

■ If emergency stopped

The functions of the air conditioning, etc. may be partially limited in order to reduce the power consumption of the battery.

WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control. However, power assist for these systems may be lost making it difficult to steer or brake before stopping the vehicle depending on the remaining charge in the battery or usage conditions. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising

This vehicle is not designed to be able to drive on roads that are deeply flooded with water. Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. It is dangerous to remain in the vehicle, if it is anticipated that the vehicle will be flooded or set adrift. Remain calm and follow the following.

- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door cannot be opened, open the window using the power window switch and ensure an escape route.
- If the window can be opened, exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the door and window cannot be opened due to the rising water, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle and then open the door after waiting for the rising water to enter the vehicle, and exit the vehicle. When the outside water level exceeds half the height of the door, the door cannot be opened from the inside due to water pressure.

Water level exceeds the floor

When the water level exceeds the floor and time has passed, the electrical equipment will get damaged, the power windows will not operate, the engine stop, and the vehicle may not be able to get moving.

Using an emergency escape hammer*1

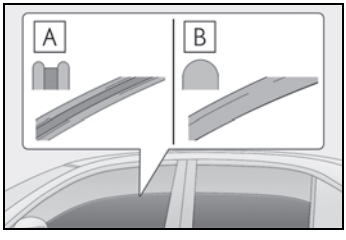
Laminated glass*2 is used in the windshield and the windows on this vehicle. Laminated glass cannot be shattered with an emergency hammer*1.

*1: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

*2: If equipped

How to distinguish laminated glass

When looking from the cross-sectional view point, laminated glass is two sheets of glass pasted together.



A Laminated glass

B Tempered glass

WARNING

Caution while driving

Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and cannot move, as well as become flooded and set adrift, which may lead to death.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

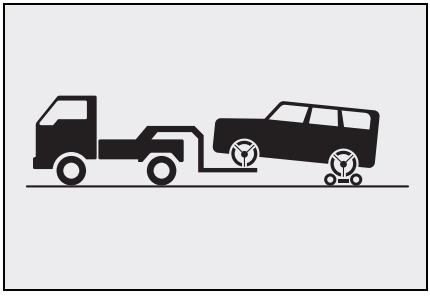
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

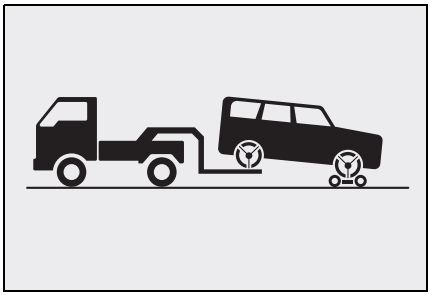
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

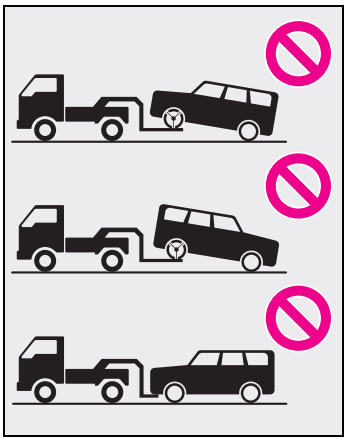
WARNING

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.



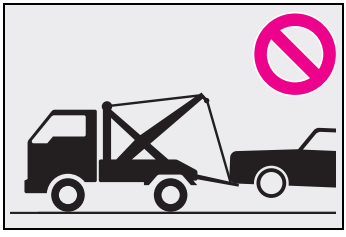
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

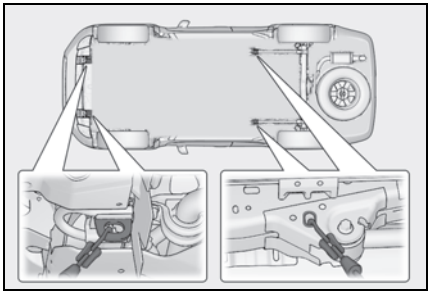
■ Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

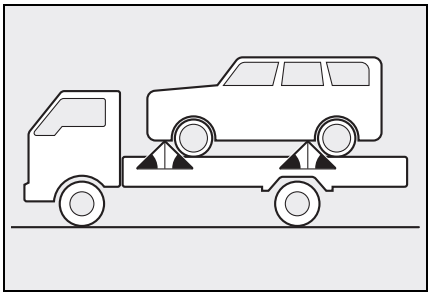


Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.



If you cannot tie down the vehicle using the method above, use tire strapping belts.

NOTICE

■ Using a flatbed truck

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

Emergency towing

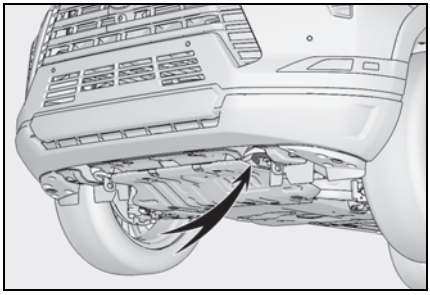
If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

1 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing hook.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.



2 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Put the four-wheel drive control switch in "H4" and unlock the center and rear* differential.

*: If equipped

4 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.

Turn automatic mode off. (→P.189)

When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P.184

■ While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ While towing

When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing hook, cables or chains. The towing hook, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.
- Engine oil pressure gauge continually points lower than normal.
- Voltmeter continually points higher or lower than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACC or OFF.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Red)	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The parking brake system; or ● The electronically controlled brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Charging system warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ High coolant temperature warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine is overheating → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method (→P.502)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronic engine control system; ● The electronic throttle control system; ● The electronic automatic transmission control system; or ● The DPF system (if equipped) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ SRS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ ABS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The ABS; or ● The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Red)  (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ PCS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the PCS (Pre-Collision System). → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate.

■ LTA indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.**

■ LDA indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the LDA (Lane Departure Alert) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.**

■ Cruise control indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.**

■ Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the dynamic radar cruise control system. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.**

■ Driving assist information indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates one of the following systems is malfunctioning. ● PCS (Pre-Collision System) ● LDA (Lane Departure Alert) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** Indicates one of the following systems is malfunctioning or disabled. ● PKSB (Parking Support Brake) ● BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) ● RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert) ● Safe Exit Assist → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.**

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking assist-sensor function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.479)**

■ Inappropriate pedal operation warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When a buzzer sounds: ● Brake Override System is malfunctioning ● Drive-Start Control is malfunctioning ● Drive-Start Control is operating → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** When a buzzer does not sound: Brake Override System is operating. → **Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display with a message.

■ Slip indicator light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC system; ● The Trailer Sway Control system; ● The Active TRC system; ● The hill-start assist control system; ● The downhill assist control system; ● The Multi-terrain Select; or ● The Crawl Control (if equipped) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Low speed four-wheel drive indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the four-wheel drive system when the light flashes rapidly. → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Center differential lock indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the center differential lock system when the light flashes rapidly. → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Rear differential lock indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the rear differential lock system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Parking brake indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes)	It is possible that the parking brake is not fully engaged or released → **Operate the parking brake switch once again.** This light comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.

■ Brake hold operated indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Low fuel level warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 12.0 L (3.2 gal., 2.6 Imp.gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the light comes on: ● Low tire inflation pressure from natural causes → **After the temperature of the tires has lowered sufficiently, check the inflation pressure of each tire and adjust them to the specified level.** ● Low tire inflation pressure from flat tire → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and perform the necessary actions.** When the light comes on after blinking for approximately 1 minute (a buzzer does not sounds): Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system → **Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.**

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

*: Driver's and passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:
The driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**

*: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:

The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the seat belt is fastened and unfastened and the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

■ Passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor or rear passenger detection sensor (if equipped) may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Electric power steering system warning light

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Inspect the tires to check if a tire is punctured.

If a tire is punctured: →P.485

If none of the tires are punctured:

Turn the engine switch to OFF then turn it to ON. Check if the tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute then stays on

There may be a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

After the temperature of the tires has lowered sufficiently, check the inflation pressure of each tire and adjust them to the specified level.

If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, check that the inflation pressure of each tire is at the specified level and perform initialization. (→P.446)

If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed since performing the tire inflation pressure setting procedure, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off.

Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly**

→P.444

WARNING

■ **If a warning light comes on or a warning buzzer sounds when a warning message is shown on the multi-information display**

Check and follow the message shown on the multi-information display.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy.
When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

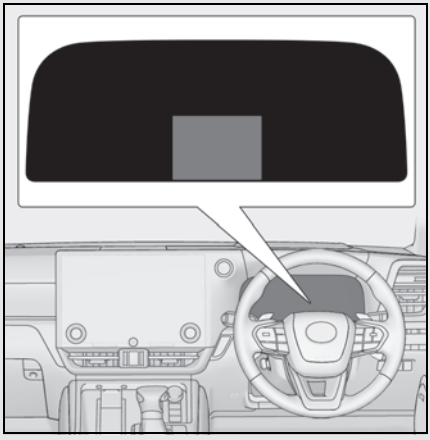
NOTICE

■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



If a warning message is displayed again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
—	Sounds	• Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed • Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
—	Does not sound	• Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance • Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ **Warning messages**

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is displayed**

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If a message about an operation is shown**

● If a message about an operation of the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is shown

- A warning message about an operation of the brake pedal may be shown while the driving assist systems such as PCS (Pre-Collision system) or the dynamic radar cruise control. If a warning message is shown, be sure to decelerate the vehicle or follow an instruction shown on the multi-information display.
- A warning message is shown when Brake Override System operates. (→P.164)
- A warning message is shown when Drive-Start Control (→P.277) operates. Follow the instructions on the multi-information display.

● If a message about an operation of the engine switch is shown

An instruction for operation of the engine switch is shown when the incorrect procedure for starting the engine is performed or the engine switch is operated incorrectly. Follow the instructions shown on the multi-information display to operate the engine switch again.

● If a message about a shift lever operation is shown

To prevent the shift lever from being operated incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, a message that requires

shifting the shift lever may be shown on the multi-information display. In that case, follow the instruction of the message and shift the shift lever.

- If a message or image about an open/close state of a part or replenishment of a consumable is shown

Confirm the part indicated by the multi-information display or a warning light, and then perform the coping method such as closing the open door or replenishing a consumable.

If a message that indicates the need for referring to Owner's Manual is displayed

- If "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown, follow the instructions, accordingly. (→P.502)
- If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction. Immediately have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - "Transmission Oil Temp High Stop in a Safe Place and See Owner's Manual"
  - "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction"
- If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.
  - "Oil Pressure Low"
  - "Braking Power Low"

If "Engine Stopped Steering Power Low" is displayed

This message is displayed if the engine is stopped while driving.

When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

If "Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle" is displayed

Message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without turning the engine switch to OFF with the shift lever in any position other than P.

Shift the shift lever to P.

If "Auto Power OFF to Conserve Battery" is displayed

Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function.

Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

If "Engine Oil Level Low Add or Replace" is displayed

The engine oil level may be low. Check the level of the engine oil, and add engine oil if necessary. (→P.436) This message may be displayed if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level surface and check if the message disappears.

If "Oil Maintenance Required Soon" is displayed

Indicates that the engine oil should be scheduled to be changed.

Check the engine oil and change it if necessary. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.436)

If "Oil Maintenance Required" is displayed

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed.

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by your Lexus dealer. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.436)

If "Parking Assist Unavailable Sensor Blocked" is displayed

A sensor may be covered with water drops, ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the water drops, ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal.

Also, due to ice forming on a sensor at low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or the sensor may not be able to detect an object. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.

If a sensor is dirty, the position of the dirty

sensor will be shown on the display.

If an abnormality is displayed even though there are no water drops, ice, snow or dirt, the sensor may be operating abnormally. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If "Parking Assist Unavailable Low Visibility See Owner's Manual" is displayed

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- RCD (Rear Camera Detection)
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake)

Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the rear cameras.

If "System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)
- RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)
- Safe Exit Assist
- Lexus parking assist-sensor
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake)
- RCD (Rear Camera Detection)

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

If "System Stopped See Owner's Manual" is displayed

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)
- RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)
- Safe Exit Assist
- Lexus parking assist-sensor
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake)
- RCD (Rear Camera Detection)

Follow the following correction methods.

- Check the voltage of the battery
- Check the sensors that the Lexus Safety System + uses for foreign matter covering them. Remove them if any. (→P.211)
- Check if the back door is open.

Indicates the sensors may not be operating properly. (→P.258, 262, 265, 271, 276)

- Check the rear bumper around the sensors used by the BSM, RCTA or Safe Exit Assist for foreign matter covering them. Remove them if any. (→P.255)
- Check the sensors including camera sensors used by the Lexus parking assist-sensor PKSB, or RCD for foreign matter covering them. Remove them if any. (→P.263)
- When problems are solved and the sensors are operational, this indication may disappear by itself.

■ **If "System Stopped Front Camera Low Visibility See Owner's Manual" is displayed**

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)

Follow the following correction methods.

- Using the windshield wipers, remove the dirt or foreign matter from the windshield.
- Using the air conditioning system, defog the windshield.
- Close the hood, remove any stickers, etc. to clear the obstruction in front of the front camera.

■ **If "System Stopped Front Camera Out of Temperature Range Wait until Normal Temperature" is displayed**

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)

Follow the following correction methods.

- If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle is parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera
- If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high
- If the front camera is cold, such after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera

■ **If "System Stopped Front Radar Sensor Blocked Clean Radar Sensor" is displayed**

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control

Follow the following correction methods.

- Check if there is any foreign matter attached to the radar sensor or radar sensor cover and clean them if necessary (→P.211)
- This message may be displayed when driving in an open area with few nearby vehicles or structures, such as a desert, grasslands, suburbs, etc.
  The message may be cleared by driving the vehicle in an area with structures, vehicles, etc. nearby.

■ **If "System Stopped Front Radar Sensor Out of Temperature Range Wait until Normal Temperature" is displayed**

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control

The temperature of the radar sensor is out-

side of the operating range. Wait for the temperature to become appropriate.

■ **If "System Stopped Front Radar In Self Calibration See Owner's Manual" is displayed**

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control

Follow the following correction methods.

- Check if there is any foreign matter attached to the radar sensor or radar sensor cover and clean them if necessary (→P.263)
- The radar sensor may be misaligned and will be adjusted automatically while driving. Continue driving for a while.

■ **If "Cruise Control Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is displayed**

Indicates one of the following systems is disabled.

- Dynamic radar cruise control
- Cruise control

A message is displayed when the driving assist switch is pushed repeatedly.

Press the driving assist switch quickly and firmly.

■ **If a following message is shown, take appropriate action and confirm that the message has disappeared.**

- "CRAWL Unavailable See Owner's Manual" (→P.363)

WARNING

■ **If a warning light comes on or a warning buzzer sounds when a warning message is shown on the multi-information display**

Check and follow the message displayed on the multi-information display. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **While the engine oil level warning is displayed**

Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.
For details about tires: →P.441

WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

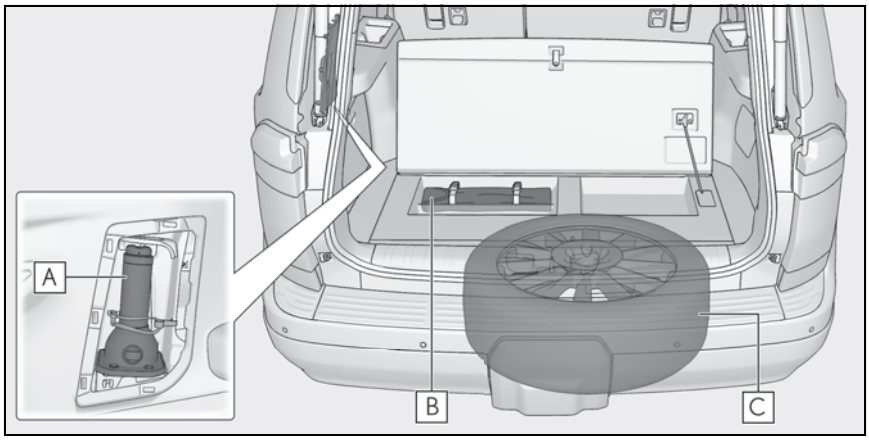
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Turn off the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (→P.59)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.462)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

▶ 5-passenger models

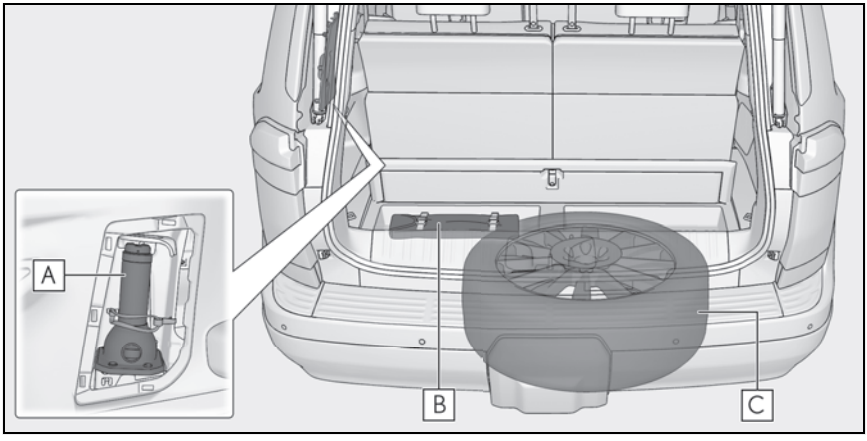


A Jack

B Tool bag

C Spare tire

▶ 7-passenger models

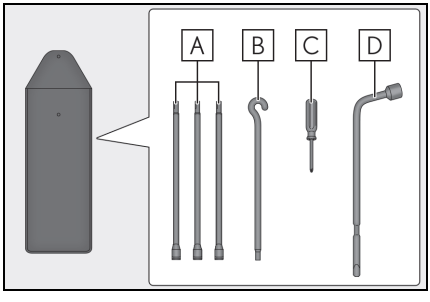


A Jack

B Tool bag

C Spare tire

Tools



A Jack handle extension bar

B Jack handle bar

C Screwdriver

D Wheel nut wrench

WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

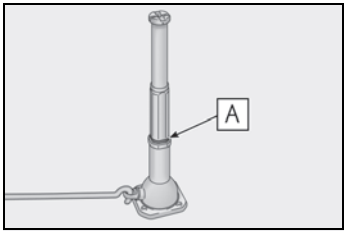
Observe the following precautions.

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.

WARNING

- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Do not continue jacking up once the yellow caution line A has appeared.



- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

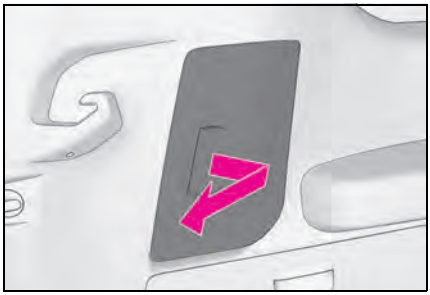
Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle will be injured.

■ Using the jack handle

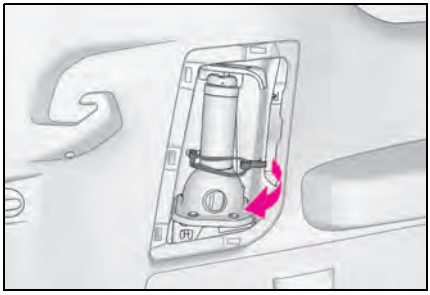
Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using the wheel nut wrench, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

Taking out the jack

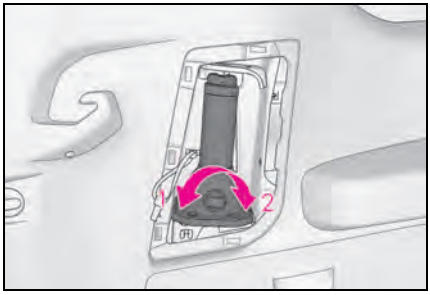
1 Remove the cover.



2 Unhook the rubber strap.



3 Take out the jack.



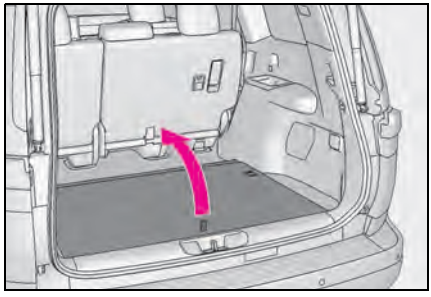
1 Loosen
2 Tighten

After using the jack, install the jack in the exact reverse order from which it was removed. Also, the jack should be properly secured using a rubber strap.

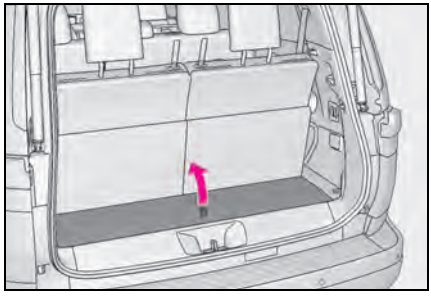
Taking out the tool bag

1 Lift the deck board.

▶ 5-passenger models

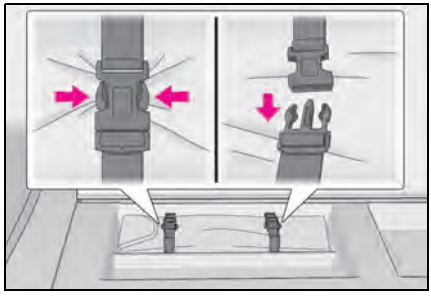


▶ 7-passenger models

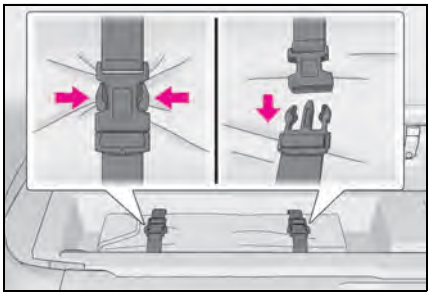


2 Take out the tool bag.

▶ 5-passenger models



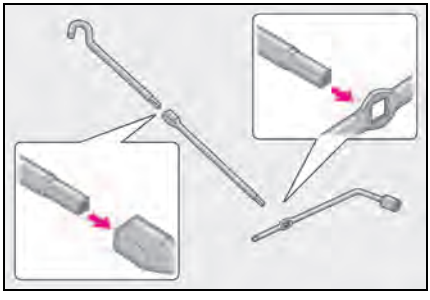
▶ 7-passenger models



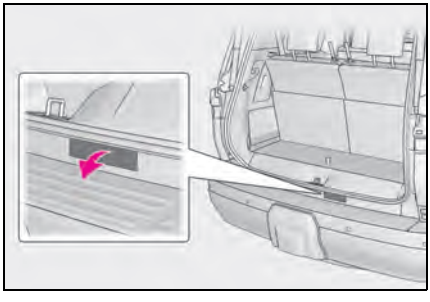
Taking out the spare tire

1 Assemble the jack handle end, jack handle extensions and wheel nut wrench.

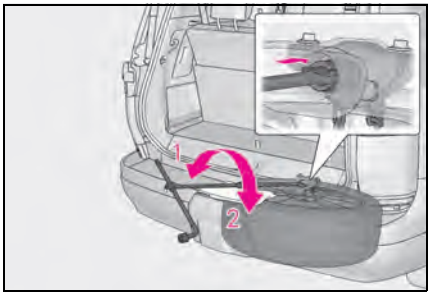
Remove the jack handle bar, jack handle extension bar and wheel nut wrench from the tool bag and assemble by following these step.



2 Remove the cover.



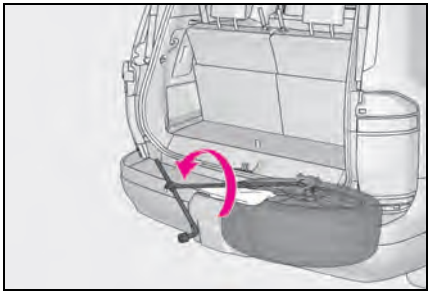
3 Insert the jack handle into the lowering screw.



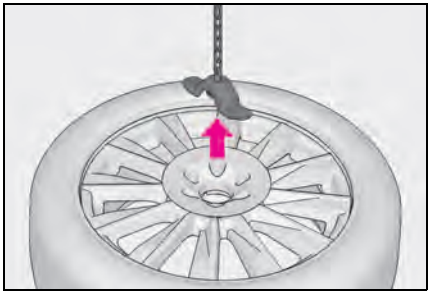
1 Lower
2 Raise

Place a rag under the jack handle to protect the rear bumper.

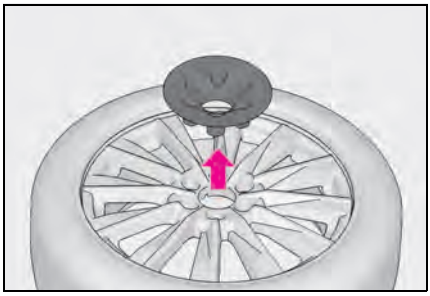
4 Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.



5 Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

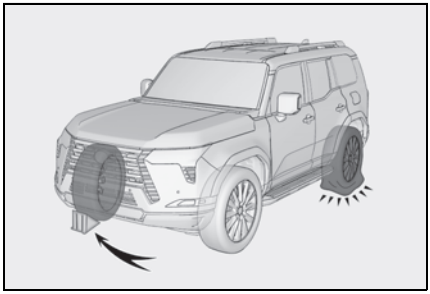


6 Remove the spare wheel cover.



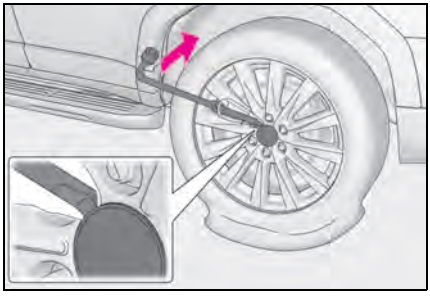
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.

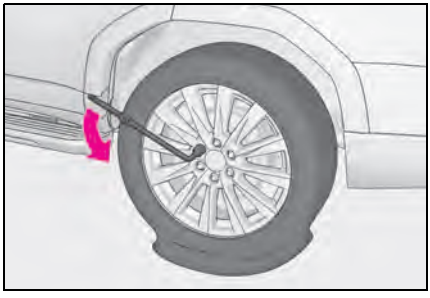


Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Pry off the wheel ornament, using the beveled end of the wheel ornament remover as shown.

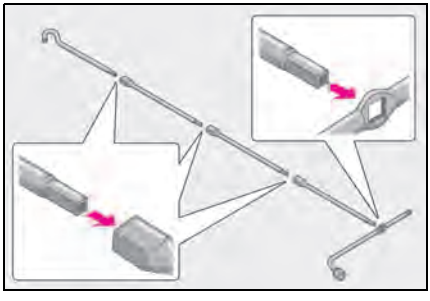


3 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



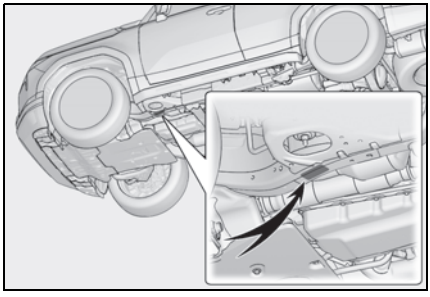
4 Assemble the jack handle end, jack handle extensions and wheel nut wrench.

Remove the jack handle bar, jack handle extension bar and wheel nut wrench from the tool bag and assemble by following these step.

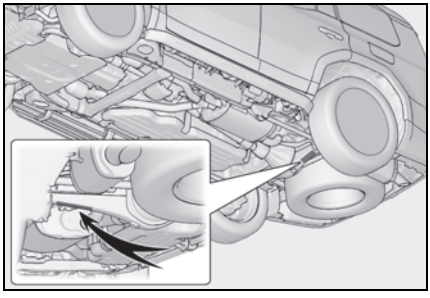


5 Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

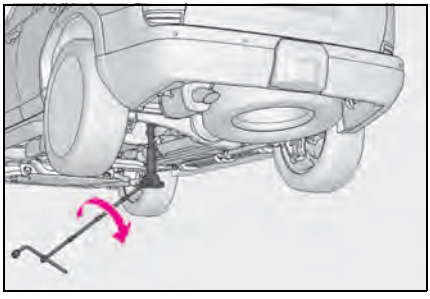
▶ Front



▶ Rear



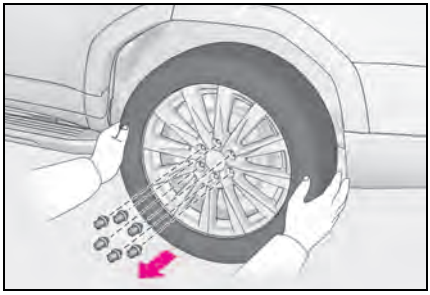
6 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



7 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to

avoid scratching the wheel surface.



WARNING

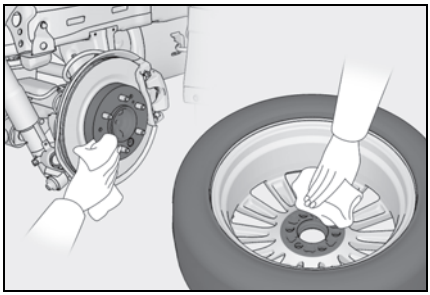
■ Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
  - Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
  - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - After replacing a tire, check the tightening torque as soon as possible. Wheel nut torque: 131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to cancel the power back door system. (→P.114) Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

Installing the spare tire

1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

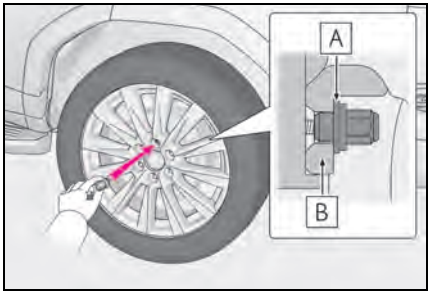
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



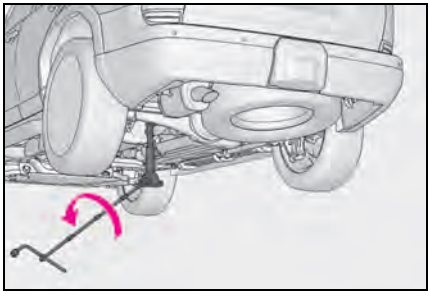
2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Turn the wheel nuts until the washers A

come into contact with the disc wheel B .

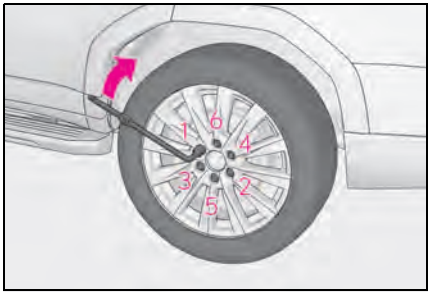


3 Lower the vehicle.



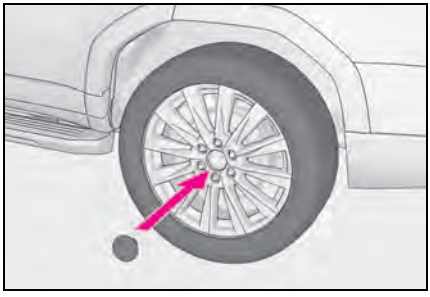
4 Securely tighten the wheel nuts two or three times in the order shown in the illustration using a wheel nut wrench.

Tightening torque:
131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)



5 Reinstall the wheel ornament.

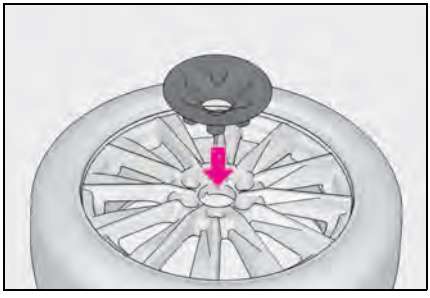
Remove the center wheel ornament from the flat tire by pushing from the reverse side, and reinstall it.



Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools

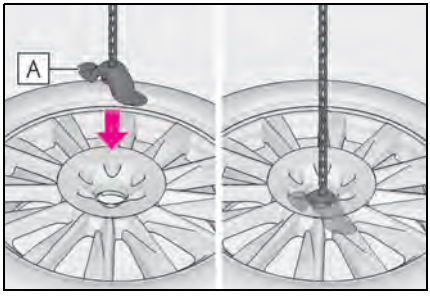
1 Lay down the tire with the valve stem facing up

2 Install the spare wheel cover.



3 Install the holding bracket A . Turn the jack handle extension clockwise to take up slack in the chain.

Then, check to ensure the holding bracket is centered in the wheel hub.



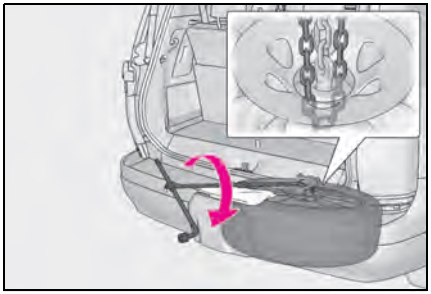
4 Raise the tire.

Place a rag under the jack handle to protect the rear bumper.

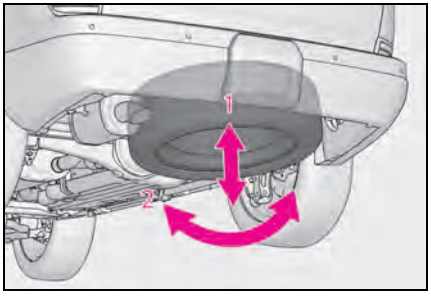
While raising, secure the tire, taking care that the tire goes straight up without catching on any surrounding part, to prevent it from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.

After the tire goes half way up, check that the suspended chain is able to enter the tire hole, for proper storage.

Tightening torque:
47 N•m (4.8 kgf•m, 34.7 ft•lbf)



5 Confirm that the tire is not loose after tightening:



1 Push and pull the tire

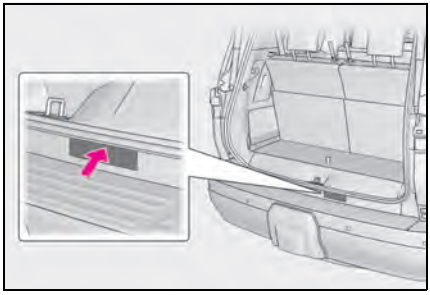
2 Try rotating

Visually check to ensure the tire is not hung on surrounding parts.

If looseness or misassembly exists, repeat step **4** and step **5**.

6 Repeat step **5**, any time the tire is lowered or disturbed.

7 Install the cover as shown in the illustration.



8 Stow the tools and jack securely.

■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P.446)

WARNING

■ Stowing the flat tire

Failure to follow the proper steps listed under stowing the tire may result in damage to the spare tire carrier and loss of the tire, which could result in death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ When stowing the flat tire

Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P.444)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.179), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.179)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.57)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.498)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P.495)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.498)
- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally:

1 Pull the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.188)

Parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

3 Turn the engine switch to ACC.*1, 2

4 Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*1: ACC mode can be enabled/disabled on the customize menu.

*2: When ACC is disabled, turn the engine switch to ON then OFF, and start the engine as described in P.497 within 5 seconds.

If you lose your keys

New genuine keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the other key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key (if equipped) that were provided with your vehicle.

If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.120) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

■ When the electronic key does not work properly

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on.
  (Customizable features: →P.518)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.120)
- The electronic key function may be suspended. (→P.120)

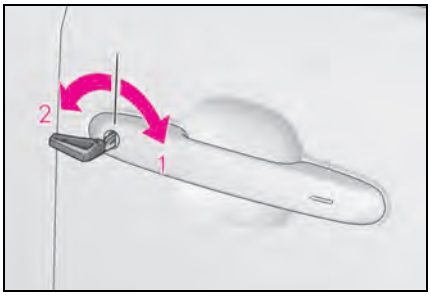
NOTICE

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction, or other key related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle (including the card key) to your Lexus dealer.

Locking and unlocking the doors

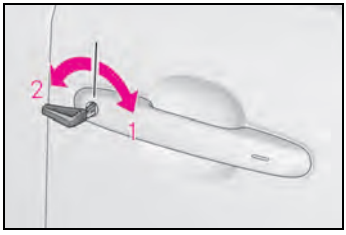
Use the mechanical key (→P.93) in order to perform the following operations.



1 Locks all the doors

2 Unlocks all the doors

Key linked functions



1 Closes the windows and the moon roof*1 (turn and hold)*2

2 Opens the windows and the moon roof*1 (turn and hold)*2

*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

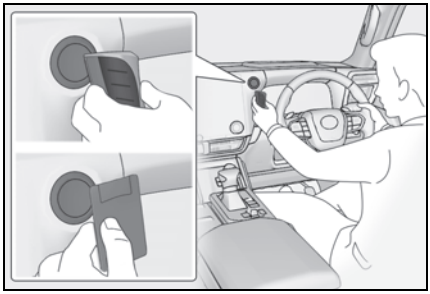
Starting the engine

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key or card key (if equipped) to the engine switch as shown in the illustration.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to ON.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACC.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  and a message are displayed on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately

when the battery is depleted. (→P.455)

■ Alarm

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P.58)

■ Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step **3** above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.181)

If the vehicle battery is discharged

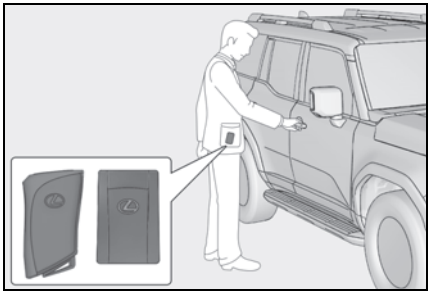
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

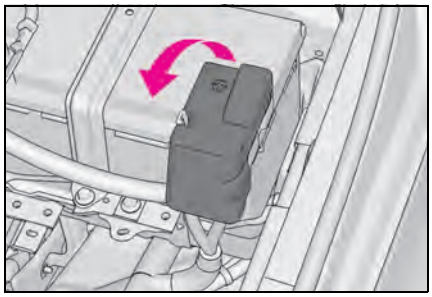
1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and the doors locked. (→P.59)

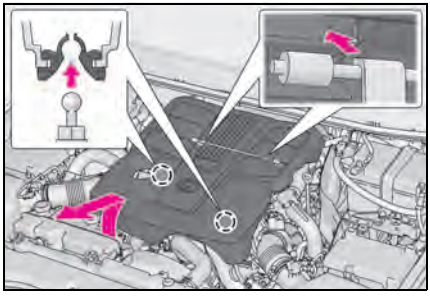


2 Open the hood (→P.432) and removing the engine compartment cover. (→P.434)

3 Open the positive (+) battery terminal cover.



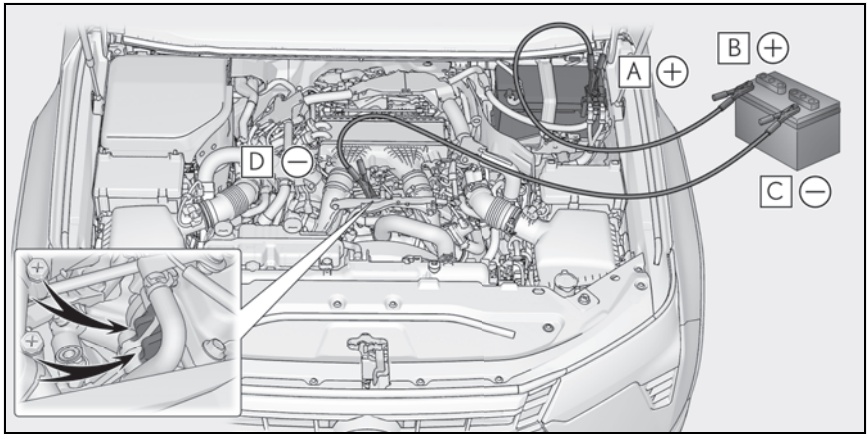
Lift the edge of the cover to disengage the fixed pins, and then pull the cover towards you to remove it.



4 Remove the engine cover.

5 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to A on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to B on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to C on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to D.

Use jumper cables that can reach the specified terminals and connecting point.



A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Metallic point shown in the illustration

6 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to

recharge the battery of your vehicle.

7 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to ON.

8 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

To install the engine cover, conduct the removal procedure in reverse. After installing, check that the fixed pins are inserted securely.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is stopped.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

- Information stored in the ECU is cleared. When the battery is depleted, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
- Some systems may require initialization. (→P.531)

■ **When removing the battery terminals**

When the battery terminals are removed, the information stored in the ECU is cleared. Before removing the battery terminals, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When recharging or replacing the battery**

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off. If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.

■ **Replacing the battery**

- Use a battery that conforms to European regulations.

Use a battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN4), 20 hours rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (80Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (689A) or greater.

- If the sizes differ, the battery cannot be properly secured.
- If an improper battery is used, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart.
- If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, the battery may discharge and engine may not be able to

start.

- For details, consult your Lexus dealer

WARNING

■ When removing the battery terminals

Always remove the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal contacts any metal in the surrounding area when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may occur, leading to a fire in addition to electrical shocks and death or serious injury.

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

■ When replacing the battery

- When the vent plug and indicator are close to the hold down clamp, the battery fluid (sulfuric acid) may leak.
- For information regarding battery replacement, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ When disconnecting the battery

Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side. The disconnected negative (-) terminal may touch the positive (+) terminal, which may cause a short and result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fan or engine drive belt.

■ When connecting jumper cables

Make sure to connect jumper cables to the specified terminals and connecting point. Failure to do so may adversely affect the electronic devices or damage to them.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.69) enters the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

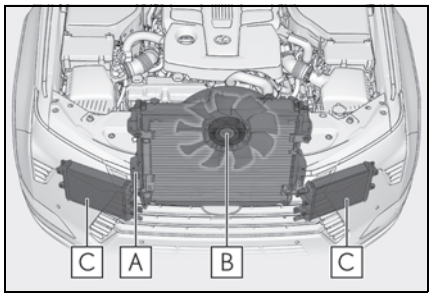
Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and

radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.



A Engine radiator

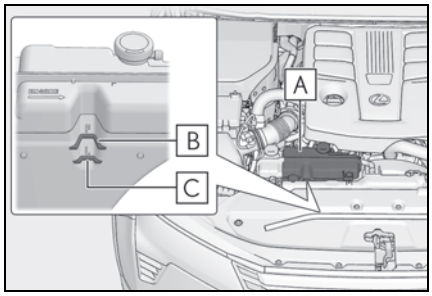
B Cooling fan

C Intercooler radiators

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.

▶ Engine coolant

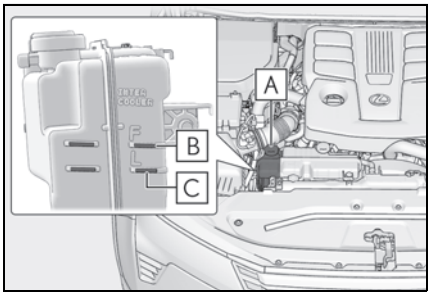


A Reservoir

B "F" line

C "L" line

▶ Intercooler coolant



A Reservoir

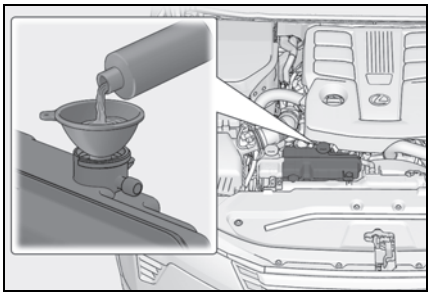
B "F" line

C "L" line

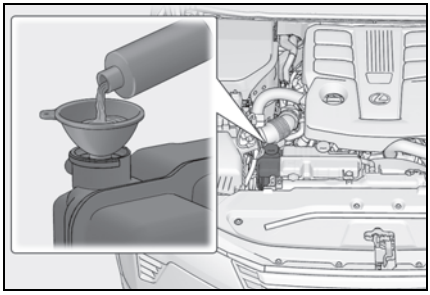
5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

▶ Engine coolant



▶ Intercooler coolant



6 Start the engine to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and

to check for coolant leaks from the radiators or hoses.

7 If the fans are not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fans are operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

8 Check if "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear: Stop the engine and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the message is not displayed: Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the engine coolant reservoir cap while the engine and engine radiator are hot.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

Do not press the shift release button after shifting the shift lever to P.

2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.

3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.

4 Restart the engine.

5 Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Try the followings.

- Turn off the Active TRC (→P.370)
- Switching the four-wheel drive control switch (→P.357)
- Using the center differential lock (→P.357)
- Using the rear differential lock* (→P.360)
- Using Crawl Control* (→P.361)
- Using Multi-terrain Select* (→P.364)

*: If equipped

WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.
- When a warning message for the automatic transmission fluid temperature is displayed while attempting to free a stuck vehicle, immediately remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and wait until the warning message disappears. Otherwise, the transmission may become damaged. (→P.479)

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 508

Fuel information 515

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 516

8-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 531

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		5015 mm (197.4 in.)
Overall width		2000 mm (19.7 in.)*2 1990 mm (78.3 in.)*3, 4
Overall height*1		1925 mm (75.8 in.)*3 1935 mm (76.2 in.)*2, 4
Wheelbase		2850 mm (112.2 in.)
Tread	Front	1667 mm (65.6 in.)*3, 4 1687 mm (66.4 in.)*2
	Rear	1668 mm (65.7 in.)*3, 4 1688 mm (66.5 in.)*2

*1: Unladen vehicle

*2: Vehicles with 18-inch tires

*3: Vehicles without 20-inch tires

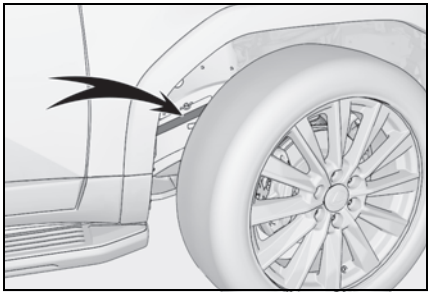
*4: Vehicles without 22-inch tires

Vehicle identification

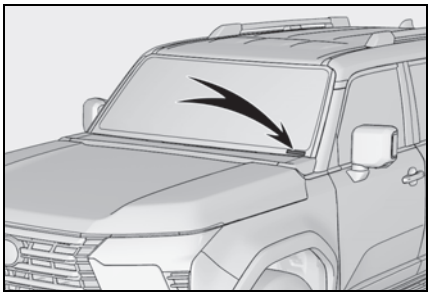
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

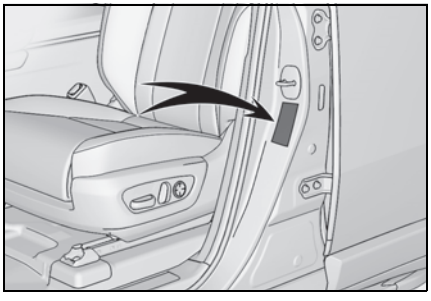
This number is stamped on the front right frame.



This number is also on the top left of the instrument panel.

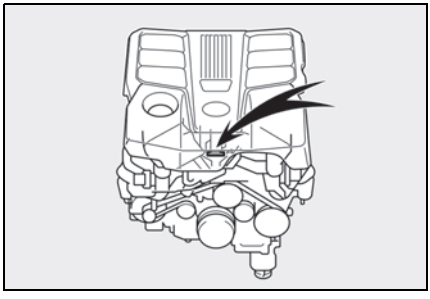


This number is also on the manufacturer's label.



■ **Engine number**

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



Engine

Model	V35A-FTS
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	85.5 × 100.0 mm (3.37 × 3.94 in.)
Displacement	3445 cm^3 (210.2 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	80 L (21.1 gal., 17.6 Imp.gal.)

Lubrication system

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])

With filter	7.3 L (7.7 qt., 6.4 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	7.0 L (7.4 qt., 6.2 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. When actually adding the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is between the low level mark and refill upper limit mark (→P.435). Warm up and turn off the engine, wait about 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

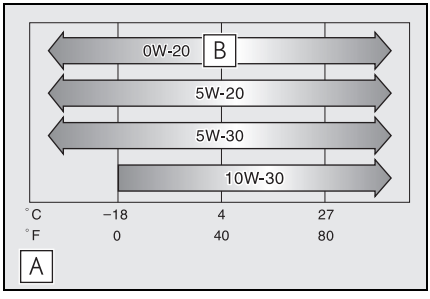
0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6A multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

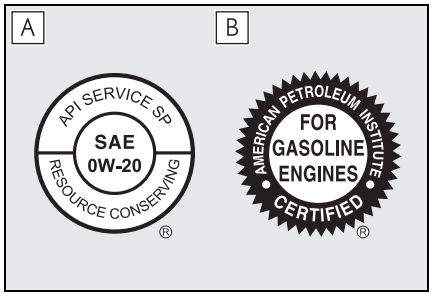
B Preferred

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SP" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.
Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*1	Intercooler coolant	3.7 L (3.9 qt., 3.3 Imp. qt.)
	Engine coolant	13.2 L (14.0 qt., 11.6 Imp. qt.)*2 15.3 L (16.2 qt., 13.5 Imp. qt.)*3
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*1: The coolant capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

*2: Vehicles without rear air conditioning system

*3: Vehicles with rear air conditioning system

Ignition system

Spark plug

Make	DENSO EC22HPR-D7
Gap	0.7 mm (0.028 in.)

NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

Electrical system

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 or higher If the specific gravity is lower than the standard value, charge the battery.
Charging rates:	5 A max.

Differential

Oil capacity	Front	1.16 L (1.23 qt., 1.02 Imp.qt.)
	Rear	Without differential lock system: 6.83 L (7.22 qt., 6.01 Imp. qt.) With differential lock system: 6.50 L (6.87 qt., 5.72 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity		Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.

Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity (Reference)	11.1 L (11.73 qt, 9.77 Imp.qt)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ **Automatic transmission fluid type**

Using transmission fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer

Oil capacity	1.78 L (1.88 qt., 1.57 Imp. qt.)
Oil type*	Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF or equivalent
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	110 mm (4.33 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1—6 mm (0.04—0.24 in.)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 300 N (31 kgf, 67 lbf) while the engine is running

Chassis lubrication (propeller shafts)

▶ Front

Spider	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2
Slide yoke	Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

▶ Rear

Spider	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.18 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ 22-inch tires

Tire size	265/50R22 112V	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	22 × 7 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)	

▶ 20-inch tires

Tire size	265/55R20 113V	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	20 × 7 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)	

▶ 18-inch tires

Tire size	265/70R18 116H	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	131 N•m (13.4 kgf•m, 97 ft•lbf)	

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

Notice on gasoline fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the center display, or at your Lexus dealer.

Some of the customizable features are changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings. (→P.159)

Customizing vehicle features

■ **To change setting with**

1 Select on the center display.

2 Select "Vehicle customise" or "Driving assist".

3 Select the item to change the settings of from the list.

For functions that can be turned on/off, select (ON) / (OFF).

For functions whose level can be adjusted, such as volume, sensor sensitivity, etc., slide the icon on the bar.

■ **To change setting with**

1 Select on the center display.

2 Select "Driving assist".

3 Select the item to change the settings of from the list.

Each time the switch is selected, the setting will be enabled/disabled.

When enabling is selected, the item display will be emphasized.

■ **During customization**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

■ **Using the icon**

Some vehicle customize settings can also be changed through the icon.

WARNING

■ **During customization**

As the engine needs to be operating during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **During customization**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

A Settings that can be changed using the center display

B Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

■ **Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.64, 69)**

The language, units of measure, etc. of some items displayed on the meter or multi-information display will be changed according to settings on the center display. Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Meter display type*	Type 1	Type 2	O	—
		Type 3		
Eco Driving Indicator*	On	Off	O	—
Suggestion function*	On	On (when the vehicle is stopped)	O	O
		Off		
Stop light indicator	On	Off	O	—

*: This setting changes in accordance with My Settings

■ **Head-up Display (→P.75)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Head-up display*	On	Off	O	—
Head-up display type*	Standard	Full	O	—
		Minimum		
Head-up display brightness*	Standard	Off	O	—
Head-up display location*	Standard	Off	O	—
Head-up display angle adjustment*	Standard	Off	O	—

*: This setting changes in accordance with My Settings

■ Door lock (→P.94, 496)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Unlocking using a mechanical key	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	—	○
Speed linked door locking function*	On	Off	○	○
Shift position linked door locking function*	Off	On	○	○
Shift position linked door unlocking function*	Off	On	○	○
Driver's door linked door unlocking function*	On	Off	○	○

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.92, 119)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Operating signal (Buzzers)*	Standard	Desired volume	○	○
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)*	On	Off	○	○
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked*	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	○
		120 seconds		
Open door warning buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	—	○

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Smart entry & start system (→P.119)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	○	○
Smart door unlocking	All the doors	Driver's door	○	○

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Time elapsed before unlocking all the door when gripping and holding the driver's door handle	2 seconds	Off	—	○
		1.5 seconds		
		2.5 seconds		
Number of consecutive door lock operations	2 times	As many as desired	—	○
Engine switch illumination	On	Off	—	○

■ **Wireless remote control (→P.92)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Unlocking operation*	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	○	○
The function that activates the switch of the wireless remote control when locking the door (→P.103)	Off	On (Unlocking all the door)	—	○
		On (Unlocking back door only)		
Theft deterrent panic mode	On	Off	—	○

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Power back door (→P.103)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Power back door operations	On	Off	○	—
Power back door switch operations	Press and hold	One short press	—	○
switch of the wireless remote control operation	Press and hold	One short press	—	○
		Push twice		
		Off		
Operation buzzer volume	Loud	Soft	○	—
		Normal		

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Opening angle	5	1 to 4	O	—
		User setting*1		
Automatic closing of the back door when lowered	On	Off	—	O
Automatic opening of the back door using the back door opener switch	On	Off	—	O
Close & lock (Walk-Away) function*2	Off	On	—	O
Hands free power back door*2	On	Off	O	—
Kick sensor sensitivity*2	+1	+0	—	O
		+2		
Buzzer when the kick sensor detects a foot*2	On	Off	—	O
Hands Free close & lock (Walk-Away) function*2	Off	On	—	O

*1: The open position is set by the power back door switch. (→P.115)

*2: If equipped

■ **Driving position memory (→P.154)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Function to prevent contact between the head restraint and ceiling (while moving to memory location)	On	Off	—	O

■ **Enabling easier driver entry and exit (power easy access system) (→P.154)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Driver's seat slide movement when exiting the vehicle*	Full	Off	O	O
		Partial		

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Steering wheel movement*	Tilt only	Off	○	—
		Telescopic only		
		Tilt and telescopic		

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Outside rear view mirrors (→P.145)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation	Linked to the locking/ unlocking of the doors	Off	—	○
		Linked to operation of the engine switch		

■ **Power windows and moon roof* (→P.148, 151)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	—	○
Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	—	○
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)	On	Off	—	○

*: If equipped

■ **Moon roof* (→P.151)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only	—	○
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used	Slide only	Tilt only	—	○

*: If equipped

■ **Engine switch (→P.181)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
ACC customization Enabling/Disabling ACC mode	On/Off	○	○

■ **Automatic light control system (→P.194)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Light sensor sensitivity*	Normal	Brighter	○	○
		Bright		
		Dark		
		Darker		
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed*	30 seconds	Off	○	○
		60 seconds		
		90 seconds		

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Lights (→P.194)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Welcome lamp	On	Off	—	○

■ **Adaptive High-beam System*1 (→P.196)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Adaptive High-beam System	On/Off*2	—	○
Brightness and illuminated area adjustment of the high beams according to the vehicle speed	15 km/h (9 mph) / 30 km/h (19 mph) / 80 km/h (50 mph)	—	○
Intensity adjustment of the high beams when driving around a curve (illuminates the area in the direction vehicle is turning more brightly)	On/Off	—	○

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Projection distance adjustment of the low beams according to the distance to a preceding vehicle	On/Off	—	O
Illumination of the cornering lights when starting off	On/Off	—	O
High beam light distribution control for rain	On/Off	—	O
Upper level high beam light distribution control	On/Off	—	O
Light distribution control for urban areas	On/Off	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: Operating as the Automatic High Beam (→P.200)

■ **Pre-Collision System (→P.217)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Pre-Collision System	On/Off	O	—
Warning timing*	Later/Default/Earlier	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Lane Departure Alert system (→P.232)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Lane Departure Alert system*	On/Off	O	—
Alert timing*	Default/Earlier	O	—
Alert options*	Vibration/Audible	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Dynamic Radar Cruise Control (→P.239)

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Acceleration setting*	High/Mid/Low	O	—
Speed setting (short press)*	1km/h (1mph) / 5km/h (5mph)/10km/h (10mph)	O	—
Speed setting (long press)*	1km/h (1mph) / 5km/h (5mph)/10km/h (10mph)	O	—
DRCC(RSA)*	On/Off	O	—
Speed limit offset*	-5 - +5	O	—
Guide message*	On/Off	O	—
Curve speed reduction*	High/Mid/Low/Off	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Road Sign Assist (→P.237)

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Road Sign Assist*	On/Off	O	—
Excess speed notification method*	None/Visual/Visual & Audible	O	—
Excess speed notification level*	5 km/h (3 mph) / 3 km/h (2 mph) / 1 km/h (1 mph)	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ Driver break suggestion (→P.234)

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Driver break suggestion	On/Off	O	—

■ Driver monitor (→P.216)

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Warning function*	On/Off	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (→P.254)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	On/Off	O	—
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness*	Dim/Bright	O	—
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (sensitivity)	Late/Intermediate/Early	O	—
Buzzer warning*	On/Off	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Safe Exit Assist (→P.259)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Safe Exit Assist	On/Off	O	—
Outside rear view mirrors indicators*	On/Off	O	—
Detection sensitivity*	Low/Mid/High	O	—

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.263)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B
Lexus parking assist-sensor	On/Off	O	—
Buzzer volume of Lexus parking assist-sensor when operating*1, 2	Level1 / Level2 / Level3	O	—

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: The sound volume is linked among the buzzer volume of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD.

■ RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function (→P.269)

Function	Customized setting	A	B
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function	On/Off	○	—
Buzzer volume of RCTA when operating*1, 2	Level1 / Level2 / Level3	○	—

*1: This setting is linked with the buzzer volume of the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA, and RCD.

*2: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function (→P.274)

Function	Customized setting	A	B
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function	On/Off	○	—

■ Multi-terrain Monitor*1 (→P.336)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Cornering View*2	On	Off	○	—
View Under Vehicle*2	On	Off	○	—
LEXUS Park Assist 3D Display*2	On	Off	○	—
Front side of LEXUS Park Assist Distance*2	Near	Off	○	—
Rear side of LEXUS Park Assist Distance*2	Near	Off	○	—
Vehicle Body Color*2	Color 1	Color 2 to 5	○	—

*1: If equipped

*2: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Driving Mode Select switch (→P.355)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Powertrain control in custom mode*	Normal	Power	○	—
		Eco		
Steering wheel control in custom mode*	Normal	Sport	○	—
Suspensions control in custom mode*	Normal	Sport	○	—
		Comfort		
Air conditioning operation in custom mode*	Normal	Eco	○	—

*: If equipped

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P.383)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation*	On	Off	○	○
A/C auto switch operation*	On	Off	○	○
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity*	Standard	-3 to 3	○	○

*: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Seat heaters/seat ventilators (→P.393)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode*	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	○
Front passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode*	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	○

*: The default settings of the seat heater is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Heated steering wheel*1 (→P.393)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode*2	Standard	-2 (low) to 2 (high)	○	○

*1: If equipped

*2: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

■ **Illumination (→P.396)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off*1	15 seconds	Off	○	○
		7.5 seconds		
		30 seconds		
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	—	○
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	○
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	○
Color of the inside door handle lights, door trim ornament lights, upper console lights, instrument panel ornament lights and footwell lights, etc.*1, 2	Silky white	Set color	○	○
		Custom		
All zones: brightness of the inside door handle lights, door trim ornament lights, upper console lights, instrument panel ornament lights and footwell lights, etc.*1, 2	Standard	Desired brightness	○	○
Front zone: brightness of the front inside door handle lights, front door trim ornament lights, upper console lights, instrument panel ornament lights and footwell lights, etc.*1, 2	Standard	Desired brightness	○	○

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Rear zone: brightness of the rear inside door handle lights and rear door trim ornament lights, etc. *1, 2	Standard	Desired brightness	O	O
Brightness of the footwell lights *1	Standard	Desired brightness	O	O
Lighting of footwell lights	On	Off	—	O
Lighting of front inside door handle lights, front door trim ornament lights and upper console lights *2	On	Off	—	O
Lighting of the rear inside door handle lights and rear door trim ornament lights *2	On	Off	—	O
Time elapsed before the outer foot lights and running board lights *2 turn off *1	15 seconds	Off	O	O
		7.5 seconds		
		30 seconds		
Operation of the outer foot lights and running board lights *2 when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	O
Operation of the outer foot lights and running board lights *2 when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	O
Operation of the outer foot lights and running board lights *2 when a door is opened	On	Off	—	O
Operation when the doors are locked and far away from the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	O

*1: The default setting is changed in conjunction with the settings of My Settings.

*2: If equipped

■ Panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control* (→P.406)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B
Opaque/transparent state memory function when the engine switch is turned to OFF	On	Off	—	O

*: If equipped

■ Vehicle customization

● When the speed linked door locking function and shift position linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.

- When shifting the shift position to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.
- If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function will not operate.
- If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.

● When the smart entry & start system is off, the entry unlock function cannot be customized.

● When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operation buzzer volume and operational signal (Emergency flashers) function settings.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of the items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system	• When rotating the tires • When the tire inflation pressure is changed by changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures) • After registering the ID codes	P.443
Oil maintenance	• After the maintenance is performed	P.436
Power back door	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.111
Power window	• When functioning abnormally	P.148
Moon roof*		P.151
Power running boards*	• After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.101

*: If equipped

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 534
Alphabetical Index 536

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.496)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.496)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the key battery weak or depleted? (→P.455)
- Is the engine switch in ON? When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.181)
- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle? When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.120)



The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set? The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P.98)

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.179)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P.179)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.119)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P.497)
- Is the battery discharged? (→P.498)



The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in ON? If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the

engine switch in ON. (→P.184)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.150)



The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACC or ON (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.182)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the passengers wearing the seat belts? (→P.476, 477)

- The parking brake indicator is on

Is the parking brake released? (→P.188)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.470, 479)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm?
  The sensor detects it and the alarm sounds. (→P.58)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to ON or start the engine.



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?
  Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.479)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.470, 479.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P.485)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.505)

Alphabetical Index

A

A/C 383, 391
Air conditioning filter 453
Eco air conditioning mode 385
Front automatic air conditioning system 383
Lexus Climate Concierge 382
Rear automatic air conditioning system 391
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 369
Warning light 472
Active TRC (Traction Control) 369
Adaptive High-beam System (AHS) 196
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS) 370
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 200
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 196
Airbags 32
Airbag operating conditions 33
Airbag precautions for your child 35
Correct driving posture 27
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 33
Curtain shield airbag precautions 35
Front center airbag operating conditions 33
General airbag precautions 35
Locations of airbags 32
Modification and disposal of airbags 37
Side airbag operating conditions 33
Side airbag precautions 35
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 33
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 35
SRS airbags 32
SRS warning light 471
Air conditioning filter 453
Air conditioning system 383, 391
Air conditioning filter 453
Eco air conditioning mode 385
Front automatic air conditioning system 383
Lexus Climate Concierge 382
Rear automatic air conditioning system 391
Alarm
Alarm 58
Warning buzzer 470, 479
Anchor brackets 51
Antenna
Smart entry & start system 119
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 369
Warning light 472
Armrest 419
Assist grips 420
Audio system-linked display 80
Automatic air conditioning system 383, 391
Air conditioning filter 453
Eco air conditioning mode 385
Front automatic air conditioning system 383
Lexus Climate Concierge 382
Rear automatic air conditioning system 391
Automatic door locking and unlocking systems 98
Automatic headlight leveling system 195
Automatic High Beam (AHB) 200
Automatic light control system 194
Automatic transmission 183
M mode 186
Paddle shift switches 185, 186
Average fuel economy 78
Average vehicle speed 78
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) 370
AWD Control 81

B

Back door 101
Back door closer 107
Back door opener switch 103
Hands Free Power Back Door 105
Luggage compartment lights 107
Power back door 103
Wireless remote control 103
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Battery
Checking 438
If the vehicle battery is discharged .. 498
Preparing and checking before winter 377
Replacing 500
Warning light 470
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 254
Blind Spot Monitor function 256
Bottle holders 402
Brake
Brake Hold 191
Fluid 513
Parking brake 188
Warning light 470
Brake assist 369
Brake Hold 191
Break-in tips 164
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control 73
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Blind Spot Monitor function 256
Buzzer
Driver monitor 216

C

Camera
Driver monitor 216
Card key 90
Care
Aluminum wheels 422
Exterior 422
Interior 425
Seat belts 425
Cargo hooks 403
Catch protection function
Power windows 148
Center differential lock system 358
Chains 379
Child-protector lock 98
Child restraint system 40
Child seats installation 41
Installing a CRS to the passenger seat 41
Installing CRS with an ISOFIX rigid anchors 50
Installing CRS with seat belts 48
Points to remember 40
Riding with children 40
Types of child restraint system installation method 47
Using a child restraint anchor fitting 51
Child safety 40
Airbag precautions 35
Back door precautions 101
Battery precautions 440, 501
Child restraint system 40
Electronic sunshade precautions 408
Glass hatch precautions 117
Heated steering wheel precautions 393
How your child should wear the seat belt 30
Installing child restraints 40
Moon roof precautions 152
Power running board precautions 99
Power window lock switch 150
Power window precautions 149
Rear door child-protector lock 98
Removed key battery precautions ... 456
Seat belt precautions 28
Seat heater precautions 393
Cleaning 422, 425

Aluminum wheels 422
Exterior 422
Interior 425
Radar sensor 255
Seat belts 425
Clock 69
Coat hooks 420
Condenser 438
Console box 401
Coolant
Capacity 511
Checking 437
Preparing and checking before winter 377
Warning light 471
Cool box 408
Cooling system 511
Engine overheating 502
Cornering lights 195
Crawl Control 361
Cruise control
Cruise control 249
Dynamic radar cruise control 239
Cup holders 401
Current fuel consumption 78
Curtain shield airbags 32
Customizable features 516

D

DAC
Downhill assist control system 367
Daytime running light system 194
Replacing light bulbs 459
Deck board 403
Deck under tray 404
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 387
Rear window 387
Windshield 386
Differential 512
Digital Rear-view Mirror 137
Dimensions 508
Display
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Cruise control 249
Head-up display 75, 78
Lexus parking assist-sensor 263
Multi-information display 74, 78
Multimedia Display 78
Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle) 285
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 274
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 269
Warning messages 479
Do-it-yourself maintenance 430
Door courtesy lights 396
Door lock
Back door 101
Side doors 94
Smart entry & start system 119
Wireless remote control 92
Doors
Automatic door locking and unlocking systems 98
Back door 101
Door glasses 148
Door lock 94
Glass hatch 116
Open door warning buzzer 95, 98
Outside rear view mirrors 145
Rear door child-protector lock 98
Side doors 94
Door trim ornament lights 396
Downhill assist control system 367
Drive distance 78
Driver's seat belt reminder light 476
Driver's seat position memory 155
Driving position memory 154
Memory recall function 156
Drive-Start Control (DSC)
Sudden start restraint control 168

Driving
Break-in tips 164
Correct posture 27
Driving mode select switch 355
Off-road precautions 375
Procedures 163
Winter drive tips 377
Driving information display 78, 79
Driving mode select switch 355
Driving position memory 154
Memory recall function 156
Power easy access system 154
Seat position memory 155
Driving range 78
Driving support system information 80
Driving support system information display 81
DSC (Drive-Start Control)
Sudden start restraint control 168
Dynamic radar cruise control
Function 239
Warning message 479

E

Eco air conditioning mode 385
Eco drive mode 355
EDR (Event data recorder) 8
Elapsed time 78
Electric Power Steering (EPS)
Function 369
Warning light 472
Electronic key
Battery-saving function 120
If the electronic key does not operate properly 496
Replacing the battery 455
Electronic sunshade 406
Jam protection function 407
Operation 406
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 470
If a warning light turns on 470
If a warning message is displayed 479
If the electronic key does not operate properly 496
If the engine will not start 494
If the vehicle battery is discharged 498
If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising 463
If you have a flat tire 485
If you lose your keys 496
If you think something is wrong 468
If your vehicle becomes stuck 505
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 462
If your vehicle needs to be towed 465
If your vehicle overheats 502
Emergency brake signal 370
Emergency Driving Stop System 252
Emergency flashers 462
Engine
ACC 181
Compartment 433
Engine switch (ignition switch) 179
Exhaust gas precautions 38
Fuel pump shut off system 469
Hood 432
How to start the engine 179
Identification number 509
Idling time 164
If the engine will not start 494
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 462
Ignition switch (Engine switch) 179
Overheating 502
Tachometer 69
Engine compartment cover 434
Engine coolant
Capacity 511
Checking 437
Preparing and checking before winter

377
Warning light 471
Engine coolant temperature gauge 69
Engine immobilizer system 57
Engine oil
Capacity 510
Checking 434
Preparing and checking before winter 377
Warning light 471
Engine oil pressure gauge 69
Engine switch (ignition switch) 179
Auto power off function 182
Changing the engine switch modes ... 181
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 462
Starting the engine 179
EPS (Electric Power Steering)
Function 369
Warning light 472
Event data recorder (EDR) 8

F

Flat tire 485
Tire pressure warning system 443
Floor mats 26
Fluid
Automatic transmission 512
Brake 513
Washer 440
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Switch 202
Footwell lights 396
Four-wheel drive system 357
Center differential lock/unlock 358
Four-wheel drive control switch 357
Rear differential lock/unlock 360
Warning light 475
Front center airbag 32
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Switch 202
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 476
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Switch 194
Front seats 124
Adjustment 124
Cleaning 425
Correct driving posture 27
Driving position memory 154
Head restraints 132
Memory recall function 156
Power easy access system 154
Refresh system 124
Seat heaters 393
Seat position memory 155
Seat ventilators 395
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Turn signal lever 188
Fuel
Capacity 509
Fuel gauge 69
Fuel pump shut off system 469
Information 515
Refueling 207
Warning light 476
Fuel consumption
Average fuel economy 78
Current fuel consumption 78
Fuel filler door 208
Refueling 207
Fuel gauge 69
Fuel pump shut off system 469
Fuses 457

G

Gauges....69
Glass hatch....116
Glove box....401

H

Hands Free Power Back Door....105
Headlight cleaners....203
Headlights....194
AHB (Automatic High Beam)....200
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)196
Automatic headlight leveling system 195
Replacing light bulbs....459
Switch....194
Head restraints....132
Head-up display....75
Seat position memory....155
Settings....77
Heated steering wheel....394
Heaters
Automatic air conditioning system 383, 391
Heated steering wheel....394
Outside rear view mirrors....387
Seat heaters....394
High mounted stoplight
Replacing light bulbs....459
Hill-start assist control....369
Hood
Hood....432
Open....432
Warning message....98
Hooks
Cargo hooks....403
Coat hooks....420
Retaining hooks (floor mat)....26
Horn....135

I

Identification
Engine....509
Vehicle....508
Idling time....164
Ignition switch (engine switch)....179
Auto power off function....182
Changing the engine switch modes...181
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....462
Starting the engine....179
Illuminated entry system....397
Indicators....64
Initialization
Electronic sunshade....407
Engine oil maintenance data....436
Items to initialize....531
Moon roof....151
Power back door....111
Power windows....148
Inside door handle lights....396
Inside rear view mirror....136
Installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat....41
Instrument panel light control....73
Instrument panel ornament lights....396
Interior lights....397
Interior lights list....396
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor....59
ISOFIX rigid anchors....50

J

Jack
Vehicle-equipped jack....485
Jack handle....485
Jam protection function
Electronic sunshade....407
Memory recall function....158
Moon roof....151
Power back door....108

Power easy access system 155
Power running board 100
Power windows 148
Seat position memory 155

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system 119
Wireless remote control 92
Keys 90
Battery-saving function 120
Electronic key 90
Engine switch 179
If the electronic key does not operate properly 496
If you lose your keys 496
Key number plate 90
Keyless entry 92, 119
Mechanical key 93
Replacing the battery 455
Warning buzzer 119
Wireless remote control key 92
Knee airbags 32

L

Lane Tracing Assist (LTA) 228
Operation 228
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 232
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever 432
Hood lock release lever 432
Shift lever 183
Turn signal lever 188
Wiper lever 203, 205
Lexus Climate Concierge 382
Lexus Connected Services 54
Lexus parking assist-sensor 263
Lexus Safety System + ... 209
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 200
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 196
Cruise control 249
Driver monitor 216
Dynamic radar cruise control 239
Emergency Driving Stop System 252
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 232
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 228
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 217
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 237
License plate lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Switch 194
Light bulbs
Replacing 459
Welcome lighting 195
Lights
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 200
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 196
Cornering lights 195
Door courtesy lights 396
Door trim ornament lights 396
Fog light switch 202
Footwell lights 396
Front interior light 397
Front personal lights 398
Headlight switch 194
Illuminated entry system 397
Inside door handle lights 396
Instrument panel ornament lights 396
Interior lights list 396
Interior lights 397
Outer foot lights 396
Personal lights 398
Rear interior light 397
Rear personal lights 398
Replacing light bulbs 459
Running board lights 396
Scuff lights 396
Shift lever lights 396
Turn signal lever 188
Upper console lights 396
Vanity lights 409

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)..... 228
Operation..... 228
Luggage compartment lights..... 107
Luggage cover..... 405

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 430
Maintenance data..... 508
Maintenance requirements..... 428
Malfunction indicator lamp..... 471
Max cool..... 385
Max heat..... 385
Menu icons..... 79
Meter
Indicators..... 64
Instrument panel light control..... 73
Meter control switches..... 78
Meters..... 69
Multi-information display..... 74
Warning lights..... 470
Warning messages..... 479
Mirrors
Digital Rear-view Mirror..... 137
Inside rear view mirror..... 136
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 387
Outside rear view mirrors..... 145
Vanity mirrors..... 409
Moon roof..... 151
Door lock linked moon roof operation..... 151
Jam protection function..... 151
Operation..... 151
Multi-information display
Audio system-linked display..... 80
AWD Control..... 81
Changing the display..... 79
Cruise control..... 249
Display contents..... 74
Drive information..... 78
Driving information display..... 78, 79
Driving support system information display..... 81
Driving support system information..... 80
Dynamic radar cruise control..... 242
Meter control switches..... 78
Navigation system-linked display..... 80
PCS (Pre-Collision System)..... 217
Pop-up display information..... 86
RSA (Road Sign Assist)..... 237
Tire pressure..... 443
Warning messages..... 479
Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 369
Multi-terrain Monitor..... 287
How to switch the display..... 292
If you notice any symptoms..... 351
Screen display..... 288
Multi-terrain Select..... 364
My Settings..... 159

N

nanoe™ X..... 386
Navigation system-linked display..... 80

O

Odometer..... 69
Odometer and trip meter display
"ODO TRIP" switch..... 72
"ODO TRIP" switch..... 72
Off-road precautions..... 375
Oil
Engine oil..... 510
Front differential oil..... 512
Rear differential oil..... 512
Transfer oil..... 513
Opener
Back door..... 103
Fuel filler door..... 208
Glass hatch..... 116

Hood....432
Open tray....402
Outer foot lights....396
Outside rear view mirrors....145
Adjustment....145
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....256
Folding and extending....146
Linked mirror function when reversing....147
Outside rear view mirror defoggers387
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)....270
Safe Exit Assist....261
Seat position memory....155
Outside temperature....69
Overheating....502

P

Paddle shift switches....185, 186
Panic mode....93
Panoramic fixed moon roof with one-touch frosted glass control....406
Parking assist sensors (Lexus parking assist-sensor)....263
Parking brake
Operation....188
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer....190
Warning light....475
Warning message....190
Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle)....277, 284
Function....284
Parking Support Brake function (pedestrians rear of the vehicle)....285
Function....285
Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle)277, 281
Function....281
PCS (Pre-Collision System)
Function....217
Warning light....472
Personal lights....398
PKSB (Parking Support Brake)....277
Pop-up display information....86
Power back door....103
Close & lock (Walk-Away) function 103
Jam protection function....108
Power back door switch....103
Power back door switch....103
Power easy access system....154
Power outlet (12 VDC)....409
Power outlet (220 VAC)....410
Power running boards....99
Power steering
Warning light....472
Power windows....148
Catch protection function....148
Jam protection function....148
Operation....148
Window lock switch....150
Pre-Collision System (PCS)
Function....217
Warning light....472

R

Radar cruise control
Dynamic radar cruise control....239
Radiator....438
RCD (Rear Camera Detection)....274
Function....275
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)....269
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function....270
Rear automatic air conditioning system....391
Rear Camera Detection (RCD)....274
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)....269
Rear differential lock system....360
Rear door sunshades....419

Rear fog lights
Replacing light bulbs....459
Switch....202
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light....477
Rear seats....126
Adjustment....126
Head restraints....132
Passenger and rear seat reminder function....96
Seat heaters....394
Stowing the third seats....130
Tumbling the second seats....126
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....459
Turn signal lever....188
Rear view mirror
Digital Rear-view Mirror....137
Inside rear view mirror....136
Outside rear view mirrors....145
Rear window defogger....387
Rear window wiper....205
Refueling....207
Capacity....509
Fuel types....509
Opening the fuel tank cap....208
Replacing
Electronic key battery....455
Fuses....457
Light bulbs....459
Tires....485
Wireless remote control battery....455
Road Sign Assist....237
RSA (Road Sign Assist)....237
Running board lights....396

S

Safe Exit Assist....259
Scuff lights....396
Seat belt reminder light....476, 477
Seat belts....28
Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height....30
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt....425
Emergency Locking Retractor....30
How to wear your seat belt....29
How your child should wear the seat belt....30
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use....29
Reminder light and buzzer....476, 477
Seat belt pretensioners....30
SRS warning light....471
Seat belt shoulder anchor height
Adjustment....30
Seat heaters....394
Seat position memory....155
Seats....124, 126
Adjustment precautions....124, 126
Adjustment....124, 126
Child restraint system installation....40
Cleaning....425
Driving position memory....154
Front seat refresh system....124
Head restraint....132
Power easy access system....154
Properly sitting in the seat....27
Seat heaters....394
Seat position memory....155
Seat ventilators....395
Seat ventilators....395
Secondary Collision Brake....370
Second start mode....185
Sensor
AHB (Automatic High Beam)....200
Automatic headlight system....194
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....255
Digital Rear-view Mirror....140
Door handle....94
Hands Free Power Back Door....105

Inside rear view mirror....136
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor....59
Intrusion sensor....59
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)....228
Parking Support Brake function (moving vehicles rear of the vehicle)....255
Parking Support Brake function (static objects front and rear of the vehicle)....263
Power back door....108
Rain-sensing windshield wipers....204
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)....255
Safe Exit Assist....255
Tilt sensor....59
Shift lever....183
Automatic transmission....183
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P....184
Shift lever lights....396
Shift lock system....184
Side airbags....32
Side doors....94
Side mirrors....145
Adjustment....145
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....256
Folding and extending....146
Linked mirror function when reversing....147
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)....270
Safe Exit Assist....261
Seat position memory....155
Side turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....459
Turn signal lever....188
Side windows....148
Smart entry & start system....119
Antenna location....119
Entry functions....94, 102
Starting the engine....179
Warning message....479
Snow tires....377
"SOS" button....54
Spare tire
Inflation pressure....514
Storage location....485
Spark plug....511
Specifications....508
Speedometer....69
Steering wheel....135
Adjustment....135
Heated steering wheel....394
Meter control switches....78
Power easy access system....154
Seat position memory....155
Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs....459
Storage feature....400
Storage precautions....400
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck....505
Sunshade
Electronic sunshade....406
Moon roof....151
Rear door....419
Sun visors....409
Switches
"SOS" button....54
"TOW HAUL" switch....187
Automatic High Beam switch....200
Brake hold switch....191
Center differential lock switch....358
Cruise control switch....242, 249
DAC/CRAWL....362, 367
Dimming switch....406
Door lock switches....97
DRIVE MODE switch....355
Driving position memory buttons....155
Electronic sunshade switch....406
Emergency flashers switch....462
Engine switch....179
Fog light switch....202
Four-wheel drive control switch....357

Heated steering wheel....394
Ignition switch....179
Instrument panel light control switches....73
Light switch....194
Meter control switches....78
MODE SELECT switch355, 362, 365, 367
Moon roof switches....151
MTS....365
Multi-terrain Monitor....292
Outside rear view mirror switches....145
Paddle shift switches....185, 186
Parking brake switch....188
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) switch....278
Power back door switch....103
Power running board switch....100
Power window switch....148
Rear differential lock switch....360
Rear window wiper and washer switch....205
Seat adjustment switches....124, 126
Seat heater switches....394
Seat ventilator switches....395
Second start mode switch....185
Third seat control switches....130
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch....135
VIEW switch....292
VSC OFF switch....370
Window lock switch....150
Windshield wipers and washer switch....203

T

Tachometer....69
Tail lights
Replacing light bulbs....459
Switch....194
Theft deterrent system
Alarm....58
Engine immobilizer system....57
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor....59
Things you should know
If you notice any symptoms....351
Ticket holders....400
Tire inflation pressure
Maintenance data....514
Tire inflation pressure display function....443
Warning light....476
Tire pressure display....443
Tire pressure warning system....443
Function....443
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters....444
Registering ID codes....448
Registering the position of each wheel....445
Selecting wheel set....449
Setting the tire pressure....446
Warning light....476
Tires....441
Chains....379
Checking....441
If you have a flat tire....485
Inflation pressure....451
Replacing....485
Rotating tires....442
Size....514
Snow tires....377
Spare tire....485
Tire inflation pressure display function....443
Tire pressure warning system....443
Warning light....476
Tools....485
Top strap....51
Towing
Emergency towing....465

Trailer sway control 369
Traction control (TRC) 369
Trailer sway control 369
Transmission
Automatic transmission 183
M mode 186
Paddle shift switches 185, 186
TRC (Traction Control) 369
Trip meters 69
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 459
Turn signal lever 188

U

Upper console lights 396
USB Type-C charging ports 410

V

Vanity lights 409
Vanity mirrors 409
Vehicle data recording 8
Vehicle identification number 508
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 369
Ventilators
Seat ventilators 395
Voltmeter 69
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 369

W

Warning buzzers
Brake hold 475
Brake Override System 474
Brake system 470
Charging system 470
Downshifting 186, 187
Drive-Start Control 474
High coolant temperature 471
Lexus parking assist-sensor 268
Low engine oil pressure 471
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 228, 472
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 237
Seat belt reminder 476, 477
Warning lights
ABS 472
Brake hold operated indicator 475
Brake Override System 474
Brake system 470
Center differential lock indicator 475
Charging system 470
Cruise control indicator 473
Drive-Start Control 474
Driving assist information indicator 473
Dynamic radar cruise control indicator 473
High coolant temperature 471
LDA indicator 473
Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator 474
Low engine oil pressure 471
Low fuel level 476
Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light 475
LTA indicator 472
Malfunction indicator lamp 471
Parking brake indicator 475
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 474
Power steering 472
Pre-Collision System 472
Rear differential lock indicator 475
Seat belt reminder light 476, 477
Slip indicator 474
SRS 471
Tire pressure 476
Warning messages 479
Washer
Checking 440
Low washer fluid warning message 440
Preparing and checking before winter 377
Switch 203, 205

Washing and waxing 422
Weights 171
Wheels 452
  Replacing wheels 485
  Size 514
Window glasses
  Power windows 148
Window lock switch 150
Windows
  Glass hatch 116
  Power windows 148
  Rear window defogger 387
  Washer 203, 205
Windshield wipers
  Rain-sensing windshield wipers 203
Winter driving tips 377
Wireless charger 412
Wireless remote control 92
  Battery-saving function 120
  Locking/Unlocking 92
  Panic mode 93
  Replacing the battery 455

For vehicles with navigation system or multimedia system, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio system
- Panoramic view monitor

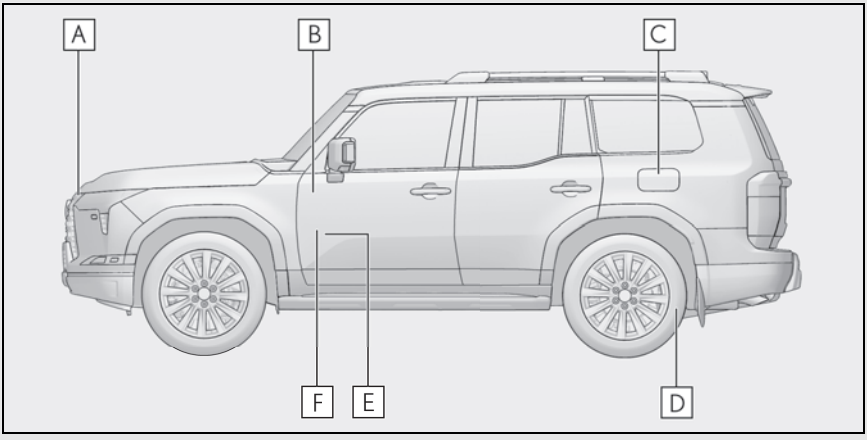
Certifications

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)



C5-052

GAS STATION INFORMATION



A Auxiliary catch lever (→P.432)

B Power back door switch (→P.103)

C Fuel filler door (→P.208)

D Tire inflation pressure (→P.514)

E Fuel filler door opener (→P.208)

F Hood lock release lever (→P.432)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	80 L (21.1 gal., 17.6 Imp.gal.)
Fuel type	P.509
Cold tire inflation pressure	P.514
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)	P.510
Engine oil type	P.510

xQ-1

Publication No. OM60U94E
Part No. 01999-60U94
Printed in Japan 01-2312-00 Z
GX550（豪州E）